

for Class
IX

In accordance with the new Textbook / Examination Pattern
of all Boards of Secondary Education, Sindh.

Faisal

English

**JOIN
FOR**

MORE!!!

- › Textbook's Reading Comprehension Lessons with Translation
- › M.C.Qs of Reading Comprehension
- › Note / Summary of Reading Comprehension
- › Short Answer Questions
- › Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension
- › Solved Exercises of Language Practice
- › Grammar & Composition
- › Important Essays
- › Formal Letters / Applications / Emails
- › Idioms / Phrases
- › Translation
- › Summary Writing
- › Poems with Translation
- › Paraphrasing of Poems
- › Textbook's Solved Model Test Papers



Contents

S.No	Description	Page No	S.No	Description	Page No
READING COMPREHENSION			READING COMPREHENSION		
01	Ethics - Character Building		05	Healthy Life Style	
Unit-1	The Last Sermon of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W)		Unit-5	Health Problems Caused by Mosquitoes	
	Words Meaning	5		Words Meaning	48
	Textbook Lesson with Translation	5		Textbook Lesson with Translation	49
	Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	8		Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	52
	Summary / Note of the Lesson	10		Summary / Note of the Lesson	53
	Short Answer Questions	10		Short Answer Questions	53
	Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	12		Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	54
02	Role Model		06	Gender Equity	
Unit-2	Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai		Unit-6	The Role of Women in Pakistan's Creation and Development	
	Words Meaning	16		Words Meaning	57
	Textbook Lesson with Translation	16		Textbook Lesson with Translation	57
	Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	19		Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	62
	Summary / Note of the Lesson	21		Summary / Note of the Lesson	63
	Short Answer Questions	21		Short Answer Questions	64
	Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	23		Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	65
03	Education and Careers		07	Life Skills	
Unit-3	Chasing Dreams		Unit-7	The Secret of Success	
	Words Meaning	26		Words Meaning	70
	Textbook Lesson with Translation	26		Textbook Lesson with Translation	70
	Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	30		Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	73
	Summary / Note of the Lesson	30		Summary / Note of the Lesson	74
	Short Answer Questions	31		Short Answer Questions	75
	Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	32		Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	76
04	Pakistan and National Pride		08	People and Places	
Unit-4	The Great Visionaries		Unit-8	Ghazi's Diary	
	Words Meaning	34		Words Meaning	79
	Textbook Lesson with Translation	35		Textbook Lesson with Translation	79
	Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	40		Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	83
	Summary / Note of the Lesson	43		Summary / Note of the Lesson	84
	Short Answer Questions	43		Short Answer Questions	85
	Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	45		Solved Exercises of Reading Comprehension	86



Contents

S.No	Description	Page No	S.No	Description	Page No
GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION			GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION		
	Language Practice				
09	Conditional Sentences	91	21	Rules of Translation	125
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Solved Exercises of Language Practice	
	Unit - 1.3 (Exercise 1 to 3)	92		Unit - 7.3 (Exercise 1 & 2)	131
10	Punctuation	94	22	Prefixes (Continued)	133
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Solved Exercises of Language Practice	
	Unit - 1.3 (Exercise 4)	95		Unit - 7.3 (Exercise 4)	133
11	Using Modals for Ability	96	23	Degrees of Adverbs	134
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Solved Exercises of Language Practice	
	Unit - 2.3 (Exercise 1 & 2)	96		Unit - 8.3 (Exercise 1 to 3)	135
12	Suffixes	97	24	Quotation Marks (Further Practice)	137
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Solved Exercises of Language Practice	
	Unit - 2.3 (Exercise 3 & 4)	97		Unit - 8.3 (Exercise 4 & 5)	137
13	Types of Sentences	100	25	Suffixes (Additional Practice)	139
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Solved Exercises of Language Practice	
	Unit - 3.3 (Exercise 1 & 2)	101		Unit - 8.3 (Exercise 6)	139
14	Articles	102	26	Adjective	140
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Degree of Adjective	141
	Unit - 3.3 (Exercise 4 & 5)	104	27	Word Building	142
15	Change the Voice	106		Formation of Nouns from Verbs	142
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Formation of Nouns from Adjectives	144
	Unit - 4.3 (Exercise 2 & 3)	108		Formation of Adjectives from Nouns	144
16	Prefixes	110		Antonyms	145
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice		28	Prepositions	147
	Unit - 4.3 (Exercise 4)	110			
17	Simple and Compound Sentences	111	29	Tenses	149
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Present Indefinite Tense	150
	Unit - 5.3 (Exercise 1 , 2 & 4)	112		Present Continous Tense	150
18	Narration - Direct and Indirect Speech	114		Present Perfect Tense	151
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Present Perfect Continous Tense	151
	Unit - 5.3 (Exercise 5 & 6)	118		Past Indefinite Tense	152
19	Synonyms	120		Past Continous Tense	152
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Past Perfect Tense	153
	Unit - 6.3 (Exercise 1 , 2, 3 & 4)	120		Past Perfect Continous Tense	153
20	Use of 'since' and 'for'	123		Future Indefinite Tense	154
	Solved Exercises of Language Practice			Future Continous Tense	154
	Unit - 6.3 (Exercise 5 & 6)	123		Future Perfect Tense	154
				Future Perfect Continous Tense	155
				Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)	155
			30	Idioms and Phrases	157

JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!



Contents

S.No	Description	Page No	S.No	Description	Page No
GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION			GRAMMAR AND COMPOSITION		
	<i>Essay Writing</i>				
31	Descriptive Essays	161		Importance of Computer Studies	177
	My City	162		Uses and Abuses of Smart Phone	178
	A Historical Place	162		Piles of Garbage in Populated Area	178
	A Scenic Place	163		A Family Wedding	179
	School Playground	163	34	Letter / Application / Email Writing	180
	Problems of Karachi City	164		Formal Letters	180
	My Most Favourite Country, Pakistan	164		Applications	184
	My Favourite Uncle	165		Job Applications	187
	My Teacher that I Remember	165		Informal Emails	189
	Our School Principal	166	35	Summary Writing	191
	My Grandmother / Grandfather	166		Do! & Don't's of Summary Writing	191
	My Best Friend / My Neighbour	167		<i>Working with Poems</i>	194
	My National Hero / My National Personality	167	36	A Child's Invocation	
32	Narrative Essays	168		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	194
	A Picnic at the Seaside	169		Paraphrasing of Couplets - Summary	195
	An Exciting Cricket Match	169	37	Rain	
	Annual School Function	169		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	196
	A House on Fire / A Dreadful Accident	170		Paraphrasing of Stanzas	197
	A Hot Day / A Rainy Day	170	38	A Mountain and a Squirrel	
	A Happiest Day of My Life	170		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	197
	A Journey by Train	171		Paraphrasing of Stanzas	199
	A Horrible Road Accident	171		Summary / Message of the Poem	199
	A Visit to a Zoological Garden	171	39	Abu Ben Adhem	
33	Compare and Contrast Essays	172		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	199
	Summer and Winter	172		Paraphrasing of Stanzas	201
	Pet and Wild Animals	172		Summary / Message of the Poem	201
	City and Village Life	173	40	The Miller of the Dee	
	Good Neighbours and Bad Neighbours	174		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	201
	Blessing / Wonders of Science	174		Paraphrasing of Stanzas	203
	Importance of Health / Games	175		Summary / Message of the Poem	203
	My Aim in Life	175	41	The Daffodils	
	Importance of Discipline in Life	175		The Poem with Translation - Word Meaning	204
	Pollution in Karachi	176		Paraphrasing of Stanzas - Summary	205
	Advantages and Disadvantages of Internet	176			
	The Book I Like the Most / My Favourite Book	177			
				Solution of Test Model Paper I (Units 1 - 4)	206
				Solution of Test Model Paper II (Units 5 - 8)	211

JOIN FOR MORE!!!



Reading Comprehension

Unit
1.1

The Last Sermon of the Holy Prophet (S.A.W)

رسول اللہ ﷺ کا آخری خطبہ

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
aggressive	belligerent جارحانہ	hypocrite	منافق
alliance	union اتحاد	idol	بت - مورتی
ancestors	forefathers آباؤ اجداد	legitimate	جائز
astray	away from right path گمراہ	meritocracy	a society governed by people selected according to merit ایسا معاشرہ جس میں قابلیت کے مطابق اختیارات دیئے جائیں
beware	be cautious and alert خبردار - باخبر	migrate	relocate - resettle ہجرت کرنا
consolidate	make stronger or solid مستحکم کرنا	outskirts	the outer parts of a city مضافاتی علاقے
constitute	form or compose مشتمل ہونا	pagan	heathen - infidel کافر
constitution	the basic laws of nation آئین	piety	the quality of being religious تقویٰ
convey	pass on information پیغام پہنچانا	pilgrimage	religious journey زیارت - حج
embrace	hold closely in one's arms بغل گیر ہونا	principle	basis - essence اصول
emigrate	leave one's own country ہجرت کرنا	prohibited	banned ممنوع
entrust	endow سپرد کرنا	sermon	religious lecture خطبہ - واعظ
equitable	fair and impartial مساوی	superiority	the state of being superior برتری
event	public or social occasion تقریب - واقعہ	unified	make or become united متحد
farewell	marking someone's departure الوداعی		
harmony	compatibility in opinion & action ہم آہنگی		

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Our Holy Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) is the last of the Prophets. Holy Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was born in 571 A.D. at Makkah, Saudi Arabia, in a respected Quraish family. The Quraish used to worship idols and did not believe in one God. Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) asked the Quraish not to worship their false gods. He told them that he was the Prophet of Allah and asked them to accept Islam and to worship the One and only true God. Most of them refused to accept Islam. They thought that he was against their gods and their ancestors. They opposed this new faith so much that the Prophet (ﷺ) had to ask the believers to migrate to Yathrib, a city 320 km (200 miles) north of Makkah.

ہمارے پیغمبر حضرت محمد ﷺ انبیاء کرام میں آخری نبی ہیں۔ پیارے نبی حضرت محمد ﷺ 571 عیسوی میں مکہ، سعودی عرب میں قریش کے ایک معزز خاندان میں پیدا ہوئے۔ قریش بتوں کی پوجا کیا کرتے تھے اور ایک خدا پر یقین نہیں رکھتے تھے۔ رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ نے قریش کو ان کے جھوٹے خداؤں کی عبادت کرنے سے منع کیا۔ آپ نے ان کو بتایا کہ وہ اللہ تعالیٰ کے پیغمبر ہیں اور انھیں اسلام قبول کرنے اور احواد اور سچے خدا کی عبادت کرنے کو کہا۔ ان کی اکثریت نے اسلام قبول کرنے سے انکار کر دیا۔ وہ آپ

کو اپنے خداؤں اور اپنے آباؤ اجداد کا مخالف خیال کرتے تھے۔ انھوں نے اس نئے دین کی اتنی مخالفت کی کہ رسول اللہ ﷺ کو مومنوں سے شرب ہجرت کرنے کا کہا پڑا جو مکہ کے شہل میں 320 کلومیٹر (200 میل) دور ایک شہر ہے۔

But, with time, as many people started accepting his message and converting to Islam, the Quraish became more aggressive and started making attempts on his life. Hence, when Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) got positive signals from Yathrib, he also decided to emigrate there. After eight days' journey, he reached the outskirts of Yathrib, on 28th June 622; but he did not enter the city directly. He stopped at a place called Quba', a place some miles from the main city, and built a mosque there.

لیکن وقت کے ساتھ ساتھ جیسے جیسے کئی لوگوں نے آپ ﷺ کی دعوت کو تسلیم کیا اور اسلام قبول کیا تو قریش زیادہ جارحانہ ہو گئے اور آپ پر حملے شروع کر دیئے۔ جب رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ کو شرب سے مثبت اشارے ملے تو آپ ﷺ نے بھی وہاں ہجرت کرنے کا فیصلہ کر لیا۔ آٹھ دنوں کے سفر کے بعد آپ ﷺ 28 جون 622 عیسوی کو شرب کے مضافات میں پہنچے؛ لیکن وہ براہ راست شہر میں داخل نہیں ہوئے۔ آپ ﷺ شہر سے کچھ میل دور ایک مقام پر ٹھہر گئے جسے قبہ کہا جاتا تھا اور وہاں ایک مسجد تعمیر کی۔

On 2nd July 622, Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) entered the city. This event is known as "Hijra" and marks the beginning of the Islamic calendar. Yathrib was soon named *Madina-tun-Nabi* (literally "City of the Prophet"), but un-Nabi was soon dropped, and its name became "Madina", meaning "the city".

2 جولائی 622ء کو رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ شہر میں داخل ہوئے۔ اس واقعہ کو "ہجری" کے نام سے جاننا جاتا ہے اور اسلامی تقویم کا آغاز ہوتا ہے۔ جلد ہی شرب کا نام "مدینہ النبی" (یعنی "نبی ﷺ کا شہر") پڑ گیا، مگر جلد ہی "النبی" حذف ہو گیا اور اس کا نام "مدینہ" ہو گیا جس کا مطلب ہے "شہر"۔

At the time of arrival of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) in Madina, the city had four broad groups of people. There were the Muslims; including those who were from Madina and those who had emigrated from Makkah. Then, there were the hypocrites; that is those who embraced Islam in name only, but actually were against it. Additionally, there were the people from Aws and Khazraj, who were still pagans but were likely to accept Islam. Finally, there were the Jews, who were huge in number and formed an important community there.

مدینہ میں رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ کی آمد کے وقت شہر میں لوگوں کے چار بڑے گروہ تھے۔ ان میں مسلمان تھے جن میں شامل تھے مدینہ کے مقامی لوگ اور وہ جو مکہ سے ہجرت کر کے آئے تھے۔ پھر منافق تھے یہ وہ لوگ تھے جنہوں نے ظاہری طور پر اسلام قبول کر لیا تھا لیکن دراصل وہ اس کے خلاف تھے۔ علاوہ ازیں، اوس اور خزرج کے لوگ تھے جو ابھی تک کافر تھے لیکن ترین قیاس یہ تھا کہ وہ اسلام قبول کر لیں گے۔ آخر میں یہودی تھے جو بہت بڑی تعداد میں تھے اور وہاں کا ایک اہم گروہ تشکیل دیتے تھے۔

In order to ensure that all these people lived peacefully with each other, Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) invited the leading personalities of all the communities to discuss this matter. He wanted the different groups to reach a formal agreement for harmony among the communities and for the security of the city of Madina. He succeeded in drawing up the Constitution of Madina, also known as the Charter of Madina, through which a kind of understanding was developed among all the communities living in Madina. It mentioned the rights and duties of the Muslims and the Jews of Madina, gave freedom of religion, and prohibited any alliance with the outside enemies. It also declared that any dispute would be referred to Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) for settlement. In later years, he unified the different Arab tribes under Islam, carried out social and religious reforms, and administrative developments that further consolidated the Islamic community in Madina.

اس بات کو یقینی بنانے کے لئے کہ یہ تمام لوگ آپس میں امن کے ساتھ رہیں، رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ نے اس معاملہ پر بات کرنے کے لئے تمام گروہوں کے رہنما شخصیات کو مدعو کر دیے۔ آپ ﷺ چاہتے تھے کہ مختلف گروہ، گروہوں کے درمیان ہم آہنگی اور مدینہ شہر کی حفاظت کے لئے ایک متفقہ معاہدہ کر لیں۔ آپ ﷺ مدینہ کا آئین تشکیل دینے میں کامیاب ہو گئے، جو میثاق مدینہ کے نام سے بھی جاننا جاتا ہے، جس کے ذریعہ مدینہ میں رہائش پذیر تمام سماجی گروہوں کے درمیان ایک قسم کی باہمی ہم آہنگی قائم ہو گئی۔ اس نے مسلمانوں اور مدینہ کے یہودیوں کے حقوق اور فرائض کا تعین کیا، مذہب کی آزادی دی، اور بیرونی دشمنوں سے اتحاد کرنے کی ممانعت کر دی۔ اس میں اس کا اعلان بھی کیا گیا کہ ہر تنازعہ تصفیہ کے لئے رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ کے سامنے پیش کیا جائے گا۔ بعد کے سالوں میں آپ ﷺ نے مختلف عرب قبائل کو اسلام تلے متحد کر دیا، سماجی اور مذہبی اصلاحات کیں، اور انتظامی تبدیلیاں کیں جس نے مدینہ میں اسلامی معاشرے کو مزید مستحکم کر دیا۔

In the year 10 A.H., Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) undertook his farewell pilgrimage to Makkah. This farewell pilgrimage is one of the most significant historical events for the Muslims, for it was the first and last pilgrimage made by Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), as well as an occasion when he taught Muslims how to perform Hajj. Moreover, it was during this Hajj, that he delivered his last sermon in the Uman valley of Mount Arafat, on the 9th Dhu al-Hijjah, 10 A.H. (6th March 632). There were countless Muslims present with the Prophet (ﷺ) during his last pilgrimage when he delivered his last Sermon.

10 ہجری میں رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ نے مکہ میں حج الوداع ادا کیا۔ یہ حج الوداع مسلمانوں کے لئے اہم تاریخی واقعات میں سے ایک ہے کیونکہ یہ رسول اللہ حضرت محمد ﷺ کا پہلا اور آخری حج تھا، اس کے علاوہ یہ وہ موقع تھا جب آپ ﷺ نے مسلمانوں کو سکھایا کہ حج کیسے ادا کیا جاتا ہے۔ علاوہ ازیں، اسی حج کے دوران آپ ﷺ نے جبل عرفات کی عرندہ وادی میں 9 ذی الحجہ 10 ہجری (6 مارچ 632ء) کو اپنا آخری خطبہ دیا۔ اپنے آخری حج کے دوران جب آپ ﷺ اپنا آخری خطبہ دے رہے تھے تو آپ ﷺ کے ساتھ لاتعداد مسلمان موجود تھے۔

Delivering his last sermon, Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) first of all praised and thanked Allah, and then said, "O people, lend me an attentive ear, for I know not whether, after this year, I shall ever be amongst you again. Therefore, listen to what I am saying to you very carefully and take these words to those who could not be present here today."

اپنے آخری خطبے میں حضرت محمد ﷺ نے سب سے پہلے اللہ کی تعریف بیان کی اور اُس کا شکر ادا کیا اور پھر کہا، "اے لوگو! میری بات غور سے سنو کیونکہ میں یہ نہیں جانتا کہ اس سال کے بعد میں دوبارہ تمہارے درمیان موجود ہوں گا۔ اس لئے جو میں تم سے کہہ رہا ہوں غور سے سنو اور ان الفاظ کو ان لوگوں تک پہنچاؤ جو آج یہاں موجود نہیں ہیں۔

Then, amongst other things, he gave the following messages:

پھر دوسری چیزوں کے ساتھ ساتھ آپ ﷺ نے مندرجہ ذیل پیغامات دیئے:

"O People! Regard the life and property of every Muslim as a sacred trust. Return the goods entrusted to you to their rightful owners. Hurt no one so that no one may hurt you."

"اے لوگو! ہر مسلمان کی زندگی اور ملکیت کو ایک مقدس امانت سمجھنا۔ تمہارے پاس رکھی گئی امانتوں کو ان کے حقدار مالکوں کو واپس کرو۔ کسی کو تکلیف نہ پہنچاؤ تاکہ کوئی تمہیں تکلیف نہ پہنچائے۔"

"Beware of Satan, for the safety of your religion. He has lost all hope that he will ever be able to lead you astray in big things, so beware of following him in small things."

"اپنے دین کی سلامتی کے لئے شیطان سے خبردار رہنا۔ وہ مایوس ہو چکا ہے کہ وہ کبھی بھی تم کو بڑے معاملات میں گمراہ کر سکے گا، مگر چھوٹے معاملات میں اس کی پیروی کرنے سے بچنا۔"

"O People! It is true that you have certain rights with regard to your women, but they also have rights over you."

"اے لوگو! یہ سچ ہے کہ عورتوں کے معاملے میں تمہارے کچھ حقوق ہیں لیکن تم پر ان کے بھی کچھ حقوق ہیں۔"

"All mankind is from Adam and Adam was created from dust. The noblest of you in Allah's sight is the most God-fearing. An Arab has no superiority over a non-Arab, nor does a non-Arab have any superiority over an Arab; a white has no superiority over a black, nor does a black have any superiority over a white, except piety and good action. I, therefore, crush under my feet all the false claims to greatness and superiority founded on blood or wealth."

"تمام انسان حضرت آدم علیہ السلام کی اولاد ہیں اور حضرت آدم علیہ السلام مٹی سے پیدا کئے گئے تھے۔ اللہ تعالیٰ کی نظر میں سب سے زیادہ معزز وہ ہے جو سب سے زیادہ اللہ سے ڈرنے والا ہے۔ ایک عرب کو غیر عرب پر کوئی برتری حاصل نہیں، نہ ہی ایک غیر عرب کو عرب پر کوئی برتری حاصل ہے؛ گورے کو کالے پر کوئی برتری حاصل نہیں، نہ ہی کالے کو گورے پر کوئی برتری حاصل ہے، سوائے تقویٰ اور نیک اعمال کے۔ اس لئے میں خون اور دولت کی بنیاد پر قائم کئے گئے عظمت اور برتری کے سارے جھوٹے دعووں کو اپنے پاؤں تلے روندنا ہوں۔"

"Every Muslim is a brother to every Muslim and that the Muslims constitute one brotherhood. Nothing

shall be legitimate to a Muslim which belongs to a follow Muslim unless it was given freely and willingly."

"ہر مسلمان دوسرے مسلمان کا بھائی ہے اور یہ کہ مسلمان آپس میں ایک بھائی چارہ تشکیل دیتے ہیں۔ کسی مسلمان پر وہ چیز جائز نہیں جو کسی دوسرے مسلمان کی ملکیت ہے جب تک کہ وہ اُسے آزادانہ اپنی مرضی سے نہ دے دے۔"

The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) completed his last sermon by saying, "Be my witness, O God, that I have conveyed your message to you people."

نبی پاک ﷺ نے اپنا آخری خطبہ یہ کہتے ہوئے مکمل کیا، "اے اللہ میرا گواہ رہنا کہ میں نے تیرا پیغام تیرے بندوں تک پہنچا دیا ہے۔"

The messages conveyed in this sermon are for all times. If the Muslims follow these messages, the result will be a fair and equitable society, in which there will be honesty and justice, and meritocracy will be the guiding principle.

اس خطبے میں جو پیغامات دیئے گئے وہ تمام زمانوں کے لئے ہیں۔ اگر مسلمان ان پیغامات کو پر عمل پیرا ہوتے ہیں تو نتیجتاً ایک منصفانہ اور مساوی معاشرہ قائم ہوتا ہے جس میں ایمانداری، عدل اور اختیارات اہل لوگوں کے پاس ہونا رہنما اصول ہوں گے۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- The text is about:**
 - the battles of Islam
 - the family of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ)
 - the migration and teachings of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ)
 - the last pilgrimage
- Which of the following message is mentioned in the Last Sermon, as given in the text?**
 - People should not hurt others.
 - Both men and women have rights over each other
 - Muslims are a part of one brotherhood.
 - All of the above
- How did the Quraish treat the Holy Prophet (ﷺ)? They:**
 - favoured him
 - opposed him
 - loved him
 - criticized him
- When did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) migrated to Madina?**
 - 620 A.D.
 - 621 A.D.
 - 622 A.D.
 - 623 A.D.
- When did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) settled in Madina, which of the following groups of people lived there?**
 - Muslims and Jews
 - Muslims, pagans and Jews
 - Muslims, pagans, hypocrites and Jews
 - Muslims, hypocrites and Jews
- Where did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) deliver his last sermon?**
 - Quba mosque
 - Uranah valley
 - Jaba-e-Rehmat
 - Hudebia
- When did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) perform his last Hajj?**
 - 6th year of Hijra
 - 8th year of Hijra
 - 10th year of Hijra
 - 12th year of Hijra
- When was the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) was born?**
 - 560 A.D.
 - 561 A.D.
 - 570 A.D.
 - 571 A.D.
- What did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) ask the Quraish?**
 - not to worship their false gods
 - not to perform Hajj
 - not to kill animals
 - not to cheat

10. **What was the old name of Madina?**
 (a) Madinatul-Nabi (b) Yeman (c) Yathrib (d) Hudebia
11. **At the time of arrival of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) in Madina, which community was huge in number?**
 (a) Muslims (b) Hypocrites (c) Pagans (d) Jews
12. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) in a respected family of:**
 (a) Banu Abbas (b) Banu Umayyads (c) Quraish (d) Banu Baker
13. **Before the advent of Islam, the Quraish used to worship:**
 (a) the sun (b) the moon (c) stars (d) idols
14. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was born in:**
 (a) 560 A.D. (b) 571 A.D. (c) 572 A.D. (d) 573 A.D.
15. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was born in:**
 (a) Makkah (b) Madina (c) Yathrib (d) Quba
16. **Quraish opposed the new faith so much that the Prophet (ﷺ) had to ask the believers to migrate to:**
 (a) Makkah (b) Yathrib (c) Yeman (d) Quba
17. **The Prophet (ﷺ) reached the outskirts of Yathrib on:**
 (a) 21st June 622 (b) 25th June 622 (c) 28th June 622 (d) 29th June 622
18. **After eight days' journey, the Prophet (ﷺ) stopped at a place called:**
 (a) Quba (b) Madina (c) Yeman (d) Yathrib
19. **The Prophet (ﷺ) built a mosque at:**
 (a) Makkah (b) Yeman (c) Quba (d) none of them
20. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) entered Yathrib (Madina) on:**
 (a) 28th June 622 (b) 28th July 622 (c) 2nd June 622 (d) 2nd July 622
21. **The event of the Prophet's (ﷺ) migration to Madina is known as:**
 (a) miraj (b) migration (c) hijra (d) A.D.
22. **This event marks the beginning of the Islamic calendar.**
 (a) Birth of the Prophet (ﷺ) (b) Miraj
 (c) Death of the Prophet (ﷺ) (d) The Prophet's (ﷺ) migration to Madina
23. **After the migration of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), Yathrib was soon renamed:**
 (a) Madinat un-Nabi (b) un-Nabi (c) the city (d) All of them
24. **"Madinat un-Nabi" means:**
 (a) the city (b) the Prophet (ﷺ)
 (c) the center (d) City of the Prophet (ﷺ)
25. **In Madina, Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) succeeded in drawing up the Constitution of Madina, also known as:**
 (a) Chater of Madina (b) the Agreement of Madina
 (c) Sermon of Madina (d) All of them
26. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) undertook his farewell pilgrimage to Makkah in the year:**
 (a) 7 A.H. (b) 10 A.H. (c) 9 A.H. (d) 11 A.H.
27. **All mankind is from Adam and Adam was created from:**
 (a) water (b) fire (c) dust (d) stone
28. **No Arab is superior to:**
 (a) another Arab (b) a non-Arab (c) a Turk (d) an Egyptian

29. **Man is made superior only on the basis of:**
 (a) worship (b) wealth
 (c) blood (d) piety and good actions
30. **In Allah's sight, the noblest of you is he who is the most:**
 (a) intelligent (b) righteous (c) God-fearing (d) educated
31. **Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) is the:**
 (a) first prophet (b) last prophet (c) primitive prophet (d) None of them

Answers

1.	d	2.	d	3.	b	4.	c	5.	c	6.	b	7.	c	8.	d	9.	a	10.	c
11.	d	12.	c	13.	d	14.	b	15.	a	16.	b	17.	c	18.	a	19.	c	20.	d
21.	c	22.	d	23.	a	24.	d	25.	a	26.	b	27.	c	28.	b	29.	d	30.	c
31.	b																		

Summary / Note

Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was the last Prophet of God. He was born 571 A.D. in Makkah. He belonged to the noble family of Quraish.

When he began to preach Islam, the people of Makkah turned against him and became his fierce enemy, as they thought that Islam was against their gods and ancestors. The Prophet (ﷺ) then migrated to Madinah. This event is called Hijra and marks the beginning of the Islamic calendar.

He succeeded in drawing up the constitution of Madina, known as Charter of Madina, through which a kind of understanding was developed among all the communities living in Madina. The Charter of Madina and the Prophet's (ﷺ) reforms consolidated the Islamic community in Madina.

In the 10th Hijri, he performed his first and last Hajj with his followers. He gave his last sermon on Mount Arafat. The main points of his sermon are as follows: Regard the life and property of every Muslim as a sacred trust. Hurt no one. Both men and women have rights over each other. The superiority of man is not based on blood and wealth. In the sight of Allah everybody is equal, only the piety and goodness of a man makes him superior to others. All the Muslims are brothers. The most righteous is the most honourable. The message conveyed in this sermon are for all times.

Short Answer Questions

Q. 1 When and where was our Prophet (ﷺ) born? What family did he belong to?

Ans: Our beloved Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) was born in 571 A.D. in Makkah, Saudi Arabia. He belonged to the noble family of Quraish.

Q. 2 What did the Quraish worship? What did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) ask them?

Ans: The Quraish used to worship idols and did not believe in one God. The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) asked the Quraish not to worship their false gods. He told them that he was the Prophet of Allah and asked them to accept Islam and to worship the One and only true God.

Q. 3 What was the reaction of the Quraish to the Holy Prophet's (ﷺ) preaching? Why did the Quraish oppose them?

Ans: They opposed this new faith, and most of them refused to accept Islam. They thought that he

was against their gods and their ancestors. They wanted to go on worshipping idols.

Q. 4 Why did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) ask the believers to migrate to Madina?

Ans: The opposition of the Quraish to Islam became very fierce and terrible day by day. The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) asked the believers to migrate to Madina as they were in great trouble and agony in Makkah.

Q. 5 What is meant by Hijra?

Ans: Hijra means to migrate to a safer place for the safety of life and faith. In 622 A.D. the Prophet (ﷺ) himself migrated to Madina. This event is known in history as hijra. It marks the beginning of the Islamic calendar.

Q. 6 At the time of arrival of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) in Madina, which groups of people used to live there?

Ans: At the time of arrival of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) in Madina, the city had four broad groups of people.

- There were the Muslims; including those who were from Madina and those who had emigrated from Makkah.
- Then, there were the hypocrites; that is those who embraced Islam in name only, but actually were against it.
- Additionally, there were the people from Aws and Khazraj tribes, who were still pagans but were likely to accept Islam.
- Finally, there were Jews, who were huge in number and formed an important community there.

Q. 7 To ensure that people of Madina live in peace, what did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) do for that?

Ans: In order to ensure that all groups of people in Madina lived peacefully with each other, Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) invited the leading personalities of all the communities to discuss that matter. He wanted the different groups to reach a formal agreement for harmony among the communities and for the security of the city of Madina. He succeeded in drawing up the Constitution of Madina, also known as the Charter of Madina, through which a kind of understanding was developed among all the communities living in Madina.

Q. 8 What were mentioned in the Charter of Madina?

Ans: It was mentioned the rights and duties of the Muslims and the Jews of Madina, gave freedom of religion, and prohibited any alliance with the outside enemies. It also declared that any dispute would be referred to Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) for settlement.

Q. 9 What steps did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) take to consolidate the Muslim community in Madina?

Ans: First of all, in order to establish an atmosphere of peace in Madina, he succeeded in drawing up the Constitution of Madina, also known as the Charter of Madina, between all the groups of Madina, through which a kind of understanding was developed among all the communities living in Madina. In later years, he unified the different Arab tribes under Islam, carried out social and religious reforms, and administrative developments that further consolidated the Islamic community in Madina.

Q. 10 When did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) undertake his farewell pilgrimage to Makkah? What is its significance?

Ans: In the year 10 A.H., Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) undertook his farewell pilgrimage to Makkah. This farewell pilgrimage is one of the most significant historical events for the Muslims, for it was the first and last pilgrimage made by Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), as well as an occasion when he taught Muslims how to perform Hajj.

Q. 11 When and where did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) deliver his last sermon?

Ans: Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) delivered his last sermon in the Uranah valley of Mount Arafat, on 9th of Dhu al-Hijjah, 10 A.H. (6th March 632).

Q. 12 What are the three points of the last sermon of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ)?

Ans: The three main points of the last sermon of Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) are:

- (i) Regard the life and property of every Muslim as a sacred trust.
- (ii) The superiority of men is not based on blood and wealth. In the sight of Allah everybody is equal. Only the goodness of a man makes him superior to others. The most righteous is the most honourable.
- (iii) All the Muslims are brothers to each other.

Q. 13 What did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) say about women in your last sermon?

Ans: He said, "It is true that you have certain rights with regards to your women, but they also have rights over you."

Q. 14 What makes a man superior to others?

Ans: Only the goodness of a man makes him superior to others. No Arab is superior to a non-Arab. Nor is a white man in any way better than a black man. The claims to greatness founded on blood and wealth are false.

Q. 15 What did the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) say about the Muslims?

Ans: He said that a Muslim is another Muslim's brother. All the Muslims are brothers among themselves. It is due to the fact that all the men are the offspring of Adam. He also said that regard the life, honour and property of every Muslim as a sacred trust.

Q. 16 What does the last sermon teach us?

Ans: The last sermon teaches us that none shares the authority and power of God. The whole humanity is the offspring of Adam and the most righteous is the most honourable. Only the goodness of a man makes him superior to others. All the Muslims are brothers to each other. Life, honour and property of every Muslim is sacred trust.

Q. 17 If the Muslims follow the messages given in the last sermon of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ), what will be the result?

Ans: The messages conveyed in the last sermon are for all times. If the Muslims follow these messages, the result will be a fair and equitable society, in which there will be honesty and justice, and meritocracy will be the guiding principle.

Q. 18 What must we do to be a good Muslim?

Ans: We should do good deeds to be a good Muslim.

Exercise - 1

For Q.1 & Q.2 see "Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)" 1 & 2 on page 08.

Exercise - 2

Find the following words in the text and underline them:

ancestors	migrate	aggressive	hypocrites	pagans	harmony
prohibited	alliance	unified	consolidated	astray	beware
superiority	piety	legitimate	equitable	meritocracy	principle

Next, work in pairs and try and guess what the words means.

Ans: See the meaning of these words in the beginning of this unit.

Exercise - 3

Choose any ten words from the list above and use them in your own sentences. Write these sentences in your notebook.

Ans:

Word	Sentence
ancestors	My ancestors came to Lahore during the 1700s.
migrate	The birds are currently beginning their large migration to the south.
aggressive	Watching violence on TV makes some children more aggressive.
hypocrites	They are such hypocrites that they never practise what they preach.
pagans	The pagans had statues of gods and places of sacrifice.
harmony	I try to live in harmony with nature.
prohibited	Smoking in this hotel is strictly prohibited.
alliance	In the World War II, Germany made an alliance with Italy.
unified	The couple made a unified decision to buy the house they both liked the best.
consolidated	The company has consolidated its position as the country's leading gas supplier.
astray	The boy was led astray by bad companions.
beware	Beware of pickpockets.
superiority	Her sense of superiority makes her very unpopular.
piety	Two old men touches our hearts and teaches us what true piety.
legitimate	Their business operations are perfectly legitimate.
equitable	Each person must have an equitable share.
meritocracy	The theory assumes the existence of a "meritocracy" means that there is equal opportunity for all.
principle	Mr. Ahmed was a man of principle and good to his word.

Exercise - 4

For Q.1 & Q.9 see "Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)" 3 & 11 on page 08.

Exercise - 5

Read the text and find out whether the statements are right or wrong. Tick the appropriate column. One has been done for you as an example:

S.No.	Statements	Right	Wrong
1.	The mission of the Prophet (ﷺ) continued for 23 years.	✓	
2.	All the Quraish refused to accept Islam.		
3.	The city of Yathrib was less than 320 miles away from Makkah.		

4.	The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) decided to build a mosque at a place outside Yathrib before entering the city.		
5.	Today, Yathrib is called Madinatul-Nabi.		
6.	The people of Madina agreed that Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) should settle their disputes.		
7.	The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) addressed such a large gathering of Muslims for the last time at Arafat.		
8.	Islam has different laws for the black and for the white people.		
9.	All human beings are children of Adam and Adam was created from dust.		
10.	Only the people who heard the last sermon were supposed to follow it.		
11.	Before the advent of Islam, Quraish used to worship idols and did not believe in one God.		
12.	After twelve days' journey, the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) reached the outskirts of Yathrib.		
13.	The farewell pilgrimage is one of the most significant historical events for the Muslims.		
14.	The noblest of you in Allah's sight is the most God-fearing.		
15.	Everything is legitimate to a Muslim which belongs to a fellow Muslim.		

Answers

1.	Right	2.	Wrong	3.	Right	4.	Right	5.	Wrong	6.	Right
7.	Right	8.	Wrong	9.	Right	10.	Wrong	11.	Right	12.	Wrong
13.	Right	14.	Right	15.	Wrong						

Exercise - 6

The following table has messages from the Last Sermon of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ). The first part of the sentence is given in column A and the second part is given in column B, in a jumbled order. Read the text, match the part in column A with the correct part in column B and write the answer in column C. The first one has been done for you as an example.

No.	Column A	Column B	C
1.	Only those people were superior	(a) to the people to whom they belong.	1 - f
2.	All Muslims were tied to each other	(b) that were based on blood and wealth were useless.	
3.	The only thing that made one person better than the other	(c) you may get hurt in return.	
4.	No Muslim had a right to things belonging to other Muslims	(d) have rights over each other.	

5.	Satan will try to misguide you in small matters	(e) as a sacred trust.	
6.	Therefore, all claims to superiority	(f) who led a righteous life.	
7.	Return all things kept with you in trust	(g) in the bond of brotherhood.	
8.	Both men and women	(h) so be careful.	
9.	If you will hurt others	(i) unless they gave these of their own free will.	
10.	Consider the life and property of every Muslim	(j) was the goodness with which they led their lives.	

Answers

1.	1 f	2.	2 g	3.	3 j	4.	4 i	5.	5 h	6.	6 b	7.	7 a	8.	8 d	9.	9 c	10.	10 e
----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	----	-----	-----	------

Exercise - 7

Work in pairs and complete the following statements. Write the complete sentences in your notebook.

- Most of the Quraish refused to accept Islam because they thought that the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) was _____.
- The day the Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ) entered Yathrib, marks the start of the _____.
- The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) invited the leaders of all the communities living in Madina to discuss _____.
- The three main points of the Charter of Madina were _____.
- In order to strengthen the position of the Muslims in Madina, the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) took three major steps, which were _____.
- The farewell pilgrimage of the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) is an important event for the Muslims because _____.
- The Holy Prophet (ﷺ) asked the people in the gathering to listen carefully as _____.
- The Muslims can ensure that all people get their fair share by _____.

Answers

1.	against their gods and their ancestors.
2.	Islamic calendar
3.	harmony and peace among them.
4.	rights and duties of the Muslims and the Jews, freedom of religion and prohibition of any alliance with the outside enemies.
5.	he unified the different Arab tribes under Islam, carried out social and religious reforms, and administrative developments.
6.	for it was the first and the last pilgrimage made by Prophet Muhammad (ﷺ), as well as an occasion when he taught Muslims how to perform the Hajj.
7.	the Holy Prophet (ﷺ) knew that he would not be amongst them after that year.
8.	making honesty, justice and meritocracy our guiding principle.

Unit
2.1

Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai

شاہ عبداللطیف بھٹائی

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
abundance	a very large quantity افراط - کثرت	mound	a small hill نیلہ
acceptable	able to be agreed on قابل قبول	mystic	orphyic صوفیانہ
admiration	respect and warm approval مداح	navigation	seamanship جہاز رانی
ancestral	belonging to ancestors آبائی	oral	verbal زبانی
atmosphere	ambience فضاء	pious	devoutly religious متقی - نیک
celebrate	commemorate (یاد) منانا	praise	express one's respect and gratitude حمد - ثناء
commence	begin - start شروع ہونا	prosperous	flourish خوشحال
compile	collect something to make book مرتب کرنا	reflect	throw back light عکاسی کرنا
compose	write or create تحریر کرنا	renowned	famous مشہور - مقبول
delicate	intricate نازک	restless	uneasy بے چین
devotees	fans عقیدت مند	reverence	A feeling of profound respect احترام - ادب
devotion	religious worship پر خلوص عبادت	saint	a person of exceptional holiness. ولی - درویش
dignity	worthy of esteem or respect عظمت - وقار	sensitive	easily offended or upset حساس - گداز
distant	far away دور دراز	shrine	tomb مزار - درگاہ
dome	cupola گنبد	spiritual	affecting the human spirit or soul روحانی - دینی
domestic	relating to home گھریلو	tender	showing gentleness, kindness, and affection شفیق - ملنسار
elegant	graceful شاندار - پر وقار	traditions	customs روایات
extent	expanse وسعت	verses	stanzas اشعار
grand	magnificent عالیشان		
impressed	feeling or showing admiration متاثر ہونا		
lovingly	with love پیارے		
mausoleum	a building housing a tomb مقبرہ		

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai, who is lovingly called Lal Latif by his devotees, was a noted Sindhi Sufi scholar, mystic, saint, and poet. He is considered as the greatest Muslim poet of the Sindhi language. Information about the life of Bhitai has mostly been collected from oral traditions. A renowned

Pakistani scholar, educationist, and writer of plays, dramas and stories, Mirza Kalich Beg, is said to have collected details about the early life of Shah Bhitai from some of the old people living at that time. These people had heard these facts from their fathers and grandfathers, some of whom had seen Shah Latif in person and had even spoken to him.

شاہ عبداللطیف بھٹائی، جن کو ان کے عقیدت مند پیار سے لعل لطیف کہتے ہیں، ایک قابل ذکر سندھی صوفی عالم، ولی، درویش اور شاعر تھے۔ ان کو سندھی زبان کا سب سے عظیم مسلم شاعر سمجھا جاتا ہے۔ بھٹائی کی زندگی کے متعلق معلومات زیادہ تر زبانی روایات سے اکٹھی کی گئی ہیں۔ کہا جاتا ہے کہ ایک مشہور پاکستانی اسکالر، ماہر تعلیم اور ڈراموں اور کہانیوں کے مصنف، مرزا قلیچ بیگ نے شاہ بھٹائی کی ابتدائی زندگی کے بارے میں معلومات اُس وقت زندہ کچھ عمر رسیدہ افراد سے جمع کیں۔ ان لوگوں نے یہ معلومات اپنے والد یا دادا سے کئی تھیں جن میں سے کچھ نے بذات خود شاہ لطیف کو دیکھا تھا اور ان سے بات کی تھی۔

As a Sufi poet, Latif's "Urs" is held at his shrine every year, on 14th Safar, the second month of the Muslim calendar. Thousands of people gather and listen to the saint's songs sung on the 'Tambooro'. Many learned men read papers that tell about Latif's life and his poetry. Some of the key aspects shared by different scholars about Lal Latif are given below:

بحیثیت ایک صوفی شاعر، لطیف کا عرس ہر سال ان کے مزار پر 14 صفر، مسلم کلینڈر کا دوسرا مہینہ، میں منعقد کیا جاتا ہے۔ ہزاروں لوگ جمع ہوتے ہیں اور 'ٹمبوورو' پر گائے جانے والے درویش کے گیت سنتے ہیں۔ کئی عالم فاضل لوگ مقالات پڑھتے ہیں جو لطیف کی زندگی اور شاعری کے بارے میں بتاتے ہیں۔ لعل لطیف کے بارے میں مختلف اسکالروں نے کچھ اہم پہلوؤں پر روشنی ڈالی ہے وہ نیچے دیئے جا رہے ہیں:

1. Background and Family

Shah Latif's ancestral roots lay in Afghanistan. Some historians say that the Shah Latif's father, Syed Habib Shah, migrated from Matyaru, his ancestral home in Afghanistan, to Bhainpur in Sindh, in order to gain spiritual contact with Bilawal, a local pious man. Others say that his ancestors migrated to Sindh from Hirat. Sindh was then a centre of Muslim culture and Shah Latif's ancestors liked it so much that they decided to make it their home.

شاہ لطیف کی آبائی جڑیں افغانستان میں تھیں۔ کچھ تاریخ دان کہتے ہیں کہ شاہ لطیف کے والد، سید حبیب شاہ، نے ایک مقامی صوفی شخص بلاول سے روحانی فیض حاصل کرنے کے لئے افغانستان میں اپنے آبائی وطن تیار سے بھینپور، سندھ ہجرت کی تھی۔ کچھ کہتے ہیں کہ آپ کے آباؤ اجداد نے ہرات سے سندھ ہجرت کی تھی۔ سندھ اُس وقت مسلم ثقافت کا مرکز تھا اور شاہ لطیف کے آباؤ اجداد کو یہ اتنا پسند آیا کہ انھوں نے اسے اپنا وطن بنانے کا فیصلہ کر لیا۔

2. The Name Bhitai

In 1742, Shah Latif left his home and went to live on a mound at some distance from his village. A mound of sand is called 'Bhit' in Sindhi. Due to the fact that he lived on this mound for the rest of his life, Shah Latif came to be known as 'the Saint of Bhit'. To this day, he is famous all over the country as Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai or Shah Latif of the Mound.

1742 عیسوی میں اپنا گھر چھوڑ دیا اور اپنے گاؤں سے کچھ دور ایک ٹیلے پر رہنے لگے۔ سندھی میں ریت کے ٹیلے کو 'بھٹ' کہا جاتا ہے۔ اس حقیقت کے پیش نظر کہ انھوں نے اپنی باقی عمر اسی ٹیلے پر گزاری، شاہ لطیف 'بھٹ کا درویش' کے نام سے پہچانے جانے لگے۔ اس دن تک وہ پورے ملک میں شاہ عبداللطیف بھٹائی یا شاہ لطیف ٹیلے والے کے نام سے مشہور ہیں۔

3. Early Life and Education

Shah Bhitai was born in 1689 A.D. / 14th Safar 1102 A.H., in a small village called 'Hala Haveli', a few miles to the east of the present town of Bhit Shah. Latif was raised during the golden age of Sindhi culture. His first teacher was Akhund Noor Muhammad Bhatti, but mainly he was self-educated.

شاہ بھٹائی 1689 عیسوی / 14 صفر 1102 ہجری میں ایک چھوٹے سے گاؤں 'ہالا حویلی' میں پیدا ہوئے جو بھٹ شاہ کے موجودہ شہر سے مشرق میں کچھ میل دور ہے۔ لطیف کی پرورش سندھی ثقافت کے سنہری دور میں ہوئی۔ ان کے پہلے استاد خود نور محمد بھٹی تھے لیکن زیادہ تر انھوں نے خود اپنے آپ کو تعلیم سے آراستہ کیا۔

Although he received little formal education, the *Risalo* provides proof that he knew Arabic and Persian quite well. Various references in *Shah jo Risalo* indicates that he had in-depth knowledge of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths. His poetic collections included the *Masnavi* of Moulana Jalaluddin Rumi and Shah Karim's poems.

حالانکہ انھوں نے باقاعدہ طور پر بہت کم تعلیم حاصل کی لیکن رسالہ یہ ثبوت دیتا ہے کہ وہ عربی اور فارسی اچھی طرح جانتے تھے۔ شاہ کے رسالے میں کئی حوالے ہیں جو یہ ظاہر کرتے ہیں کہ ان کو قرآن مجید اور حدیث کا گہرا علم تھا۔ ان کے شاعرانہ ذخیرے میں مولانا جلال الدین رومی کی مثنوی اور شاہ کریم کی نظمیں شامل تھیں۔

4. Youth

Young Latif had a very sensitive mind. While he was only a boy, he started composing poetry. His admiration for the beauty of nature filled his heart with the love of God. In 1713 the Sufi poet married with Bibi Saidha Begum. His wife died at an early age, before she could have any children. However, Shah never married again. His heart turned more and more towards religion and devotion and he felt restless; he found it difficult to live a normal domestic life.

نوجوان لطیف ایک حساس ذہن رکھتے تھے۔ ابھی وہ بچے ہی تھے کہ انھوں نے شاعری لکھنا شروع کر دی تھی۔ قدرتی (مناظر) کی خوبصورتی سے لگاؤ نے ان کے دل کو خدا کی محبت سے بھر دیا۔ 1713 عیسوی میں اس صوفی شاعر کی شادی بی بی سعیدہ بیگم سے ہوئی۔ بچوں کی پیدائش سے پہلے ہی ان کی بیوی کم عمری میں ہی انتقال کر گئیں۔ شاہ نے دوبارہ شادی نہیں کی۔ ان کا دل زیادہ سے زیادہ مذہب اور تصوف کی طرف مائل ہو رہا تھا اور خود کو بے چین محسوس کرتے تھے؛ انھوں نے محسوس کیا کہ ایک عام سی گھریلو زندگی گزارنا ان کے لئے مشکل ہے۔

5. Spiritual Growth

Latif's love of God grew more and more, to the extent that he found pleasure only in devotion. As a result, he spent most of his time in prayers and deep thinking. His spiritual power grew stronger with prayers and devotion, so much so that people began to be attracted towards him. Anyone who came to him was strongly impressed by his gentle ways, and his followers increased day by day.

خدا کے لئے لطیف کی محبت زیادہ سے زیادہ ہوتی گئی، اس حد تک گئی کہ ان کو صرف تصوف میں ہی راحت ملتی تھی۔ اس کا نتیجہ یہ ہوا کہ آپ اپنا زیادہ تر وقت عبادتوں اور گہرے تفکر میں گزارتے تھے۔ عبادتوں اور تصوف سے آپ کی روحانی قوت اتنی بڑھی کہ لوگ آپ کی طرف مائل ہونے لگے۔ آپ کے پاس جو بھی آتا، آپ کے شفیق رویہ سے بہت متاثر ہوتا اور آپ کے پیروکاروں کی تعداد میں دن بدن اضافہ ہوتا چلا گیا۔

Close to the mound on which Lal Latif came to live is a natural lake. His poetic nature loved the calm atmosphere. He would spend much of his time sitting on the bank of this lake. As he sat there, he prayed to God and sometimes composed verses in His praise.

وہ ٹیلہ جس پر لعل لطیف رہنے آئے تھے، اُس کے قریب ایک قدرتی جھیل تھی۔ اُن کی شاعرانہ فطرت ہر سکون ماحول کو پسند کرتی تھی۔ وہ اپنا زیادہ تر وقت جھیل کے کنارے بیٹھ کر گزار دیتے تھے۔ جب وہ وہاں بیٹھے ہوتے تو خدا کی عبادت کرتے اور کبھی کبھی اُس کی ثناء میں اشعار لکھتے۔

6. Death and Remembrance

Lal Latif died in 1752, on the mound where he had lived. He was buried on the same mound. It is said that one day he ordered the musicians to play music. They played continuously for three days. When they stopped playing, they found the poet dead. A famous king of Sindh, Gulam Shah Kalhoro, was so devoted to him that he built a grand mausoleum over his grave. The lovely white dome of the shrine represents the purity and dignity of Latif.

لعل لطیف کا انتقال 1752 عیسوی میں اُسی ٹیلے پر ہوا جہاں وہ رہتے تھے۔ اُن کو اُسی ٹیلے پر ہی دفن کیا گیا۔ یہ کہا جاتا ہے کہ ایک دن انھوں نے موسیقاروں کو موسیقی بجانے کا حکم دیا۔ وہ تین دن تک مسلسل بجاتے رہے۔ جب انھوں نے بجانا بند کیا تو انھیں شاعر مر رہا ملا۔ سندھ کے مشہور بادشاہ غلام شاہ کلہوڑو آپ کا اتنا عقیدت مند تھا کہ اُس نے آپ کی قبر پر ایک عالیشان مقبرہ تعمیر کیا۔ مزار کا خوبصورت سفید گنبد لطیف کی پاکیزگی اور وقار کو ظاہر کرتا ہے۔

His devotees collected his poetry and this collection is called the "Risalo of Shah Abdul Latif". Every year the devotees celebrate his Urs, which commences on 14th Safar and lasts for three day.

اُن کے عقیدت مندوں نے آپ کی شاعری کو جمع کیا اور اس مجموعہ کو "شاہ عبداللطیف کا رسالہ" کہا جاتا ہے۔ ہر سال آپ کے عقیدت مند آپ کا عرس مناتے ہیں جو 14 صفر کو شروع ہوتا ہے اور تین دن تک جاری رہتا ہے۔

7. Shah Latif's Poetry

شاہ لطیف کی شاعری

Shah Abdul Latif was a sensitive, gentle and kind soul. He was a Sufi in the true sense of the word. The word 'latif' literally means fine, delicate, tender, elegant, and light. This meaning is truly reflected in both his poetry and his personality. Moreover, he was a poet of the people, so he wrote in the language of the common man. In his poems he writes mainly about Sindh and its neighbouring regions. However, he also mentions distant cities, such as Istanbul and Samarkand, and also talks about Sindhi sailors (Samundi), their navigation techniques, and their voyages as far as the Malabar coast, Sri Lanka and the Island of Java. Here is the translation of one such verse:

شاہ عبداللطیف ایک حساس، نرم اور رحمدل انسان تھے۔ وہ صحیح معنوں میں ایک صوفی تھے۔ لفظ 'لطیف' کے لغوی معنی ہیں باریک، نازک، نرم، پر وقار اور ہلکا۔ یہ معنی صحیح معنوں میں اُن کی شاعری اور شخصیت میں جھلکتے ہیں۔ علاوہ ازیں، وہ عوام کے شاعر تھے، اسی لئے انھوں نے ایک عام انسان کی زبان میں لکھا۔ اپنی نظموں میں وہ زیادہ تر سندھ اور اُس کے پڑوسی علاقوں کے بارے میں لکھتے ہیں۔ علاوہ ازیں، وہ دور دراز شہروں جیسا کہ استنبول اور سر قند کا ذکر بھی کرتے ہیں اور وہ سندھی ملاخوں (سامندی)، ان کی جہاز رانی کی ٹیکنیک اور مالابار کے ساحل، سری لنکا اور جاوا کے جزائر تک اُن کے سفر کی بات بھی کرتے ہیں۔ یہاں اُن کے ایک ایسے ہی شعر کا ترجمہ دیا جا رہا ہے:

Cloud return and once again, it rains. Lightning flashes from all sides, and with it, some go to Istanbul, others turn to the west. Some shine bright over China and others take care of Samarkand. Some wander to Rome, to Kabul and Kandahar, some lie on Delhi. Deccan, thundering over..... My beloved Allah, may you always make Sindh, a land of abundance, my beloved Allah, may you make prosperous the whole universe.

(Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai, Sur Sarang, Shah Jo Risalo)

بادل واپس آتے ہیں اور ایک بار پھر بارش ہوتی ہے۔ ہر طرف بجلی چمکتی ہے اور اُس کے ساتھ کچھ استنبول جاتے ہیں، دوسرے مغرب کا رخ کرتے ہیں۔ کچھ چین میں زور شور سے چمکتے ہیں اور کچھ سر قند کا خیال کرتے ہیں۔ کچھ روم، کابل اور قندھار کا رخ کرتے ہیں، کچھ دہلی، دکن میں بیٹھے ہیں، گرج ختم ہوتی ہے۔۔۔۔۔ میرے پیارے اللہ، سندھ کی سرزمین کو ہمیشہ کثرت سے عطا کرنا، میرے پیارے اللہ، پوری کائنات کو خوشحال بنادے۔

(شاہ عبداللطیف بھٹائی، سر سارنگ، شاہ کا رسالہ)

His collected poems have been compiled in Shah Jo Risalo, which has been translated into English, Urdu, and other languages. His spiritual and mystic poetry carries a message of love, which makes it universal and acceptable to the entire human race. Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai is, and always will, remembered for his great poetry with love and reverence.

اُن کی جمع شدہ نظمیں شاہ کے رسالے میں مرتب کی گئی ہیں جس کا ترجمہ انگریزی، اردو اور دیگر زبانوں میں ہو چکا ہے۔ اُن کی روحانی اور درویشانہ شاعری محبت کا پیغام لئے ہوئے ہے جو اُسے عالمگیر اور پوری انسانی نسل کے لئے قابل قبول بناتی ہے۔ شاہ عبداللطیف بھٹائی کو اُن کی عظیم شاعر کے باعث پیارا و احترام سے یاد کیا جاتا ہے بلکہ ہمیشہ یاد کیا جائے گا۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai is lovingly called:
(a) Lal Latif (b) Saint Latif (c) Shah Latif (d) Haq Latif
- Latif's Urs is held at his shrine every year on 14th:
(a) Zeeqad (b) Shaban (c) Safar (d) Shawal
- Shah Latif's ancestral roots lay in:
(a) Istanbul (b) Afghanistan (c) India (d) Sindh



4. **Shah Latif's father's name was:**
(a) Syed Karim Shah (b) Syed Rahim Shah (c) Syed Haseeb Shah (d) Syed Habib Shah
5. **Some historians say that Shah Latif's ancestors had migrated to Sindh from:**
(a) Hirat (b) Istanbul (c) Basra (d) Isphahan
6. **Shah Latif left his home and went to live on a mound in:**
(a) 1689 (b) 1102 (c) 1742 (d) 1713
7. **In Sindhi language, a mound of sand is called:**
(a) Bhit (b) Chhit (c) Pat (d) Ghit
8. **Shah Abdul Latif Bhitai was born in:**
(a) 1100 Hijri (b) 1102 Hijri (c) 1103 Hijri (d) 1104 Hijri
9. **Shah Latif Bhitai was born in:**
(a) 1642 A.D. (b) 1660 A.D. (c) 1676 A.D. (d) 1689 A.D.
10. **Shah Latif was born in a small village called:**
(a) Bhit Shah (b) Matli (c) Hala Haveli (d) Tando Bago
11. **Shah Latif's first teacher was:**
(a) Akhund Noor Muhammad (b) Moulana Jalaluddin Rumi
(c) Syed Karim Shah (d) Syed Habib Shah
12. **Shah Latif got married in:**
(a) 1689 (b) 1742 (c) 1713 (d) 1756
13. **Shah Latif married with:**
(a) Bibi Roshan Begum (b) Bibi Saidha Begum
(c) Bibi Jahan Ara Begum (d) Bibi Kalsoom Begum
14. **Close to the mound on which Lal Latif came to live is a:**
(a) mountain (b) forest (c) desert (d) lake
15. **Lal Latif died in:**
(a) 1713 (b) 1742 (c) 1752 (d) 1763
16. **Over Shah Latif's grave, a shrine was built by:**
(a) Ghulam Ali Qadir (b) Ghulam Shah Kalhoro
(c) Ghulam Jaskani (d) Gulam Shah Talpur
17. **Shah Latif's collection of poems is called:**
(a) Shah Jo Risalo (b) Shah Jo Geet (c) Shah Jo Shairi (d) Shah Jo Nazm
18. **Shah Latif's Urs lasts for:**
(a) three days (b) five days (c) six days (d) seven days
19. **Shah Latif started writing poems in his:**
(a) childhood (b) boyhood (c) adulthood (d) old age
20. **Latif's songs is sung on the:**
(a) alghoza (b) murli (c) tambooro (d) dhol
21. **Shah Latif Bhitai's message is the message of:**
(a) brotherhood (b) peace (c) friendship (d) love
22. **The Risalo provides proof that Shah Latif knew:**
(a) German and French (b) Spanish and Dutch
(c) Arabic and Persian (d) Turkish and Hindi



Answers

1.	a	2.	c	3.	b	4.	d	5.	a	6.	c	7.	a	8.	b
9.	d	10.	c	11.	a	12.	c	13.	b	14.	d	15.	c	16.	b
17.	a	18.	a	19.	b	20.	c	21.	d	22.	c				

Summary / Note

The great saint Shah Abdul Latif, is lovingly called Lal Latif by his devotees. He was born 1102 Hijri in a small village called 'Hala Haveli'. According to some historians his ancestors migrated to Sindh from Hirat (Afghanistan). His father's name was Syed Habib Shah. His wife died at an early age. He was very sensitive. His heart soon filled with love of God. The beauty of nature aroused strongly his feelings. His heart turned more and more towards religion and devotion. He spent the last part of his life on a Bhit. In Sindhi language, 'Bhit' means mound of sand, that is why he is called Shah Latif Bhitai. Shah Latif was not only saint and mystic but also a poet and musician. His poetry is simple and moving. The collection of his poetry is called 'Shah Jo Risalo' which has been translated into many languages. The message of Shah Latif is love. Shah Latif died on the 'Bhit' and was buried there. A shrine was built over his grave by Ghulam Shah Kalhoro, where his Urs is held on 14th Safar every year. People love him and sing his poems.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 How was information about Shah Latif's early life collected? Why was it collected in this manner?

Ans: Information about the life of Bhitai has mostly been collected from oral traditions. A renowned Pakistani scholar, educationist, and writer Mirza Kalich Beg, is said to have collected details about the early life of Shah Bhitai from some of the old people living at that time. These people had heard these facts from their fathers and grandfathers, some of whom had seen Shah Latif in person and had even spoken to him.

Q.2 Why is Shah Latif called the 'Saint of Bhit'?

Ans: A mound of sand is called 'Bhit' in Sindhi language. After his father's and wife's death, Shah Latif left his home and passed the rest of his life on a mound, which was near his village. Shah is thus called the 'Saint of Bhit' or 'Bhitai'.

Q.3 Why did Shah Latif not marry again after his wife dead?

Ans: Shah Latif did not marry again after his wife dead because his heart turned more and more towards religion and devotion and he felt restless; he found it difficult to live a normal domestic life.

Q.4 Why did people become Shah Latif's followers?

Ans: Latif's love of God grew more and more, to the extent that he found pleasure only in devotion. As a result, he spent most of his time in prayers and deep thinking. His spiritual power grew stronger with prayers and devotion, so much so that people began to be attracted towards him. Anyone who came to him was strongly impressed by his gentle ways, and his followers increased day by day.

Q.5 What does Shah Latif's poetry and work tell us about his knowledge and skills?

Ans: Although he received little formal education, the Risalo provides proof that he knew Arabic and Persian well. Various references in Shah Jo Risalo indicates that he had in-depth knowledge of the Holy Quran and the Hadiths. His poetic collections included the Masnavi of Moulana Jalaluddin Rumi and Shah Karim's poems.

Q.6 Name the places in the text mention in Shah Latif's poetry. Why do you think these places have been mentioned by him?

Ans: The places in the text mention in Shah Latif's poetry are Istanbul, China, Samarkand, Rome, Kabul, Kandahar, Delhi and Deccan. I think these places are mentioned by him because he had been to those places or because those places were popular on those days.

Q.7 Why is Shah Latif's key message in his verses acceptable to everyone?

Ans: Shah Latif's spiritual and mystic poetry carries a message of love, which makes it universal and acceptable to the entire human race.

Q.8 Can we put his message into practice in today's world? If 'yes' how, if 'no why not?

Ans: Yes, we can put his message into practice in today's world. We should spread brotherhood and equality of man among us and try to please God by good deeds. This should be our goal of life in today's world. Today's world need love and brotherhood more than ever before.

Q.9 When and where was Shah Abdul Latif born? Where did Shah's ancestors migrate from?

Ans: Shah Abdul Latif was born in 1689 A.D/14th Safar 1102 A.H. in a small village called 'Hala Haveli'. According to some historians, Shah's ancestors migrated to Sindh from Hirat (Afghanistan).

Q.10 What kind of man was Shah Abdul Latif?

Ans: He was very sensitive. His heart was filled with the love of God. The beauty of nature aroused his feelings strongly. He started writing poetry when he was only a boy.

Q.11 When and whom did Shah Latif marry? When did his wife died?

Ans: In 1713, Shah Latif married with Bibi Saidha Begum. His wife died at an early age, before she could have any children.

Q.12 Why did Shah Abdul Latif keep sitting on the bank of the lake near the mound?

Ans: Shah Latif loved peace and quietness of the scene. He spent much of his time sitting on the bank of the lake. As he sat there, he prayed to God and sometimes composed verses in God's praise.

Q.13 What are the qualities of Shah Latif's poetry?

Ans: The qualities of Shah Latif's poetry are simplicity and moving music. Shah wrote the poetry in the language of a common man.

Q.14 What is the message of Shah Latif to us?

Ans: Latif's message is the message of love. He believed in the brotherhood and equality of man and in pleasing God by good deeds. According to him, this is the goal of life. He preaches the same through his poetry which is in the language of common people.

Q.15 Write few sentences about the shrine of Shah Latif.

Ans: A famous king of Sindh, Ghulam Shah Kalhoro, was so devoted to Shah Latif that he built a grand mausoleum over his grave. The lovely white dome of the shrine represents the purity and dignity of Latif.

Q.16 What do you know about the collection of Shah Abdul Latif' poems?

Ans: Latif's devotees collected his poetry. This collection is called 'Shah Jo Risalo'. His poetry

expresses love, brotherhood, equality of men and pleasing God. Moreover, it is simple and moving. The collection of Shah Latif's poetry is so valued that it has been translated into many international languages.

Exercise - 1

(a) How many aspects of Shah Abdul Latif's life have been covered in the text?

Ans: There are 7 aspects of Shah Abdul Latif's life have been covered in the text.

(b) List all these aspects in your notebook as shown below.

The first aspect is about his 'Background and Family'.

The second aspect _____.

The third _____.

Ans: The first aspect is about his 'Background and Family'.

The second aspect is about his 'Name Bhitai'.

The third aspect is about his 'Early Life and Education'.

The fourth aspect is about his 'Youth'.

The fifth aspect is about his 'Spiritual Growth'.

The sixth aspect is about his 'Death and Remembrance'.

The seventh aspect is about his 'Poetry'.

Exercise - 2

Underline the correct answers from the choices provided. The first one has been done as an example.

(i) Those who have an abundance of wealth have

(a) a little wealth

(b) a lot of wealth

(c) some wealth

(ii) My family's ancestral roots are in Sindh, means my parents, grandparents and great grandparents lived in Sindh since

(a) my grandparents got married

(b) my birth

(c) many generation

(iii) The new academic year commences in our school in April.

(a) ends

(b) progresses

(c) begins

(iv) The devotees of some saints walk to shrines barefoot.

(a) children

(b) followers

(c) caretakers

(v) Many people go to a mystic to ask for the fulfilment of their wishes.

(a) person who live alone

(b) new person

(c) person with spiritual power

(vi) The sailors of Sindh used to travel to far off lands as they had good navigation skills.

(a) ship directing

(b) engineering

(c) swimming

(vii) For centuries, the main medium for transfer of information was oral traditions.

(a) horses

(b) passing of information by word of mouth

(c) messages

(viii) My brother is a restless person, always looking for new things to do.

(a) genius

(b) different

(c) change seeking

(ix) Truly great persons deserve reverence as they play a positive role in our lives.

(a) richness and wealth

(b) leadership positions

(c) respect and admiration

(x) Islam's message of peace is universal, as without it there can be no happiness.

(a) good

(b) applicable to all people in the world

(c) acceptable

Answers

1. b 2. c 3. c 4. b 5. c 6. a 7. b 8. c 9. c 10. b

Exercise - 3

Work in pairs and complete the sentences below with a word written in bold in Exercise 2. You can use one word only once. Write the complete sentences in your note book.

1. The _____ of Shah Bhitai celebrate his Urs every year.
2. My mother and I decided to go to a _____ to ask him to pray for my father's health.
3. It is a _____ fact that no living thing can survive without oxygen.
4. Much of what we know about our culture has been passed on to us through _____.
5. We may have different _____ but we are all the off springs of Adam.
6. Fasting _____ on the first day of Ramadan.
7. Pakistan has everything in _____ but we need strong policies to make good use of everything that we have.
8. Nelson Mandela won his people's _____ for his long struggle for the rights of people in South Africa.
9. The art of _____ requires hard work and one needs to practice a lot to write beautifully.
10. The Pakistan Navy has very good _____ skills.

Answers

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. devotees | 2. mystic | 3. universal | 4. oral tradition |
| 5. ancestral roots | 6. commences | 7. abundance | 8. reverence |
| 9. | 10. navigation | | |

Exercise - 4

The reading text has seven aspects that relate to Shah Latif. The following sentences state one key point covered under each aspect. However, these sentences are in a jumbled up order. Read the text and write the aspect number in the blanks provided. The last one has been done for you as an example.

- | | |
|----|---|
| a. | He found pleasure in praying, thinking and devotion. |
| b. | He was married for a short period of time only. |
| c. | Shah Latif's forefather migrated to Sindh from Afghanistan. |
| d. | A shrine was built over his grave sometime after his death. |
| e. | His poetry is mainly about Sindh but off-places are also mentioned. |
| f. | He loved studying and had a command over other languages. |
| g. | He is called Bhitai because he spent rest of his life on a mound. |

2

Answers

a.	5	b.	4	c.	1	d.	6	e.	7	f.	3	g.	2
----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---

Exercise - 5

Read the text and find the following information. Write down these things in your notebook.

1. **The two things done at the time of 'Urs', as mentioned in the text.**

Ans: (i) Listen to the saint's song sung on the 'Tambooro'.
(ii) Learned men read papers and tell about Latif's life and his poetry.

2. **Two possible reasons why his ancestors migrated to Sindh.**

Ans: (i) Shah's father, Syed Habib Shah, migrated from Matyaru in Afghanistan to Bhainpur in Sindh, in order to gain spiritual contact with Bilawal, a local pious man.
(ii) His ancestors migrated to Sindh from Hirat because at that time Sindh was the centre of Muslim culture. Latif's ancestors liked it so much that they decided to make it their home.

3. **Two other languages that he knew quite well.**

Ans: He knew (i) Arabic and (ii) Persian languages quite well.

4. **Two main religious sources that he had knowledge about.**

Ans: He had in-depth knowledge of (i) the Holy Quran and (ii) the Hadiths.

5. **Two poets whose works were a part of his collection.**

Ans: (i) Moulana Jalal Uddin Rumi (ii) Shah Karim

6. **Two skills for which he is known.**

Ans: (i) Sufi (ii) Composing poetry

7. **Two places in Afghanistan mentioned in his poetry.**

Ans: (i) Kabul (ii) Kandahar

8. **Two places in India mentioned in his poetry.**

Ans: (i) Delhi (ii) Deccan

9. **Two languages mentioned in which the 'Risalo' has been translated.**

Ans: (i) English (ii) Urdu



Chasing Dreams

Unit
3.1

خوابوں کو پورا کرنا

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
ashamed	embarrassed or guilty شرمندہ	hygiene	keeping oneself and surroundings clean حفظانِ صحت
backdrop	background پس منظر	impressive	amazing-inspiring متاثر کن
beaming	wide and happy پُر مسرت - منور	interrupt	broken off - discontinuous خلل - ٹوٹنا
bed of roses	comfortable or easy situation پھولوں کی بیج	lazily	in a slow and relaxed way سستی سے
betterment	improvement بہتری - بھلائی	lush	growing luxuriantly سرسبز - کثیر
blessed	divinely favoured جس پر خدا کا کرم ہو	moonlit	lit by the moon چاندنی
cast	throw ڈھلانا	neighbourhood	area or people around us پڑوس
collapse	having fallen down or given way گر جانا - نڈھال ہو جانا	obligatory	compulsory فرض
commented	expressed an opinion تبصرہ کیا - رائے دی	politely	in a respectful manner نرمی سے
conversation	talk - discussion گفتگو - بات چیت	portrayed	represented تصویر کشی کی
couplet	a pair of successive lines of verse دو مصرعوں کا شعر	preoccupied	engrossed in thought خیال میں ڈوبا ہوا
courtyard	an unroofed area of a house صحن	quote	repeat or copy out حوالہ دینا
dragged	pull along forcefully گھیننا	reluctantly	in an unwilling and hesitant way ہچکچاتے ہوئے
emotions	strong feelings جذبات	seminar	a conference مذاکرہ
exclaimed	cried out suddenly in surprise حیرانگی سے	shabby	in poor condition خستہ حال
extremely	to a very great degree شدید - انتہائی	sibling	a brother or sister بہن بھائی
finance	money matters مالی - مالیات	sidelong	sideways ترجمہ نظر سے
hardships	difficulties مشکلات	simultaneously	at the same time ایک ہی وقت میں
host	act as host at میزبانی کرنا	weathered	Worn - stained کمزور - ناتواں
realize	become fully aware of احساس ہونا	borne	past participle of bear برداشت کرنا

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Jameel entered the courtyard in front of the shabby, mud house, walked lazily and collapsed on the charpoy in the middle of the yard, under the cool moonlit sky. Looking at Jameel, his father kept his cup of tea on the table and dragged his charpoy close to him and asked, "What's the matter, son?"

You seem upset."

"No, father, everything is fine."

"You don't seem OK. Let's have dinner then we will talk about it."

جیل ایک خستہ حال، مٹی سے بنے گھر کے سامنے محن میں آہستہ آہستہ چلتے ہوئے داخل ہوا اور ٹھنڈی چاندنی میں ڈوبے آسمان کے نیچے محن کے درمیان پڑی چارپائی پر نڈھال گر گیا۔ جیل کو دیکھتے ہوئے اُس کے والد نے چائے کپ کو میز پر رکھا اور اپنے چارپائی اُس کے قریب کی اور پوچھا، "کیا بات ہے، بیٹا؟ تم پریشان نظر آ رہے ہو۔"

"کچھ نہیں، اللہ، سب ٹھیک ہے۔"

"تم ٹھیک نظر نہیں آتے۔ پہلے کھانا کھاتے ہیں پھر ہم اس بارے میں بات کریں گے۔"

Jameel's mother and Aunt Sadori, an old family friend, came out of the kitchen with a tray of food and a jug full of water. His sister, Sara, and brother, Khalid, picked the table and brought it close to their charpoy. Everybody sat around the table and started eating. Jameel did not move. His father asked him to get up and have dinner. Reluctantly, he got up and started eating. Everybody noticed that Jameel was upset. They cast sidelong looks at him while eating but did not say anything.

جیل کی ماں اور صدوری خالہ، خاندان کی ایک پرانی دوست، کھانے کی ٹرے اور پانی سے بھرے جگ کے ساتھ باورچی خانے سے نکلیں۔ اُس کی بہن، سارہ، اور بھائی، خالد، نے میز اٹھایا اور اُن کی چارپائی کے قریب لے آئے۔ ہر کوئی میز کے گرد بیٹھ گیا اور کھانا شروع کر دیا۔ جیل نے حرکت نہ کی۔ اُس کے والد نے اُسے اٹھنے اور کھانا کھانے کو کہا۔ نہ چاہتے ہوئے وہ اٹھا اور کھانا شروع کر دیا۔ ہر ایک نے مشاہدہ کیا کہ جیل پریشان ہے۔ انھوں کھانا کھاتے ہوئے اُسے ترچھی نظروں سے دیکھا مگر کچھ کہیں۔

As soon as they had finished eating and the dishes had been taken away to the kitchen, his mother asked, "Has your result been announced, Jameel? What grade did you get?"

جیسے ہی انھوں نے کھانا ختم کیا اور برتن باورچی خانے میں لے گئے تو اُس کی ماں نے پوچھا، "کیا تمہارے نتیجے کا اعلان ہو گیا ہے؟ تم نے کونسا گریڈ حاصل کیا ہے؟"

In a sad tone he informed everyone that he had achieved a good grade.

"So, why are you sad? Had Sara passed?" asked his father.

"Yes. In fact, Sara has got more marks than me."

"Why didn't you tell me before? I was so worried," Sara complained.

افسردہ آواز میں اُس نے سب کو مطلع کیا کہ اُس نے اچھا گریڈ حاصل کیا ہے۔

"تو پھر تم اُداس کیوں ہو؟ کیا سارہ پاس ہو گئی ہے؟" اُس کے والد نے پوچھا۔

"جی ہاں۔ دراصل سارہ نے مجھ سے زیادہ مارکس لئے ہیں۔"

"آپ نے مجھے یہ پہلے کیوں نہیں بتایا؟ میں بہت پریشان تھی،" سارہ نے شکایت کی۔

"Sorry, Sara, I was preoccupied with my own thoughts about the future. You see, you don't have to worry about your career the same way that I do."

"What do you mean?" Khalid interrupted.

"معاف کرنا، سارہ۔ میں مستقبل کے بارے میں اپنی ہی سوچوں میں مگن تھا۔ دیکھو، تمہیں اپنے کیریئر کے بارے میں اس طرح پریشان ہونا پڑتا جس طرح میں پریشان ہوتا ہوں۔"

"کیا مطلب ہے آپ کا؟" خالد نے مداخلت کی۔

"She is a girl. She doesn't have to worry about supporting her family. Only men have to worry about earning for their families," Jameel commented.

"یہ ایک لڑکی ہے۔ اس کو اپنے خاندان کو پالنے کے لئے پریشان ہونا نہیں پڑتا۔ صرف مردوں کو اپنے خاندان کے لئے کمانے کے لئے پریشان ہونا پڑتا ہے،" جیل نے تبصرہ کیا۔

"Come on, Jameel! We don't get education only for earning money. We do it for improving ourselves and both males and females need it equally. Our Prophet (ﷺ) has said that seeking knowledge is obligatory for every male and female," Khalid explained.

"اوجھیل! ہم صرف کمانے کے لئے تعلیم حاصل نہیں کرتے۔ ہم ایسا کرتے ہیں اپنی ذات کو بہتر بنانے کے لئے اور مرد اور عورت دونوں کو مساوی طور پر اس کی ضرورت ہوتی ہے۔"

ہمارے نبی ﷺ نے کہا ہے کہ تعلیم حاصل کرنا ہر مرد و عورت پر فرض ہے، "خالد نے وضاحت کی۔

Jameel felt ashamed, "Yes, you are right. I agree with you."

"I still don't understand why you are so worried," commented father.

جیل نے شرمندگی محسوس کی، "ہاں، آپ صحیح کہہ رہے ہیں۔ میں آپ سے متفق ہوں۔"

میں اب تک نہیں سمجھ سکا کہ تم اتنے پریشان کیوں ہو، "والد نے تبصرہ کیا۔

"Father, there is no college in our village or any other village around ours. The only college where I can go is 50 miles away, in the city. It seems impossible that I can continue my studies although I had dreamed that I would become a doctor and open a hospital here for the villagers, as they cannot afford to go to the city hospital. Remember, how Uncle Sarmad died last year only because he could not be taken to the hospital on time?" Jameel said.

"نو، ہمارے گاؤں میں کالج نہیں اور نہ ہی ہمارے ارد گرد کسی گاؤں میں ہے۔ کالج جہاں میں جاسکتا ہوں 50 میل دور شہر میں ہے۔ یہ ناممکن نظر آتا ہے کہ میں اپنی تعلیم جاری رکھ سکوں حالانکہ میں نے خواب دیکھا تھا کہ میں ڈاکٹر بنوں گا اور گاؤں کے لوگوں کے لئے ایک اسپتال کھولوں گا، کیونکہ وہ شہر کے اسپتالوں میں جانے کی استعداد نہیں رکھتے۔ یاد ہے پچھلے سال کیسے چچا سرد کا انتقال ہو گیا تھا صرف اس لئے کہ انھیں وقت پر اسپتال نہیں لے جایا جاسکا، "جیل نے کہا۔

His mother quoted a Sindhi couplet which meant "Where there is a will, there is a way. Distances are to be covered." She then said, "We can ask Allah Bachayo, to take you to the city in his horse cart."

اُس کی والدہ نے ایک شعر کا حوالہ دیا جس کے معنی تھے "جہاں چاہا ہوتی ہے وہیں راہ ہوتی ہے۔ فاصلے طے ہو ہی جایا کرتے ہیں۔" پھر انھوں نے کہا، "ہم اللہ بچایو سے کہہ سکتے ہیں کہ تمہیں اپنی گھوڑا گاڑی پر شہر لے جایا کرے۔"

Aunt Sadori, who had been listening to the whole conversation said, "I have a suggestion. You people have done so much for me, I think now it's my turn to return the favour. Jameel and Sara can easily come and live with me in the city and study in the college."

خالہ صدوری جو یہ ساری گفتگو سن رہی تھی، بولیں، "میرے پاس ایک تجویز ہے۔ آپ لوگوں نے میرے لئے اتنا کچھ کیا ہے کہ میرے خیال میں اب میری باری ہے کہ اُس احسان کا بدلہ دوں۔ جیل اور سارہ آسانی سے آسکتے ہیں، میرے ساتھ شہر میں رہیں اور کالج میں پڑھیں۔"

"Really! Can I really go and study in the city?" Sara exclaimed.

"Jameel can go but Sara should stay here and help her mother," said father.

"جی! کیا میں واقعی شہر میں پڑھ سکتی ہوں؟" سارہ نے حیرت سے کہا۔

"جیل جاسکتا ہے مگر سارہ کو یہاں رکھنا چاہئے اور اپنی ماں کی مدد کرنا چاہئے، "والد نے کہا۔

Sara quickly wiped the tear that had rolled down her cheek. She didn't want her father to know her feelings. However, Khalid noticed her emotions and said, "Father, don't worry about expenses. Let both of them go."

سارہ نے جلدی سے اپنے آنسو پونچھ لئے جو اُس کے گال پر بہہ گئے تھے۔ وہ نہیں چاہتی تھی کہ اُس کے والد کو اُس کے احساسات کی خبر ہو۔ مگر خالد نے اُس کے جذبات کا مشاہدہ کر لیا اور کہا، "اتو، اخراجات کے بارے میں پریشان نہ ہوں۔ ان دونوں کو جانے دیں۔"

"There is a big medical college as well in our city. Later, both of you can easily continue your studies there and fulfil your dreams," continued Aunt Sadori addressing Jameel and Sara.

"ہمارے شہر میں ایک بڑا میڈیکل کالج بھی ہے۔ بعد میں تم دونوں آسانی سے اپنی تعلیم جاری رکھ سکتے ہو اور اپنے خوابوں کو پورا کر سکتے ہو، "خالہ صدوری نے جیل اور سارہ کو مخاطب کرتے ہوئے بات جاری رکھی۔

"Wow! I will also be doctor and work at Jameel's hospital! Wonderful!"

In spite of his worries about managing finances for both of them, father smiled.

"واہ! میں بھی ڈاکٹر بنوں گی اور جیل کے اسپتال میں کام کروں گی! شاندار!"

ان دونوں کے لئے اخراجات پورا کرنے کی پریشانیوں کے باوجود ان کے والد مسکرائے۔

Soon, both of them went to the city with Aunt Sadori. Living in the city, attending college and then the medical college was not the bed of roses. Both siblings had to work extremely hard to pass all the exams in the first go. They could not afford to fail in any subject.

جلدی ہی وہ دونوں خالد صدوری کے ساتھ شہر چلے گئے۔ شہر میں رہنا، کالج میں پڑھنا اور پھر میڈیکل کالج یہ چھوٹوں کی سہولت تھی۔ دونوں بہن بھائیوں نے انتہائی سخت محنت کی اور تمام امتحانات کو پہلی ہی بار میں پاس کیا۔ وہ کسی مضمون میں فیل ہونے کے قائل نہیں ہو سکتے تھے۔

To meet expenses, both of them gave tuitions to children in the neighbourhood. Their parents never let them know the problems they faced during all this time. In the fourth year, father and Khalid had to sell a big piece of fertile land to pay their fee. The whole family bore the hardship because they wanted their children to realize their dreams and to work for the betterment of the villagers.

اخراجات پورے کرنے کے لئے ان دونوں نے پڑوس کے بچوں کو ٹیوشن پڑھانا شروع کر دیا۔ ان کے والدین نے اس مدت کے دوران آنے والی مشکلات کی انہیں خبر نہ ہوئی۔ چوتھے سال، ان کو والد اور خالد کو ان کی فیس بھرنے کے لئے زرخیز زمین کا ایک بہت بڑا ٹکڑا بیچنا پڑا۔ پورا خاندان مشکلات کا سامنا کر رہا تھا کیونکہ وہ چاہتے تھے کہ ان کے بچے اپنے خواب پورے کریں اور گاؤں والوں کی بہتری کیلئے کام کریں۔

Twelve Years Later

بارہ سال بعد

"Uncle Noor Ali, you should not eat rice, potatoes and sugar," Jameel advised his patient politely. "OK, son, I will follow your advice." Jameel held the old man's weathered hand and help him walk outside, the impressive hospital building, standing against the backdrop of lush green fields. For a moment he looked up at the building that portrayed his dreams.

"چچا نور علی، آپ کو چاول، آلو اور چینی نہیں کھانی چاہیے،" جمیل نے اپنے مریض کو نہایت نرمی سے مشورہ دیا۔

"ٹھیک ہے، بیٹا، میں تمہارے مشورے پر عمل کروں گا۔" جمیل نے اس بوڑھے شخص کا جھریوں بھرا ہاتھ تھام لیا اور اسپتال کی شاندار عمارت سے باہر نکلنے میں اس کی مدد کی جو سرسبز کھیتوں کے پس منظر میں کھڑی تھی۔ ایک لمحے کے لئے اس نے اپنی عمارت کی طرف دیکھا جو اس کے خوابوں کی عمارت تھی۔

He asked Allah Dinno, "Are there any more patients?"

"No, there are no more patients," replied Allah Dinno.

"Ok, then call Dr. Sara so that we can go to the neighbouring villages and examine the patients there."

اُس نے اللہ دینو سے پوچھا، "کیا کوئی اور مریض ہے؟"

"نہیں، کوئی اور مریض نہیں ہے۔" اللہ دینو نے جواب دیا۔

"ٹھیک ہے، پھر ڈاکٹر سارا کو بلاؤ تاکہ ہم پڑوس کے دیہاتوں میں جا کر وہاں مریضوں کا معائنہ کریں۔"

After visiting two nearby villages, Jameel dropped Sara at her house, where her two young children were waiting for her. Jameel was very happy because Sara had hosted a successful seminar for the village women and guided them to improve their personal and family health and hygiene. He then drove home in his small jeep, satisfied with the day's work.

دو قریبی گاؤں کے دورے کے بعد جمیل نے سارا کو اُس کے گھر چھوڑا جہاں اُس کے دو چھوٹے بچے اُس کا انتظار کر رہے تھے۔ جمیل بہت خوش تھا کیونکہ سارا نے دیہاتی خواتین کے لئے ایک کامیاب سیمینار منعقد کروایا تھا تاکہ ان کی ذاتی اور خاندان کی صحت اور حفظان صحت کے بارے میں رہنمائی کی جاسکے۔ دن بھر کے کام سے مطمئن پھر وہ اپنی چھوٹی سی جیب چلاتے ہوئے گھر گیا۔

"Come on, let's have lunch," said his wife, with a beaming smile.

"Lunch? You mean you people have not had lunch as yet?" he exclaimed.

"No, we were waiting for you," said the parents, simultaneously.

"Ok, then let's have lunch together." Everyone washed their hands one by one and moved towards the dining table.

"چلو آؤ، کھانا کھاتے ہیں،" اُس کی بیوی نے کھلتی ہوئی مسکراہٹ کے ساتھ کہا۔

"کھانا؟ تمہارا مطلب ہے کہ تم لوگوں نے ابھی تک کھانا نہیں کھایا؟" وہ حیران تھا۔

”نہیں، ہم تمہارا انتظار کر رہے تھے،“ والدین نے ایک ساتھ کہا۔

”ٹھیک ہے، پھر چلیں ایک ساتھ کھانا کھاتے ہیں۔“ ایک ایک کر کے ہر ایک نے اپنے ہاتھ دھوئے اور کھانے کی میز کی طرف بڑھ گئے۔

At night, Jameel lay on his charpoy in the middle of the yard, under the cool moonlit sky, and thought about the long journey of his life and all the hardships that he, his sister, and their family had borne to fulfil their dreams. He felt truly grateful and blessed.

رات کو جمیل صحن کے وسط میں ٹھنڈی چاندنی سے روشن آسمان کے نیچے اپنی چارپائی پر لیٹا اپنی زندگی کے طویل سفر اور ان مشکلات کے بارے میں سوچ رہا تھا جو اس نے، اس کی بہن نے اور ان کے خاندان نے ان کے خوابوں کو پورا کرنے کے لئے برداشت کی تھیں۔ وہ خلوص سے شکر گزار تھا کہ اس پر خدا نے کرم کیا تھا۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- Jameel's sister name was:
(a) Sadori (b) Sara (c) Sana (d) Saima
- Jameel's brother name was:
(a) Khalid (b) Allah Dino (c) Allah Bachiyo (d) Salim
- The only college where Jameel could go is in the city;
(a) 20 miles away (b) 30 miles away (c) 40 miles away (d) 50 miles away
- Jameel's dream was to open a:
(a) restaurant (b) plaza (c) hospital (d) park
- Allah Bachayo had a:
(a) horse cart (b) donkey cart (c) camel cart (d) hand cart
- Father and Khalid had to sell a big piece of fertile land to pay their fee in the:
(a) 1st year (b) 2nd year (c) 3rd year (d) 4th year
- We get education for/to:
(a) earning money (b) for reading magazines (c) improving ourselves (d) impress others
- Jameel was upset because:
(a) he was failed in an exam (b) he was worried about his future (c) he had lost some money (d) he could find a job

Answers

1.	b	2.	a	3.	d	4.	c	5.	a	6.	d	7.	c	8.	b
----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---

Summary / Note

This is the story of a boy, Jameel, who belongs to a poor family, and his sister Sarah, who are worried about their future despite passing the exam because there is no college in his village or in the surrounding village. Jameel dreams of becoming a doctor and opening a hospital in the village, while his sister also dreams of becoming a doctor. An old friend of his family, Aunt Sadori, offers them to stay with her in the city so that the two siblings can continue their education. Her father allows Jamil but does not allow Sarah because of the expenses, so his brother Khalid encourages the father not to worry

about the expenses.

The two siblings go to the city to study, first in college and then in medical college. They give tuition to children to cover their expenses, work very hard and endure many hardships. Their family also faces many difficulties in fulfilling their dreams and sells fertile land to pay their fees. After 12 years of hard work, Jameel builds a hospital in the village, which benefits his village and the surrounding villages. His sister helps him in his work as a doctor and she also works on the health and hygiene of the village women. Seeing his dreams come true, Jameel is thankful to God and considers himself blessed.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 What was Jameel's father doing when he came home?

Ans: When Jameel came home, his father was drinking tea.

Q.2 Where did the family have dinner?

Ans: The family had dinner in the middle of the yard where Jameel and his father were talking.

Q.3 Where did Jameel and Sara go to study?

Ans: Jameel and Sara went to the city to study.

Q.4 Where did they build the hospital?

Ans: They built the hospital in their village amidst green fields.

Q.5 How many children did Sara have?

Ans: Sara had two children.

Q.6 Which vehicle did they travel in?

Ans: They traveled in horse carts.

Q.7 Why do you think nobody spoke while eating dinner?

Ans: We should not talk too much while eating. They didn't speak while eating dinner because they all realized that Jameel was a little more upset.

Q.8 Why was Jameel upset?

Ans: Jameel was upset because he wanted to become a doctor and there was no college in his village or surrounding villages and he was worried about continuing his studies.

Q.9 Why do you think Sara tried to hide feelings?

Ans: Sara knew that her father could not afford the education cost of two children. Her deprivation made her cry, but she knew that her father would be saddened by her tears. She hid her feelings to save her father from further grief.

Q.10 Both Sara and Jameel had to pass every test in the first go. Why was it so?

Ans: Sara and Jameel had to pass every test in the first go because their parents were facing many problems to pay for their education. In addition, they had to give tuitions to children for the education expenses. Failing the exam meant repeating that academic year, and repeating the academic year meant reimbursing the entire year's expenses.

Q.11 How did Sara and Jameel, and their family, manage the expenses for their studies?

Ans: Sara, Jameel and her family faced many difficulties and hardships for paying for their education. Along with the studies, Sara and Jameel gave tuitions to children to cover some expenses. His family also sold a large piece of their fertile land to pay the fee of the medical college.

Q.12 How did life change for Jameel's family and the villagers?

Ans: Jameel and Sara fulfilled their dreams of becoming doctors. They built a hospital in the village. The people of the village got the facility of treatment at a low cost. They didn't need to go to

city for treatment any more. Jameel and Sara became doctors and increased their family's wealth and dignity and fulfilled their desire to help the people of the village.

Q.13 How was Sara educating the village women?

Ans: Sara was educating the village women by hosting successful seminars for the village women and guided them to improve their personal and family health and hygiene.

Q.14 What lessons do we get from the story?

Ans: This story gives us a lesson that we should not give up our dreams in any way. We must fight bad situations. Every difficulty and trouble must be faced with courage. We don't need to be disappointed. We must work hard for our aims because ease comes after every difficulty.

Exercise - 1

Read the text and write the answers to the following questions in your notebook:

1. How many characters are there in the story?

Ans: There are nine characters in the story.

2. Write their names.

Ans: (i) Jameel (ii) his sister, Sara (iii) their father (iv) their mother
(v) Khalid (vi) Aunt Sadori (vii) Allah Dino (viii) Noor Ali and
(ix) Jameel's wife

Exercise - 2

Read the text and find out who said the following words? Compare your answers with your partner:

	Dialogue	Speaker
1.	You don't seem ok. Let's have dinner then we will talk about it.	
2.	Only men have to worry about earning for their family.	
3.	We don't get education only for earning money.	
4.	We can ask Allah Bachayo, to take you to the city in his horse cart.	
5.	You people have done so much for me, I think now it's my turn to return the favour.	
6.	Can I really go and study in the city?	
7.	Jameel can go but Sara should stay here and help her mother.	
8.	Ok, son, I will follow your advice.	
9.	No, there are no more patients.	
10.	Come on, let's have lunch.	

Answers

1.	Jameel's father	2.	Jameel	3.	Khalid	4.	Jameel's mother
5.	Aunt Sadori	6.	Sara	7.	Jameel's father	8.	Noor Ali
		9.	Allah Dino	10.	Jameel's Wife		

Exercise - 3

Work in pairs. Read the text and underline the bold words given in the following exercise in your text book. Discuss and guess their meanings. After you have guessed all the meanings, check out your answers from the glossary given at the end of the book. Write the meanings in the given blanks.

1. The word shabby means _____.
2. The word collapsed means _____.
3. The word reluctantly means _____.
4. The word preoccupied means _____.
5. The word obligatory means _____.
6. The word siblings means _____.
7. The word realize means _____.
8. The word weathered means _____.
9. The word impressive means _____.
10. The word backdrop means _____.
11. The word hosted means _____.
12. The word borne means _____.

Ans: See 'Word /Meanings' in the beginning of the lesson.

Exercise - 4

Fill in the blanks in the following exercise with the words given in bold in Exercise 3. You can use each word only once. Compare your partner after you have completed. The first blank has been filled as an example.

The old woman reluctantly got up from her bed. She had _____ many difficulties but now her _____ hands could not lift heavy things. She got up and looked out of the window. As she looked, a smile came to her lips when she saw the big, _____, beautiful lawn, with plants and creepers, and mango trees serving as a _____. She _____ on her bed once again and became _____ with her thoughts. She thought of her _____, old house, her five _____ and how they always used to offer their _____ prayers. She also recalled how her mother always _____ meetings for the village women to teach them various skills. She thought how she always dreamed of owning a big house with a big garden. Thinking of those times and the life she had now, she thanked God for making it possible for her to _____ her dreams.

Answers

1.	reluctantly	2.	borne	3.	weathered	4.	impressive	5.	backdrop
6.	collapsed	7.	preoccupied	8.	shabby	9.	siblings	10.	obligatory
		11.	hosted	12.	realize				

Exercise - 5

For solution see "Short Answer Questions" - Q.1 to Q.6 on page 31.

Exercise - 6

For solution see "Short Answer Questions" - Q.7 to Q.14 on page 31 & 32.

The Great Visionaries

Unit
4.1

عظیم بصیرت مند

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
accomplishments	successful achievements کارنامے	dynamic	characterized by forcefulness of personality. متحرک
acumen	the ability to make good judgements and take quick decisions زیرکی - فراست	envisioned	visualized تصور کیا
ambassador	envoy-diplomat سفیر	exemplary	worthy of imitation مثالی
aspect	a particular part پہلو	guiding principles	a standard by which something is evaluated or measured رہنما اصول
pluralistic	relating to or advocating a system in which two or more states, groups, principles, sources of authority, etc., coexist کثرت پسندانہ	homage	special honour or respect shown publicly خراج عقیدت
		implement	put into effect لاگو کرنا
		moments	very brief periods of time لمحات
		pleaded	made an emotional appeal التجا کی
		prevail	to be widespread پھیلنا
polarization	division into two sharply contrasting groups or sets of opinions or beliefs تقطیب	proponent	one who argue in support of something حامی
aspiration	a hope or ambition کامیابی کا جذبہ	prosperity	being prosperous خوشحالی
barrister	a lawyer بیرٹر - وکیل	quest	a long or arduous search کھوج - جستجو
commitment	being dedicated to a cause, activity, etc. عزم - استقامت	recall	remember یاد آنا - یاد کرنا
culminate	end, to reach a final or climactic stage اختتام پذیر ہونا	resolution	a formal expression by a meeting قرارداد
determination	firmness of purpose; resolve پختہ ارادہ - فیصلہ	steadfastness	loyalty in the face of trouble and difficulty ثابت قدمی
discrimination	the unjust or prejudicial treatment of different categories of people امتیازی	transform	change or alter in form تبدیل کر دینا
distinction	excellence or eminence امتیاز	undesired	not wanted ناپسندیدہ - غیر مطلوب
		unparallel	exceptional عموماً - بے نظیر
		versatile	having great diversity کثیرالجہات
		victimization	to make a victim of شکار بنانے کا عمل
		impartiality	equal treatment غیر جانبداری

Lesson with Urdu Translation

The teacher assigned the class a project for the summer vacations; title 'The Great Visionaries'. The students were asked to work in groups of four and find information about the Quaid-e-Azam and Allama Iqbal, the two great visionary leaders of the Pakistan Movement. They were asked to develop a booklet, a newspaper edition, or any other form of visual presentation based on the collected information. The members of one of the groups decided to split up the information gathering task; Huma and Tahira offered to look up information on some aspects of Jinnah's life, while Lubna and Farheen agreed to find information about Iqbal. They decided to share the information with each other through emails. Here are some of their emails.

استاد نے جماعت کو موسم گرما کی چھٹیوں کے لئے ایک پراجیکٹ دیا جس کا عنوان تھا 'عظیم بصیرت مند'۔ طلباء کو چار چار کے گروہ میں کام کرنے اور تحریک پاکستان کے دو عظیم بصیرت افروز رہنماؤں قائد اعظم اور علامہ اقبال کے بارے میں معلومات تلاش کرنے کو کہا گیا۔ انھیں جمع شدہ معلومات کی بنیاد پر ایک کتابچہ، اخباری ایڈیشن یا کسی قسم کی بصری نمائش پیشکش بنانے کو کہا گیا۔ اُن گروہوں میں سے ایک گروہ کے اراکین نے معلومات جمع کرنے کے کام کو تقسیم کرنے کا ارادہ کیا؛ ہما اور طاہرہ نے جناح کی زندگی کے کچھ پہلوؤں پر معلومات تلاش کرنے کی پیشکش کی، جبکہ لبنا اور فرحین نے اقبال کے متعلق معلومات تلاش کرنے پر حامی بھری۔ انھوں نے فیصلہ کیا کہ وہ ای میل کے ذریعہ آپس میں معلومات کا تبادلہ کریں گی۔ یہاں اُن کی کچھ ای میلز دی جا رہی ہیں:

To: huma.latif@kmail.com; lubna22@circle.com; farheen_89@kingston.com
From: tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com

Subject: Quaid-e-Azam
Date: June 11, 2018

Time: 2:29 pm

Dear Huma,
Here is some information that I have found about the Quaid-e-Azam:

Personality and Achievements

Quaid-e-Azam Mohammad Ali Jinnah was one of the most dynamic personalities of South Asia. His message of 'Unity, Faith, and Discipline' and his determination and steadfastness, if made the guiding principles by the nation, can speedily set the nation on the path of progress and prosperity.

قائد اعظم جنوبی ایشیاء کی سب سے زیادہ متحرک و مثبت شخصیات میں سے ایک ہیں۔ اُن کا پیغام 'اتحاد، ایمان اور تنظیم' اور اُن کی قوت ارادی اور ثابت قدمی، اگر قوم نے انھیں رہنماء اصول بنایا ہوتا تو قوم کو نہایت تیزی سے ترقی اور خوشحالی کے راستے پر ڈالا جاسکتا تھا۔

He was one of the top barristers of Bombay. But his greatest achievement, which is unparalleled in the recent history of the world, is the creation of Pakistan. The world has seen many leaders who have obtained independence for their people from undesired rulers, but few have achieved what the Quaid-e-Azam did; he created a new country. He led Muslims of the sub-continent to achieve an independent state called Pakistan; where they could live honourably, according to the teachings of their faith and culture.

وہ بمبئی کے بڑے وکیلوں میں سے ایک تھے۔ لیکن اُن کا عظیم کارنامہ، جو دنیا کی حالیہ تاریخ میں کوئی مثال نہیں ہے، پاکستان کی تخلیق ہے۔ دنیا نے کئی رہنماؤں کو دیکھا ہے جنھوں نے اپنے لوگوں کے لئے ناپسندیدہ حکمرانوں سے آزادی حاصل کی، لیکن اُن میں کچھ ہی کو وہ حاصل ہوا جو قائد اعظم نے حاصل کیا؛ انھوں نے ایک نیا ملک تخلیق کیا۔ انھوں نے ایک آزاد ریاست، جسے پاکستان کہتے ہیں، حاصل کرنے کے لئے برصغیر کے مسلمانوں کی رہنمائی کی، جہاں وہ عزت اور اپنے دین کی تعلیمات اور ثقافت کے تحت رہ سکتے تھے۔

Regards,
Tahira

To: tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com; lubna22@circle.com; farheen_89@kingston.com
From: huma.latif@kmail.com

Subject: Quaid-e-Azam
Date: June 11, 2018

Time: 4:37 pm

Tahira, here is some more information that we can add in this section:

طاہرہ، یہ کچھ مزید معلومات ہیں جو ہم اس حصے میں شامل کر سکتے ہیں:

Moreover, Mohammad Ali Jinnah was the leader in British India, who was popular not only among the Muslims but also had a great respect among the people of other faiths, including the Hindus, Christians, Sikhs and Parsis. Due to his tolerance and acceptance of all faiths, some Hindu leaders, like Gokhale and the famous Hindu poetess Sarojini Nido, called him 'the best Ambassador of Hindu Muslim Unity.'

علاوہ ازیں، محمد علی جناح برطانوی انڈیا کے رہنماء تھے جو نہ صرف مسلمانوں میں مقبول تھے بلکہ دوسرے دین کے ماننے والے بھی اُن کا نہایت احترام کرتے تھے، جس میں ہندو، عیسائی، سکھ، اور پارسی شامل تھے۔ تمام ادیان کے لئے اُن کی رواداری اور قبولیت کے باعث کچھ ہندو رہنماء جیسے گوگلے اور مشہور ہندو شاعرہ سروجنی نائیڈو نے انھیں 'ہندو مسلم اتحاد کے بہترین سفیر' کہا۔

Best wishes,
Huma

To: huma.latif@kmail.com; lubna22@circle.com; tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com
From: farheen_89@kingston.com

Subject: Quaid-e-Azam
Date: June 14, 2018

Time: 4:30 pm

Huma and Tahira, you might want to add this vital piece of information in this section:

ہما اور طاہرہ، تم اس حصے میں یہ اہم معلومات شامل کرنا چاہو گی۔

However, he was very clear about one thing: while Pakistan would be a state where the Muslims would be free to practice the teachings of their faith and to prosper economically. This is in no way meant that the people of other faiths, living in the geographical boundaries of the new state, would, in any way, be lesser citizens.

مزید یہ کہ ایک چیز کے بارے میں انھیں کوئی شک نہ تھا: پاکستان ایک ایسی ریاست ہوگی جہاں مسلمان اپنے دین کی تعلیمات پر عمل کرنے کے لئے آزاد اور مالی طور پر خوشحال ہوں گے۔ اس کا کسی طرح یہ مطلب نہیں کہ دوسرے ادیان کے لوگ جو اس نئی ریاست کی جغرافیائی حدود کے اندر رہائش پذیر ہوں گے، کسی طرح بھی، کم درجے کے شہری ہوں گے۔

Farheen

To: huma.latif@kmail.com; lubna22@circle.com; farheen_89@kingston.com
From: tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com

Subject: Quaid-e-Azam
Date: June 15, 2018

Time: 5:29 pm

Thank you, Huma. I agree with you. Now, here is some more information about him.

Political Acumen and Contribution

سیاسی فراست اور حصہ

Initially, Quaid-e-Azam was a strong proponent of Hindu-Muslim unity and an active member of the

Indian National Congress. But, as an outstanding political leader, he very soon sensed that the Indian National Congress was leading the Hindus of the sub-continent towards Hindi-Muslim polarization. This, he realized, would result in political and economic victimization of the Muslims in the region. Therefore, he decided to leave the Congress and join the Muslim League.

شروع میں قائد اعظم ہندو مسلم اتحاد کے بہت بڑے حامی تھے اور انڈین نیشنل کانگریس کے ایک سرگرم رکن تھے۔ لیکن ایک غیر معمولی سیاسی رہنماء کی حیثیت سے انھیں جلد ہی احساس ہو گیا کہ انڈین نیشنل کانگریس برصغیر کے ہندوؤں کی رہنمائی ہندو مسلم تفریق کی جانب کر رہی ہے۔ انھیں احساس ہوا کہ اس کا نتیجہ علاتے میں مسلمانوں کو سیاسی اور معاشی نشانہ بنانا نکلے گا۔ اسی لئے انھوں نے کانگریس چھوڑنے کا فیصلہ کر لیا اور مسلم لیگ میں شامل ہو گئے۔

Soon after joining the Muslim League he became its president. He, very intelligently, pleaded the case of a separate homeland for the Muslims and succeeded in getting Pakistan. This was despite strong opposition from the two big powers players in British India; the ruling British and the majority Hindus.

مسلم لیگ میں شامل ہونے کے بعد جلد ہی آپ اُس کے صدر بن گئے۔ انھوں نے بہت دانشمندی سے مسلمانوں کے لئے ایک علیحدہ وطن کا معاملہ اٹھایا اور پاکستان حاصل کرنے میں کامیاب ہو گئے۔ یہ سب برطانوی انڈیا کی دو بڑی طاقت کے کھلاڑیوں، انگریز حکمران اور ہندو اکثریت، کی شدید مخالفت کے باوجود ہوا۔

کیا تم نے کچھ اور معلومات ڈھونڈیں؟

Have you found some more information?

Tahira

To: lubna22@circle.com; farheen_89@kingston.com; tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com
From: huma.latif@kmail.com

Subject: **Personality and Achievements of Jinnah**

Date: June 17, 2018

جناح کی شخصیت اور کامیابیاں
Time: 1:30 pm

Thank you, Farheen. We will definitely add this. Now here is the vision that the Quaid had for Pakistan.
شکریہ، فرحیم۔ ہم یقیناً اسے شامل کریں گے۔ اب یہ ہے پاکستان کے لئے قائد کا تصور۔

Aspiration for Pakistan

Quaid-e-Azam envisioned Pakistan, as a 'nation state' ensuring equal rights for all citizens of Pakistan. On August 11, 1947, the Quaid-e-Azam, on his election as the first President of the Constituent Assembly of Pakistan, declared, "You are free; you are free to go to your temples, you are free to go to your mosques or to any other place of worship in this state of Pakistan. We are starting in the days when there is no discrimination, no distinction between one community and another. We are starting with this fundamental principle that we are all citizens and equal citizens of one state."

قائد اعظم نے پاکستان کا تصور ایک ایسی 'قومی ریاست' کا کیا جہاں پاکستان کے تمام شہریوں کے حقوق مساوی ہوں گے۔ اگست 11، 1947ء کو پاکستان کی آئین ساز اسمبلی کا پہلا صدر منتخب ہونے پر قائد اعظم نے اعلان کیا، "آپ آزاد ہیں؛ پاکستان کی اس ریاست میں آپ اپنے مندروں میں جانے کے لئے آزاد ہیں، آپ اپنی مسجدوں میں جانے کے لئے یا پھر عبادت کی کسی بھی جگہ جانے کے لئے آزاد ہیں۔ ہم اُن دنوں سے شروع کر رہے ہیں جب کسی ایک قوم یا دوسری میں کوئی امتیاز نہیں، کوئی تفریق نہیں ہے۔ ہم اس بنیادی اصول سے شروع کر رہے ہیں کہ ہم ایک ریاست کے شہری ہیں اور مساوی شہری ہیں۔"

He also wanted Pakistan to be a state where justice and merit prevailed. He wanted the people of Pakistan to be united and to work towards making this new country, an exemplary state. He said: "My guiding principle will be justice and complete impartiality and I am sure that with your support and cooperation, I can look forward to Pakistan becoming one of the greatest nations of the world."

وہ پاکستان کو ایک ایسی ریاست بنانا چاہتے تھے جہاں انصاف اہلیت پھل پھول سکے۔ وہ چاہتے تھے کہ پاکستان کے لوگ متحد ہو جائیں اور اس نئے ملک کو ایک مثالی ریاست بنادیں۔ انھوں نے کہا: "میرا رہنماء اصول انصاف اور مکمل غیر جانبداری ہوگی اور مجھے یقین ہے کہ آپ کی مدد اور تعاون سے میں پاکستان کو دنیا کی عظیم ترین قوموں میں سے ایک بننے ہوئے دیکھ رہا ہوں۔"

Alas! This great leader had to leave this world before he could transform his ideals into practical steps. It is now our responsibility to set the future directions for this great country by implementing the Quaid's vision of Pakistan. If we truly want to pay homage to our great Quaid, we should try and do the things he wanted us to do and not merely praise what he did. On every Independence Day, we should think of what we need to do to take Pakistan forward on the way to peace and prosperity.

افسوس! اپنے تصورات کو عملی اقدامات میں ڈھالنے سے پہلے ہی اس عظیم رہنما کو یہ دنیا چھوڑ کر جانا پڑا۔ اب یہ ہماری ذمہ داری ہے کہ پاکستان کے لئے قائمہ کے تصور کو لاگو کر کے ہم اس عظیم ملک کے مستقبل کی کہیں متعین کریں۔ اگر ہم صحیح معنوں میں اپنے عظیم قائد کو خراج تحسین ادا کرنا چاہتے ہیں تو ہمیں ایسی چیزیں کرنے کی کوشش کرنا چاہیے جو وہ چاہتے تھے کہ ہم کریں اور انھوں نے جو کیا اُس کی محض تعریفیں کرنے پر اکتفا نہ کریں۔ ہر یوم آزادی پر ہمیں سوچنا چاہیے کہ پاکستان کو امن اور خوشحالی کے راستے پر آگے لے جانے کے لئے ہمیں کیا کرنے کی ضرورت ہے۔

Tahira, I think we now have enough information about Quaid-e-Azam. Let's see what Lubna and Farheen find about Allama Iqbal. We'll then meet and decide how to present all this information.

طاہرہ، میرے خیال میں قائد اعظم کے متعلق اب ہمارے پاس کافی معلومات ہیں۔ دیکھتے ہیں کہ لبنی اور فرحین نے علامہ اقبال کے بارے میں کیا تلاش کیا ہے۔ پھر ہم ملیں گے اور یہ فیصلہ کریں کہ ہمیں یہ سب معلومات کیسے پیش کرنی ہیں۔

Best wishes,
Huma

To: farheen_89@kingston.com; huma.latif@kmail.com; tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com
From: lubna22@circle.com

Subject: Allama Iqbal
Date: June 18, 2018

Time: 6:32 pm

Dear Farheen,

Now that my cousin's wedding is over, I have managed to find the following information about the Poet of the East:

اب میرے کزن کی شادی ختم ہو چکی ہے تو میں شاعر مشرق کے بارے میں مندرجہ ذیل معلومات جمع کر سکی ہوں:

Personality and Achievements

Allama Muhammad Iqbal, the poet of the East was, no doubt, a great poet, but poetry was only one of his accomplishments. He began his profession career as a Professor of Arabic at Oriental College, Lahore, after doing his M.A., in 1899. In 1905, he went to London to study law and received a law degree. He thus became a barrister by profession. But this does not mean that he gave up everything else. This versatile person continued his quest for knowledge in various fields and, in 1908, he was awarded a Ph.D. degree by the Munich University, in Germany, for his work on Persian philosophy. That is why he is also known as Dr. Muhammad Iqbal.

اس میں کوئی شک نہیں کہ شاعر مشرق علامہ محمد اقبال ایک عظیم شاعر تھے لیکن شاعری محض اُن کے کارناموں میں سے ایک ہے۔ انھوں نے 1899 میں اپنی پیشہ ورانہ زندگی کا آغاز ایم اے کرنے کے بعد اورینٹل کالج، لاہور، سے عربی کے ایک پروفیسر کی حیثیت سے کیا۔ 1905 میں آپ قانون کے مطالعہ کے لئے لندن چلے گئے اور قانون کی ڈگری حاصل کی۔ پھر آپ پیشہ کے لحاظ سے ایک وکیل بن گئے۔ لیکن اس کا یہ مطلب نہیں ہے کہ انھوں نے ہر چیز ترک کر دی۔ اس ہمہ گیر شخصیت نے مختلف میدانوں میں علم کی اپنی کھوج جاری رکھی اور 1908 میں ایرانی فلسفہ پر ان کے کام پر جرمنی کی میونخ یونیورسٹی نے انھیں پی ایچ ڈی کی ڈگری دی۔ اسی لئے یہ ڈاکٹر محمد اقبال کے نام سے بھی جانے جاتے ہیں۔

Regards
Lubna

To: huma.latif@kmail.com; tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com; lubna22@circle.com
From: farheen_89@kingston.com
Subject: Allama Iqbal
Date: June 19, 2018
Time: 1:40 pm

Thanks, Lubna. Here's the information that I have found:

شکریہ! یہ دو معلومات ہیں جو مجھے ملی ہیں

Political Acumen and Contribution

سیاسی فراست اور حصہ

Allama Iqbal also took an active part in politics and worked for the cause of the Muslims of South Asia. He was elected as a member of the Punjab Legislative Council in 1926, a post he held till 1929. By then, he had become deeply involved with the Muslim League activities. Due to his commitment to the cause of Muslim rights in India, he was soon elected as the President of the Punjab branch of the All India Muslim League, a post he held till the time of his death.

علامہ اقبال نے سیاست میں بھی حصہ لیا اور جنوبی ایشیاء کے مسلمانوں کے کاز کے لئے کام کرتے رہے۔ انھیں 1926 میں پنجاب کی قانون ساز کونسل کا رکن منتخب کیا گیا، 1929 تک دو اس عہدے پر فائز رہے۔ اُس وقت تک وہ مسلم لیگ کی سرگرمیوں میں بڑھ چڑھ کر حصہ لیتے تھے۔ انڈیا میں مسلمانوں کے حقوق کے مقصد سے ان کے اسی خلوص کی وجہ سے وہ جلد ہی آل انڈیا مسلم لیگ کی پنجاب شاخ کے صدر منتخب ہو گئے، انتقال کے وقت وہ اس عہدے پر فائز تھے۔

One of Iqbal's biggest political contributions is his Allahabad address, which he delivered in 1930, when he presided over the Allahabad meeting of All India Muslim League. It was on this historic occasion that he made a definite demand for a separate Muslim State in South Asia. In his presidential address, Dr. Iqbal said, "India is a continent of human groups belonging to different races, speaking different languages, and believing in different religions..... The Muslim demand to create a Muslim India within India is in no way without justice. For my part I would like to go one step further; I would like to see the Punjab, North West Frontier Province, Sindh and Baluchistan unite under a single Muslim State."

علامہ اقبال کے بڑی سیاسی کامیابیوں میں سے ایک ان کا الہ آباد خطاب ہے جو 1930 میں دیا گیا جب وہ آل انڈیا مسلم لیگ کے الہ آباد اجلاس کی صدارت کر رہے تھے۔ یہی وہ تاریخی موقع تھا کہ آپ نے جنوبی ایشیاء میں ایک علیحدہ مسلم ریاست کا واضح مطالبہ کیا۔ اپنے صدارتی خطاب میں ڈاکٹر اقبال نے کہا، "انڈیا انسانی گروہوں کا ایک براعظم ہے جو مختلف نسلوں سے تعلق رکھتے ہیں، مختلف زبانیں بولتے ہیں اور مختلف مذاہب کو ماننے ہیں۔۔۔ مسلمان انڈیا کے اندر مسلم انڈیا بنانے کا مطالبہ کرتے ہیں کسی بھی طرح انصاف کے بغیر نہیں ہے۔ جہاں تک میرا تعلق ہے میں ایک قدم مزید آگے بڑھنا چاہوں گا، میں پنجاب، شمال مغربی سرحدی صوبہ، سندھ اور بلوچستان کو ایک واحد مسلمان ریاست کے تحت متحد دیکھنا چاہوں گا۔"

However this demand shocked both the Hindus and the British alike and they both opposed it. This demand for a separate state for Muslims took such firm root that at its meeting in Lahore, on March 23, 1940, the Muslim League passed a resolution demanding a separated state for the Muslims of India. This resolution is known as the Pakistan Resolution. From this point onwards, all efforts were directed towards this end, culminating in the creation of Pakistan, on August 14, 1947.

اس مطالبے نے ہندوؤں اور انگریزوں دونوں کو حیران کر دیا اور ان دونوں نے اس کی مخالفت کی۔ مسلمانوں کے لئے ایک علیحدہ ریاست کے مطالبے نے ایسی مضبوط جڑ پکڑی کہ 23 مارچ 1940 کو لاہور میں ہونے والے اپنے اجلاس میں مسلم لیگ نے ایک قرارداد منظور کی جس میں انڈیا کے مسلمانوں کے لئے ایک علیحدہ ریاست کا مطالبہ کیا گیا تھا۔ اس قرارداد کو قرآن و پاکستان کے نام سے جاننا جاتا ہے۔ اس نقطے کے بعد سے تمام کوششوں کا رخ اس کے اختتام کی طرف موڑ دیا گیا جو 14 اگست 1947 کو پاکستان کی تخلیق کے ساتھ اختتام پذیر ہوا۔

Best wishes
Farheen

To: huma.latif@kmail.com; farheen_89@kingston.com; luban22@circle.com
From: tahirabeauty@sunnyplace.com;

Subject: Allama Iqbal
Date: June 20, 2018

Time: 11:29 am

Moreover, he had clear ideas about what Muslims should do.

مزید برآں، ان کی سوچ واضح تھی کہ مسلمانوں کو کیا کرنا چاہیے۔

Aspirations for Muslims

مسلمانوں کے لئے کامیابی کا جذبہ

Lubna and Farheen, both of you have collected excellent information about Allama Iqbal. While we all know what the Quaid-e-Azam did, we often do not exactly recall the role of Allama Iqbal in the creation.

لٹی اور فرحین، تم دونوں نے علامہ اقبال کے بارے میں بہترین معلومات جمع کی ہیں۔ ہم جبکہ جانتے ہیں کہ قائد اعظم نے کیا کیا، لیکن ہم اکثر تخلیق (پاکستان) میں علامہ اقبال کے کردار کو اس طرح یاد نہیں کرتے۔

Allama Iqbal died in 1938, nine years before the creation of Pakistan. But he played a major role in its creation, by planting the seeds of a separate state for the Muslim of India in people's minds. Quaid-e-Azam, praised Iqbal's role in a message on his death: "To me he was a friend, guide and philosopher, and during the darkest moments through which the Muslim League had to go, he stood like a rock."

علامہ اقبال پاکستان بننے کے نو سال قبل 1938 میں انتقال فرما گئے۔ لیکن لوگوں کے ذہنوں میں انڈیا کے مسلمانوں کے لئے ایک علیحدہ ریاست کا بیج بو کر انھوں نے اس کی تخلیق میں ایک اہم کردار ادا کیا۔ ان کے انتقال پر ایک پیغام میں قائد اعظم نے اقبال کے کردار کی تعریف کی: "میرے لئے وہ ایک دوست، رہنما اور فلسفی تھے اور مسلم لیگ کو جن تاریک لمحات سے گزرنا پڑا، وہ ان میں ایک چٹان کی طرح کھڑے رہے۔"

Allama Iqbal had a great love for Islam; he always advised the Muslims to remain true to their faith, and to practice it in letter and spirit. In his Allahabad address he said: "I have learned one lesson from the history of Muslims. At difficult moments in their history, it is Islam that has saved Muslims and not Muslims that saved Islam. If, today, you put your faith in Islam, you will become strong and united once again and save yourself from complete destruction."

علامہ اقبال اسلام سے انتہائی محبت رکھتے تھے، انھوں نے ہمیشہ مسلمانوں کو اپنے دین سے پُر خلوص رہنے کا مشورہ دیا اور سختی سے عمل کرنے کی تلقین کی۔ اپنے الہ آباد کے خطاب میں انھوں نے کہا، "میں نے مسلمانوں کی تاریخ سے ایک سبق سیکھا ہے۔ ان کی تاریخ میں مشکل لمحات میں وہ اسلام تھا جس نے مسلمانوں کو بچایا، نہ کہ مسلمانوں نے اسلام کو بچایا۔ اگر آج آپ اسلام پر اپنا یقین قائم رکھیں تو آپ ایک بار پھر مضبوط اور متحد ہو جائیں گے اور مکمل تباہی سے اپنے آپ کو بچالیں گے۔"

Tahira

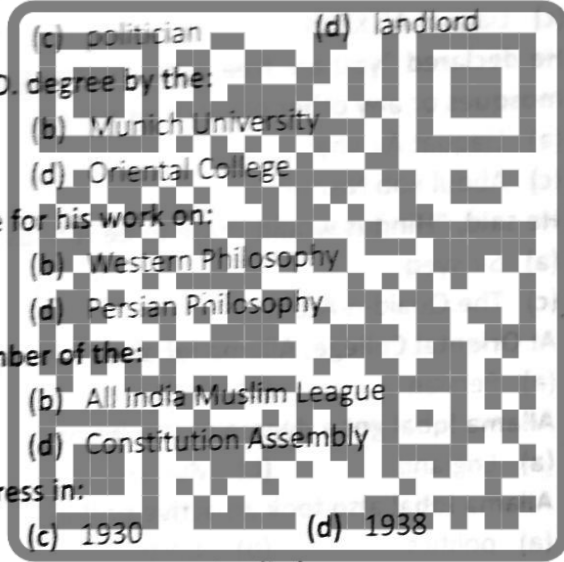
Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

1. The Quaid-e-Azam message is:
(a) Unity, Faith and Determination (b) Unity, Faith and Steadfastness
(c) Unity, Faith and Discipline (d) Unity, Determination and Steadfastness
2. The Quaid-e-Azam was one of the top barristers of:
(a) Karachi (b) Bombay (c) Delhi (d) London
3. Gokhale and the famous Hindu poetess Sarojini Nido called Quaid-e-Azam:
(a) 'the best Ambassador of Hindu Muslim Unity'
(b) 'the best Leader of Hindu Muslim Unity'
(c) 'the best Representative of Hindu Muslim Unity'
(d) 'the best Saint of Hindu Muslim Unity'



4. Initially, Quaid-e-Azam was strong proponent of:
 - (a) Muslim-British unity
 - (b) Muslim-Sikh unity
 - (c) Muslim-Hindu unity
 - (d) Muslim-Christain unity
5. Initially, Quaid-e-Azam was an active member of the:
 - (a) Muslim League
 - (b) Unionist Party
 - (c) Communist Party
 - (d) Congress
6. Allama Iqbal is known as the:
 - (a) poet of the East
 - (b) poet of the West
 - (c) poet of the Asia
 - (d) poet of the Muslim
7. Allama Iqbal began his professional career as Professor of:
 - (a) Persian
 - (b) Philosophy
 - (c) Arabic
 - (d) Economics
8. Allama Iqbal did his M.A. in:
 - (a) 1903
 - (b) 1905
 - (c) 1910
 - (d) 1899
9. In 1905, to study law, Allama Iqbal went to:
 - (a) Munich
 - (b) London
 - (c) Germany
 - (d) Spain
10. By profession, Allama Iqbal was a:
 - (a) barrister
 - (b) doctor
 - (c) politician
 - (d) landlord
11. In 1908, Allama Iqbal was awarded a Ph.D. degree by the:
 - (a) London University
 - (b) Munich University
 - (c) Paris University
 - (d) Oriental College
12. Allama Iqbal was awarded a Ph.D. degree for his work on:
 - (a) Indian Philosophy
 - (b) Western Philosophy
 - (c) Muslim Philosophy
 - (d) Persian Philosophy
13. In 1926, Allama Iqbal was elected as member of the:
 - (a) Punjab Legislative Council
 - (b) All India Muslim League
 - (c) Bombay Legislative Council
 - (d) Constitution Assembly
14. Allama Iqbal delivered his Allahabad address in:
 - (a) 1926
 - (b) 1929
 - (c) 1930
 - (d) 1938
15. Allama Iqbal demanded a separate state for the Muslim of India in:
 - (a) Lahore
 - (b) Bombay
 - (c) Allahabad
 - (d) Delhi
16. Pakistan Resolution was passed in:
 - (a) Bombay
 - (b) Delhi
 - (c) Allahabad
 - (d) Lahore
17. Pakistan came into being on:
 - (a) 14 August 1947
 - (b) 14 August 1948
 - (c) 14 August 1945
 - (d) 14 August 1950
18. Allama Iqbal died in:
 - (a) 1930
 - (b) 1935
 - (c) 1938
 - (d) 1940
19. Allama Iqbal died:
 - (a) 9 years before the creation of Pakistan
 - (b) 7 years before the creation of Pakistan
 - (c) 8 years before the creation of Pakistan
 - (d) 6 years before the creation of Pakistan
20. Quaid-e-Azam was one of the most dynamic personalities of:
 - (a) South Asia
 - (b) the Muslim world
 - (c) his college
 - (d) Middle East
21. The achievement of the Quaid-e-Azam was unparalleled in the history of:
 - (a) South Asia
 - (b) Muslim world
 - (c) the world
 - (d) Asia



22. The only leader of the British India who has popular also among the Hindus, Christians, Sikhs and Parsis besides the Muslims was:
 (a) Sir Syed Ahmed Khan (b) Liaquat Ali Khan
 (c) Allama Iqbal (d) The Quaid-e-Azam
23. He was called the "Ambassador of Hindu-Muslim Unity":
 (a) The Quaid-e-Azam (b) Abul Kalam
 (c) Allama Iqbal (d) Gandhi
24. Gokhale was a:
 (a) businessman (b) Hindu leader (c) top barrister (d) writer
25. Sarojini Naidu was a:
 (a) barrister (b) leader (c) poetess (d) rich lady
26. The Quaid-e-Azam pleaded the case of:
 (a) a client (b) neighbour
 (c) the Muslim world (d) a separate homeland
27. On August 11, 1947, he was elected the first President of the Constituent Assembly of Pakistan:
 (a) The Quaid-e-Azam (b) Allama Iqbal
 (c) Liaquat Ali Khan (d) Abdul Rab Nishtar
28. He declared "you are free, you are free to go to your temples, you are free to go to your mosques or any other place of worship":
 (a) Liaquat Ali Khan (b) The Quaid-e-Azam
 (c) Abdul Rab Nishtar (d) none
29. He said, "Hindus would cease to be Hindus and the Muslims would cease to be Muslims":
 (a) Sir syed (b) Nehru
 (c) The Quaid-e-Azam (d) Allama Iqbal
30. At Oriental College, Allama Iqbal was appointed professor of:
 (a) Persian (b) Arabic (c) English (d) Urdu
31. Allama Iqbal got a degree of law from:
 (a) England (b) Munich (c) New York (d) Washington
32. Allama Iqbal also took an active part in:
 (a) politics (b) sports (c) business (d) literature
33. Allama Iqbal was elected a member of the Punjab Legislative Council in:
 (a) 1924 (b) 1925 (c) 1926 (d) 1927
34. Allama Iqbal was elected of the Punjab branch of the All India Muslim League as:
 (a) president (b) vice president (c) general secretary (d) treasurer
35. Allama Iqbal presided over the Allahbad meeting of the All India Muslim League in:
 (a) 1926 (b) 1928 (c) 1929 (d) 1930
36. Allama Iqbal is generally known as a great:
 (a) poet (b) politician (c) philosopher (d) saint

Answers

1.	c	2.	b	3.	a	4.	c	5.	d	6.	a	7.	c	8.	d	9.	b
10.	a	11.	b	12.	d	13.	a	14.	c	15.	c	16.	d	17.	a	18.	c
19.	a	20.	a	21.	c	22.	d	23.	a	24.	b	25.	c	26.	d	27.	a
28.	b	29.	c	30.	b	31.	a	32.	a	33.	c	34.	a	35.	d	36.	a

Summary / Note

In this lesson, there is a group of four girls whose teacher gives them a project during summer vacation. In this project, they have to gather information on Quaid-e-Azam and Allama Iqbal. They communicate with each other via emails while working on the project.

The Quaid-e-Azam was a great personality of South Asia. His message of 'Faith, Unity and Discipline', his determination and steadfastness made the impossible task of creating Pakistan possible. He was popular among non-Muslims as well. His political insight showed that the Congress was working only for the Hindus. He joined the Muslim League and got a separate homeland for the Muslims of India where non-Muslims besides Muslims can live with dignity.

Allama Iqbal was a teacher, poet and philosopher. He received his PhD. He took part in practical politics. He was elected a member of the Punjab Legislative Council. He became the president of the Punjab branch of the Muslim League. In Allahabad, he set a course for Muslims by demanding a separate homeland for Muslims. He died 9 years before the creation of Pakistan but he played an important role in the creation of Pakistan.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 What message did the Quaid give on 11th August 1947?

Ans: On August 11, 1947, the Quaid gave the message of the right to freedom of religion, in these words ".....you are free, you are free to go to your temples, you are free to go to your mosques or to any other place of worship in this state of Pakistan. You may belong to any religion or caste or creed that has nothing to do with the business of the state. We are starting in the days when there is no discrimination no distinction between one community and another. We are starting with this fundamental principle that we are all citizens and equal citizens of one state".

Q.2 Why was Quaid-e-Azam called an Ambassador of the Hindu-Muslim unity?

Ans: The Quaid-e-Azam wanted to bring the Hindus and the Muslims closer and nearer. He worked sincerely for the unity of them. That's why he was called 'The Ambassador of the Hindu-Muslim unity'.

Q.3 What was the ideal, the Quaid-e-Azam wanted to keep in front?

Ans: The Quaid-e-Azam wanted every citizen of Pakistan to be known and called as the citizen of the state - Pakistan.

Q.4 How was the Quaid-e-Azam looking forward to Pakistan?

Ans: The Quaid-e-Azam was sure that with the support and cooperation of the people, Pakistan could become one of the greatest nations of the world.

Q.5 What was Quaid-e-Azam's vision about the different communities?

Ans: After Pakistan came into being in 1947, Quaid-e-Azam repeatedly promised complete equality to all the citizens. Quaid-e-Azam's vision about the different communities is unambiguous which was:

1. The state would be completely impartial to religion of the individual.
2. The state where every citizen would be equal and there would be no distinction between

citizen on the basis of faith or caste or creed.

Q.6 What do you know about the academic achievement of Allama Iqbal?

Ans: After completing his early education in his home town, Sialkot, Allama Iqbal went to Government College, Lahore in 1895. He passed M.A. in 1899 from the University of Punjab. In 1905, he left for England for higher studies and got a law degree from London. In 1908, Munich University awarded him Ph.D. degree for his work on Persian Philosophy.

Q.7 Allama Iqbal was a philosopher. Comment.

Ans: Allama Iqbal was well-versed in philosophy, both eastern and western. He pointed out the defects in some of the philosophical systems of the west. He also got a doctorate degree from Munich University for his work on Persian philosophy. He also put forward the philosophy of Pakistan and asked Quaid-e-Azam to make it a reality.

Q.8 What was Allama Iqbal's political role in the creation of Pakistan?

Ans: Allama Iqbal took an active part in politics and worked for the Muslims of South Asia courageously. He was elected president of the Punjab branch of the All India Muslim League. In his presidential address of Muslim League meeting at Allahabad in 1930, he made a definite demand for a separate state of the Muslims of South Asia.

Q.9 What were the main points of Allama Iqbal's address of 1930 at Allahabad?

Ans: (i) India is a continent of human groups belonging to different races, whose behaviour is not governed by a common race feeling.
(ii) The principle of European democracy thus can not be applied to India.
(iii) I would like to see the Punjab, NWFP, Sindh and Baluchistan united under a single Muslim state because the Muslims are anxious to have a separate state.

Q.10 What did Allama Iqbal say about Islam in his presidential address in 1930?

Ans: Allama Iqbal said, "I have learnt one lesson from the history of the Muslims. At difficult moments in their history it is Islam that has saved Muslims and not Muslims that have saved Islam. If today you put your faith in Islam, you will become strong and united once again and save yourselves from complete destruction".

Q.11 What did Allama Iqbal want a separate state for the Muslims of India? Why did Allama Iqbal demand for Pakistan?

Ans: Allama Iqbal was fully aware of the problems of Indian Muslims. He knew very well that the Hindus would never allow them to develop freely. He wanted to save Muslims from the rule of non-Muslims. The Muslims awoke from their sleep as a result of Iqbal's efforts.

Q.12 Why is Allama Iqbal respected all over Pakistan?

Ans: Allama Iqbal played a major part in the creation of Pakistan. He made a definite demand for Pakistan for the first time in 1930. Afterwards he convinced Quaid-e-Azam to work for the independence. He is, therefore, respected for his great contribution towards making Pakistan.

Q.13 Write down a few sentences on Allama Iqbal.

Ans: Allama Iqbal was a great poet, philosopher and politician. He believed that faith in Islam made the Indian Muslims one nation, separate and apart from the Hindus. He always advised Muslims to remain true to their faith. He played a major role in the creation of Pakistan.

Q.14 Allama Iqbal was a very good Muslim. Comment.

Ans: Allama Iqbal had great love for Islam and was completely devoted to it. Both his prose and poetry reflect this devotion. He saved the Muslims from the slavery of the Hindus. He also had a great love and respect for the Prophet (peace be upon him).

Q.15 How did Quaid-e-Azam praise Allama Iqbal's role in a message on his death?

Ans: The Quaid said, "To me he was a friend, a guide and a philosopher and during the darkest moments through which the Muslim League had to go, he stood like a rock." The Quaid appreciated his services for Pakistan whole-heartedly.

Q.16 How was Pakistan Resolution passed?

Ans: The Muslims awoke from their sleep as a result of Iqbal's efforts. They all wanted a separate Muslim state. The Muslim League representing the whole of Muslim India met in Lahore and passed a resolution on March 23, 1940. A separate state for the Muslims of India was demanded in Lahore Resolution. This resolution is now known as the Pakistan Resolution.

Exercise - 2

Read the text and find out the names of the students who collected information on the following topics. Write the answers in your notebook.

- Personality and achievements of the Quaid.
- Political acumen and contribution of Allama Iqbal
- The Quaid's aspirations for the Muslims
- Allama Iqbal's aspirations for the Muslims
- Personality and achievements of Allama Iqbal
- The Quaid's political acumen and contribution

Ans: Tahira

Ans: Farheen

Ans: Huma

Ans: Tahira

Ans: Lubna

Ans: Tahira

Exercise - 3

Read the text. Find the following words and underline them.

1. dynamic	2. steadfastness	3. guiding principle	4. unparalleled
5. undesired	6. acumen	7. proponent	8. polarization
9. aspirations	10. envisioned	11. pluralistic	12. discrimination
13. prevailed	14. impartiality	15. transform	16. implementing
17. versatile	18. accomplishments	19. culminating	20. recall
21. victimization	22. distinction	23. homage	24. quest

Work with your partner and guess the meanings of these words. Then check the meanings given in the glossary at the end of the book to see if you have guessed correctly.

Ans: See 'Word/Meaning' at the beginning of the lesson.

Exercise - 5

Tick the correct column for the statements given in the table.

No.	Statement	True	False
1.	Jinnah wanted Muslims to have more rights in Pakistan.		
2.	Zoya and Amber offered to find information about Allama Iqbal.		
3.	Quaid-e-Azam first joined the Congress and then the Muslim League.		
4.	Both Quaid-e-Azam and Allama Iqbal were barristers.		
5.	Allama Iqbal wrote two letters to Quaid-e-Azam in 1938.		
6.	In his letters he said that Muslims should demand a separate state.		

Answers

1.	False	2.	False	3.	True	4.	True	5.	False	6.	False
----	-------	----	-------	----	------	----	------	----	-------	----	-------

Exercise - 6

The following tables have quotes from the speeches of Quaid-e-Azam and Allama Iqbal. The first part of each quote is in table A and the second part in table B. Work in pairs and complete the quotes. Write the alphabet in the Answer Column in Table A. Now work in pairs and find out who said these words. Write 'Q' for Quaid-e-Azam and 'A' for Allama Iqbal in the 'Person' column in Table B.

Table A

No.	Quote part 1	Answer
1.	You are free; you are free to go to your temples,	d
2.	To me he was a friend, guide and philosopher,	f
3.	The Muslim demand to create a Muslim India within India	a
4.	At difficult moments in their history, it is Islam	e
5.	My guiding principle will be	c
6.	I am sure that with your support and cooperation, I can look forward	g
7.	We are all citizens	b

Table B

No.	Quote part 2	Person
a	is in no way without justice.	A
b	and equal citizens of on state.	Q
c	justice and complete impartiality.	Q
d	you are free to go to your mosques or to any other place of worship in this state of Pakistan.	Q

e	that has saved Muslims and not Muslims that have saved Islam.	A
f	and during the darkest moments through which the Muslim League had to go, he stood like a rock.	Q
g	to Pakistan becoming one of the greatest nations of the world.	Q

Exercise - 7

Go back to exercise 6 and find out when and where these words spoken. After this write seven complete sentences in your notebook like this:

1. On August, 1947, in the Constitution Assembly of Pakistan, the Quaid-e-Azam said these words.
2. In 1938, in a message on Allama Iqbal's death, the Quaid-e-Azam said these words.
3. In 1930, at the Allahabad meeting of All-India Muslim League, Allama Iqbal said these words in his address.
4. Quaid-e-Azam said these words.
5. Quaid-e-Azam said these words.
6. On August, 1947, in the Constitution Assembly of Pakistan, the Quaid-e-Azam said these words.

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**



Unit
5.1

Health Problems Caused by Mosquitoes

بچہ کے باعث پیدا ہونے والے صحت کے مسائل

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
antibodies	proteins normally present in the body or produced in response to an antigen which it neutralizes, thus producing an immune response	vomiting	eject matter from the stomach through the mouth
cerebral	of or relating to brain	nausea	a feeling of sickness with an inclination to vomit
chills	feeling of coldness during high fever	parasite	an organism that lives in or on an organism of another species
circulatory	relating to the circulation of blood	polluted	to make harmful to living things
clot	a thick mass of coagulated liquid, especially blood	precaution	safeguard
constipation	a condition in which there is difficulty in emptying the bowels, usually with hardened feces	preventable	able to be prevented or avoided
contagious	transmissible by contact	prevention	the act of stopping or preventing something
disorientation	loss of sense of direction	pronounced	strongly marked; distinct
display	to present to view	repellant	able to repel
dysfunction	abnormal function of a body organ or system	replicate	make an exact copy of; reproduce
fatal	causing death	respiratory	relating to or affecting respiration
hygienic	healthy	saliva	watery liquid secreted into the mouth by glands
immune	having resistance to pathogen	severe	intense
infected	affected with a disease-causing organism	shivering	shaking slightly
inflammation	swelling	stagnant	not flowing
transmit	pass on	symptom	indication of disease
		transfusion	transfer of blood

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Malaria, dengue, and chikungunya, all three diseases are spread by mosquitoes. The symptoms of all these diseases are so similar that it can be quite difficult to identify them for sure without laboratory testing. But it is important to find out what the exact disease is for it to be properly treated. Let us try and understand something about the causes, signs and symptoms, similarities and differences, and the prevention of these diseases.

ملیریا، ڈینگی اور چکن گونیا، یہ تینوں بیماریاں پتھروں سے پھیلتی ہیں۔ ان تمام بیماریوں کی علامات اتنی ملتی جلتی ہیں کہ لیبارٹری ٹیسٹ کے بغیر یقین کے ساتھ ان کی شناخت کرنا کافی مشکل ہو سکتا ہے۔ لیکن مناسب علاج کے لئے یہ بہت ضروری ہے کہ یہ معلوم کیا جائے کہ اصل بیماری کیا ہے۔ آئیے ہم کوشش کرتے ہیں اور ان بیماریوں کی وجوہات، علامات، یکسانیت اور فرق، اور روک تھام کے بارے میں سمجھتے ہیں۔

Malaria Causes

ملیریا کی وجوہات

Malaria is caused by plasmodium, a single-celled parasite, often transmitted by infected mosquitoes. It is injected into a person's circulatory system through the saliva of the mosquito.

ملیریا ایک یک خلوی طفیلیہ پلازموڈیم سے ہوتا ہے جو اکثر بیماری سے متاثر (انفیکٹڈ) پتھر سے منتقل ہوتا ہے۔ یہ ایک شخص کے نظام دوران خون میں پتھر کے تھوک کے ذریعہ اندر داخل ہوتا ہے۔

The parasite infects the red blood cells until they burst. Then, the newly developed plasmodium from the burst red blood cells spreads and infects more red blood cells throughout the body, thus killing all the cells. This can lead to severe liver infection. Sometimes the infected red blood cells become "stickier" than usual and clot easily, which can lead to stoppage of blood flow to the brain causing cerebral malaria.

یہ طفیلیہ خون کے سرخ خلیوں کو متاثر کرتا ہے یہاں تک کہ وہ پھٹ جاتے ہیں۔ پھر نئے والے خون کے سرخ خلیوں سے بنے والے نئے پلازموڈیم پھیلتے ہیں اور پورے جسم میں مزید خون کے سرخ خلیوں کو متاثر کرتے ہیں، اس طرح تمام خلیوں کو مار دیتے ہیں۔ یہ جگر کا شدید انفیکشن کرتی ہے۔ کبھی کبھی انفیکٹڈ خون کے سرخ خلیے عام معمول سے زیادہ لیس دار ہو جاتے ہیں اور آسانی سے جھج جاتے ہیں جو دماغ میں خون کے بہنے کو روک سکتے ہیں اور دماغی ملیریا کا سبب بن سکتے ہیں۔

Signs and symptoms

نشانیوں اور علامات

Malaria is recognized through high fever. The temperature may reach as high as 40°C (104°F). Fever is often accompanied by chills, and may also include sweating. Patients may also suffer from constipation, kidney dysfunction and disorientation.

ملیریا کو تیز بخار سے پہچانا جاتا ہے۔ درجہ حرارت زیادہ سے زیادہ 40 ڈگری سینٹی گریڈ (104 ڈگری فارن ہائیٹ) تک پہنچ سکتا ہے۔ بخار کے ساتھ اکثر سخت سر دی لگتی ہے اور پسینہ بھی آ سکتا ہے۔ مریض کو قبض، گردے کا درست کام نہ کرنا اور بگاڑ بھی ہو سکتا ہے۔

Dengue Causes

ڈینگی وجوہات

There are four types of dengue viruses, all of which are spread by mosquitoes. An infected mosquito spread virus through its saliva when it bites. Dengue can also be transmitted from one human to another. For example, infected blood used in a blood transfusion can cause dengue. It can also be caused by organ donation and can even be transmitted from the mother to the child.

ڈینگی کے وائرس کی چار اقسام ہیں، ان میں چاروں پتھروں سے پھیلتی ہیں۔ ایک انفیکٹڈ پتھر جب کاٹتا ہے تو اپنے تھوک سے وائرس پھیلاتا ہے۔ ڈینگی ایک انسان سے دوسرے میں منتقل بھی ہو سکتا ہے۔ مثال کے طور پر، اگر خون کی منتقلی میں انفیکٹڈ خون استعمال کرنا ڈینگی کا سبب بن سکتا ہے۔ عضو کا عطیہ کرنا بھی اس کا سبب بن سکتا ہے اور حتیٰ کہ یہ ماں سے بچے میں بھی منتقل ہو سکتا ہے۔

Once the virus enters the body it circulates around the body, attacking white blood cells and other antibodies, thus affecting the immune system. The virus further replicates within the cell until the cell bursts and dies. The death of the white blood cells results in leakage of other fluids from the cells, leading to low protein, fluid in the lungs and in the stomach area, low blood pressure, shock, and eventually death.

ایک وائرس جسم میں داخل ہو جائے تو یہ جسم میں گردش کرتا ہے، خون کے سفید خلیوں اور دوسرے اینٹی باڈیز (ضد اجسام) پر حملہ کرتا ہے، اس طرح مزاحمتی نظام کو متاثر کرتا ہے۔ خلیہ کے اندر وائرس خود کو بڑھاتا ہے یہاں تک کہ خلیہ پھٹ جاتا ہے اور مر جاتا ہے۔ خون کے سفید خلیے کے مرنے کے نتیجے میں خلیوں سے دوسرے مائعات کا اخراج ہوتا ہے جو پروٹین میں کمی، پیچھے پڑوں اور معدے میں مائع، خون کے دباؤ میں کم، صدمہ اور بالآخر موت کا سبب ہو سکتا ہے۔

Signs and symptoms

نشانیوں اور علامات

High fever is followed by severe body pain. Pain behind the eyes and decreased urine output is also common. Dengue-related eye pain often increases with bright light. Patients may also feel respiratory difficulties and intense headache. As the fever decreases, skin rashes may start to appear.

تیز بخار کے ساتھ ساتھ شدید جسمانی درد ہوتا ہے۔ آنکھوں کے پیچھے درد اور پیشاب کی مقدار میں کمی بھی عام ہیں۔ ڈینگی سے متعلق آنکھوں کا درد اکثر تیز روشنی سے بڑھ جاتا ہے۔ مریض کو سانس لینے میں مشکلات اور شدید سر درد بھی ہو سکتے ہیں۔ جسے ہی بخار کم ہوتا ہے، جلد سرخ نظر آنا شروع ہو جاتی ہے۔

Another symptom is excessive bleeding, as the virus attacks the capillaries, the smallest blood vessels in the body. When the capillaries burst, blood escapes from the blood stream. In severe cases, bleeding is common in the nose and gums. The loss of blood can lead to decreased blood pressure, and may, eventually, lead to internal bleeding, shock and death.

ایک اور علامت خون کا زیادہ بہہ جانا ہے، جیسے ہی وائرس کپیلر یا جو جسم میں خون کی سب سے چھوٹی رگیں ہوتی ہیں، پر حملہ کرتا ہے۔ جب کپیلر پر پھٹتی ہیں، خون کی رگوں سے خون نکل جاتا ہے۔ شدید صورت میں ناک اور موزوںوں سے خون بہنا معمول ہے۔ خون کی کمی کا نتیجہ خون کے دباؤ میں کمی اور بالآخر اندرونی طور پر خون کا بہنا، صدمہ اور موت ہو سکتی ہے۔

Chikungunya Causes

چکن گونیا وجوہات

This virus is also transmitted through mosquitoes. These mosquitoes live and breed near stagnant or polluted water and infect humans with their bite. Although the disease is not contagious, it can spread from an infected person to others if the mosquito feeds on the infected person first and then bites other people.

یہ وائرس بھی ٹھہروں سے منتقل ہوتا ہے۔ یہ ٹھہر کھڑے آلودہ پانی میں رہنے اور پرورش پاتے ہیں اور اپنے کانٹے سے انسانوں کو بیمار کر دیتے ہیں۔ حالانکہ یہ بیماری متعدی نہیں ہے لیکن ایک بیمار شخص سے دوسرے میں پھیل سکتی ہے اگر ٹھہر پہلے ایک بیمار شخص کا خون پئے اور پھر دوسرے لوگوں کو کاٹے۔

The chikungunya virus infects the muscle cells of the body. It stays there and reproduces until the cell dies. It then finds a new host cell to infect.

چکن گونیا کا وائرس جسم کے عضلاتی خلیوں کو متاثر کرتا ہے۔ یہ وہیں رہتا ہے اور اپنے آپ کو بڑھاتا ہے جب تک خلیہ مرنے جائے۔ پھر یہ انفیکٹ کرنے کے لئے نیا میزبان (ہوسٹ) تلاش کرتا ہے۔

Signs and symptoms

نشانیوں اور علامات

Chikungunya usually attacks the muscles, joints, skin, connective tissues, and even the central nervous system. It is usually accompanied by fever and skin rash. The skin rashes are almost identical to the dengue rashes. The patients may also suffer from headache, nausea and vomiting. Because the virus destroys cells in the muscles joints, patients experience muscle weakness and joint pain, which can be severe. Partial loss of taste is also reported by many chikungunya patients.

چکن گوٹھا عطیہ، جوڑوں، جلد، رابطی ہاتھیں جتنی کہ مرکزی عصبی نظام پر بھی حملہ کرتا ہے۔ اس کے ساتھ عموماً بخار اور سرخ جلد ہوتی ہے۔ سرخ جلد تلخ یا اس طرح ہوتی ہے جیسے (دھنکی میں ہوتی ہے)۔ مریض کو سردی، تھکاوٹ اور لاپائیاں بھی ہو سکتی ہیں۔ کیونکہ وائرس عطیہ، جوڑوں کے غلیظ تھکاوٹ، جاتا ہے، اس لئے مریض کو عطیہ کی کڑوی اور جھلک دیا جاتا ہوتا ہے جو شدید بھی ہو سکتا ہے۔ چکن گوٹھا کے مریضوں نے جلدی طور پر افاقہ ڈالنے کی اطلاع بھی دی ہے۔

The disease is rarely fatal and the virus remains in the system for 5-7 days. Once one recovers from this infection, one is immune to it for the rest of one's life.

یہ بیماری شاذ و نادر ہی جان لیوا ہوتی ہے اور وائرس نظام میں 5 سے 7 دن تک رہتا ہے۔ ایک بار کوئی اس انفیکشن سے صحت یاب ہو جائے تو اپنی پوری زندگی اس سے محفوظ رہتا ہے۔

Similarities and Differences in the Signs and Symptoms of the Three Diseases

تینوں بیماریوں کی نشانیوں اور علامات میں مماثلتیں اور فرق

The chikungunya virus is transmitted by the same mosquitoes that spread the dengue virus. Both chikungunya and dengue have almost identical symptoms and disease processes; so much so that one can be mistaken for the other. Both display joint pain; however, joint pain and inflammation caused by chikungunya are more pronounced. On the other hand, low platelet count, high bleeding risk, and pain behind the eyes are the main symptoms of dengue.

چکن گوٹھا وائرس اسی پھڑوں سے منتقل ہوتا ہے جو ڈنگی وائرس پھیلاتے ہیں۔ چکن گوٹھا اور ڈنگی دونوں کی علامت اور بیماری کا نقل آ کر ایک جیسا ہوتا ہے کہ ان کو گھٹنے میں غلطی ہو سکتی ہے۔ دونوں میں جوڑوں کا درد ہوتا ہے، لیکن چکن گوٹھا کی وجہ سے ہونے والا جوڑوں کا درد اور جلد کی سرخی زیادہ نمایاں ہوتی ہے۔ دوسری طرف ڈنگی کی علامت کم خونی، کم زیادہ خون بہنے کا خطرہ اور آنکھوں کے پیچھے درد ڈنگی کی علامت ہے۔

The main symptoms of malaria are chills/shivering, followed by fever/sweating. These symptoms usually occur every two days.

ملیریا کی اہم علامت سخت سردی لانا/کھانا جس کے بعد بخار/سپین آتا ہے۔ یہ علامت عام طور پر ہر دو دن بعد واقع ہوتی ہیں۔

Prevention

روک تھام

Since there are no vaccines or medical ways to prevent these diseases, here are a few useful suggestions for protecting oneself from these diseases:

کیونکہ ان بیماریوں سے بچنے کے لئے کوئی ویکسین یا طبی طریقہ نہیں ہیں، اس لئے ان بیماریوں سے خود کو بچانے کے لئے یہاں کچھ مفید تجاویز دی جا رہی ہیں:

- Wear clothes that will keep you fully covered. ایسے کپڑے پہنیں جو آپ کو مکمل طور پر ڈھانپیں۔
- Use net coverings. جالیاں استعمال کریں۔
- Live in hygienic surroundings. حفظانِ صحت کے مطابق ماحول میں رہیں۔
- Ensure that there is no stagnant water, weather clean or dirty, in your locality, not even in uncovered buckets, pots, cans, or other things. اس بات کو یقینی بنائیں کہ آپ کے علاقے میں کھڑا پانی نہ ہو، نہ صاف اور نہ گندہ، اور نہ ہی غیر ڈھکی بالٹیاں، برتن، ڈبے یا دوسری چیزیں ہوں۔
- Apply good quality mosquito repellent lotion or any one of the natural repellent products. اچھے معیار کا مچھر کوڈر رکھنے والا لوشن یا ڈر رکھنے والی قدرتی مصنوعات استعمال کریں۔
- Take extra precaution from dawn to dusk. صبح سے رات تک زائد احتیاط کریں۔
- Seek medical help as soon as possible. جتنی جلد ممکن ہو طبی مدد لیں۔

All these diseases, that is, malaria, dengue and chikungunya affect a person's health. They affect the quality of one's work because it takes some time to recover from the weakness caused by them. Since

they are all preventable and curable, it is important that we take all possible steps to protect ourselves and our family from these diseases. Moreover, we should seek immediate medical help, if we observe symptoms of these diseases because the earlier they are treated the quicker is the recovery.

یہ تمام بیماریاں، ملیریا ڈینگی، اور چکن گونیا ایک شخص کی صحت کو متاثر کرتی ہیں۔ یہ کسی کے کام کے معیار کو بھی متاثر کرتی ہیں کیونکہ ان کے سبب ہونے والی کمزوری سے صحت یاب ہونے میں وقت لگتا ہے۔ کیونکہ ان تمام سے بچا جاسکتا ہے اور یہ قابل علاج ہیں، اس لئے ضروری ہے کہ ان بیماریوں سے خود کو اور اپنے خاندان کو بچانے کے لئے ہر ممکن اقدامات کریں۔ علاوہ ازیں، اگر ہمیں ان بیماریوں کی علامات محسوس ہوں تو ہمیں فوراً طبی مدد لینا چاہیے کیونکہ جتنا جلد ان کا علاج ہوگا، اتنی جلد شفا ہوگی۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- It is important to find out what the exact disease is do that
 - the patient can rest
 - we can tell everyone about it
 - it can be treated properly
 - the patient can decide what to do
- The malaria parasite attacks the
 - white blood cells
 - brain
 - stomach
 - red blood cells
- Once the dengue virus enters the system it affects the
 - immune system
 - digestive system
 - circulatory system
 - nervous system
- In severe cases of dengue bleeding may occur in the
 - eyes and ears
 - brain
 - stomach and intestine
 - gums and nose
- Chikungunya patients usually have fever with
 - shivering
 - rashes
 - bleeding
 - chills
- Malaria, dengue and chikungunya, all three diseases are spread by:
 - flies
 - mosquitoes
 - dogs
 - rats
- It is caused by plasmodium.
 - Malaria
 - Dengue
 - Chikungunya
 - All of them
- In malaria, the parasite infects the:
 - lungs
 - white blood cells
 - red blood cells
 - brain
- Malaria is recognized through:
 - headache
 - body pain
 - nausea
 - high fever
- In malaria, the temperature may reach as high as:
 - 98°F
 - 100°F
 - 104°F
 - 110°F
- In malaria, fever is often accompanied by:
 - chills
 - headache
 - body pain
 - vomiting
- Dengue viruses are of:
 - one type
 - two types
 - three types
 - four types
- In dengue, the virus attacks the:
 - lungs
 - white blood cells
 - red blood cells
 - brain
- In dengue, high fever is followed by severe:
 - headache
 - skin rash
 - body pain
 - back pain
- Pain behind the eyes and decreased urine output is also common in:
 - malaria
 - dengue
 - chikungunya
 - all of them

16. Dengue-related eye pain often increases with:
(a) bright light (b) dim light (c) white light (d) darkness
17. Another main symptom of dengue is:
(a) cough (b) nausea (c) shivering (d) excessive bleeding
18. The smallest blood vessels in the body are:
(a) capillaries (b) intestine (c) veins (d) arteries
19. The chikungunya virus infects the:
(a) liver (b) red blood cells (c) white blood cells (d) muscle cells
20. Partial loss of taste is also reported by many:
(a) malaria patients (b) dengue patients
(c) chikungunya patients (d) all of them
21. Low platelet count, high bleeding risk and pain behind eyes are main symptoms of:
(a) malaria (b) dengue (c) chikungunya (d) all of them
22. Malaria symptoms usually occur every:
(a) two days (b) two weeks (c) two months (d) two years

JOIN

Answers

1.	c	2.	d	3.	a	4.	d	5.	b	6.	b	7.	a	8.	c	9.	d	10.	c
11.	a	12.	d	13.	b	14.	c	15.	b	16.	a	17.	d	18.	a	19.	d	20.	c
21.	b	22.	a																

MORE!!!

Summary / Note

The lesson talks about the causes and symptoms of malaria, dengue and chikungunya. In malaria, Plasmodium attacks red blood cells. Colds are accompanied by a high fever. As malaria progresses, liver infections can occur.

Dengue is also transmitted by mosquitoes and can spread from one person to another. The virus attacks white blood cells. It affects the body's immune system. High fever is accompanied by body pain. Pain behind the eyes also occurs. The patient may have headaches and breathing problems. Bleeding may occur from the nose and gums. Bleeding can kill a person.

Chikungunya mosquitoes live in stagnant and polluted water. It is not a contagious disease. Its viruses affect muscle cells, joints, skin and central nervous system. It causes fever and skin rashes. The patient suffers from headache, nausea and vomiting. It is not a fatal disease.

There is no medicine available to prevent these diseases. We can avoid these diseases by taking precautions. We should wear full clothes. We should not let water stand in our surroundings. If we have any of these diseases, we should contact our doctor immediately.



Short Answer Questions

Q.1 What are the most common diseases caused by mosquito bites?

Ans: The most common diseases caused by mosquito bites are malaria, dengue and chikungunya.

Q.2 Which specific part of the body becomes highly infected in Cerebral Malaria?

Ans: Brain becomes highly infected in Cerebral Malaria.

Q.3 What can lead to severe liver infection when one has malaria?

Ans: The malaria parasite infects the red blood cells until they burst. Then, the newly developed plasmodium from the burst red blood cells spreads and infects more red blood cells throughout the body, thus killing all the cells. This can lead to severe liver infection.

Q.4 How is the immune system affected through dengue?

Ans: Once the dengue virus enters the body it circulates around the body, attacking white blood cells and other antibodies, thus affecting the immune system.

Q.5 How often can one get infected with chikungunya? Why?

Ans: One can get infected with chikungunya only one time. Once one recovers from this infection, one is immune to it for the rest of one's life.

Q.6 Which two of the three diseases have similar symptoms? What are these?

Ans: Both chikungunya and dengue have almost identical symptoms and disease processes. They are fever, skin rashes, body pain, and headaches.

Q.7 How often does one have fever and chills when one has malaria?

Ans: These symptoms of malaria usually occur every two days.

Q.8 How do all these diseases affect our life?

Ans: All these diseases affect a person's health. They affect the quality of one's work because it takes some time to recover from the weakness caused by them.

Q.9 How can we protect ourselves from these three diseases?

Ans: There are no vaccines or medical ways to prevent these diseases, we can protect ourselves from these diseases by taking precaution.

- Wear clothes that will keep you fully covered.
- Use net coverings.
- Live in hygienic surroundings.
- Ensure that there is no stagnant water, whether clean or dirty, in your locality, not even in uncovered buckets, pots, cans, or other things.
- Apply good quality mosquito repellent lotion or any one of the natural repellent products.
- Take extra precaution from dawn to dusk.
- Seek medical help as soon as possible.

Q.10 What should we do if we want to recover quickly from these diseases?

Ans: If we want to recover quickly from these diseases, we should seek immediate medical help when we observe symptoms of these diseases because the earlier they are treated the quicker is the recovery.

Exercise - 1

Tick the right answer. The text is about:

(a) The life cycle of a mosquito		(b) Different kinds of dangerous mosquitoes	
(c) Diseases caused by mosquitoes	✓	(d) Use of pesticides for mosquitoes control	

Exercise - 2

Circle the diseases mentioned in the text:

tuberculosis	diphtheria	cholera	yellow fever
jaundice	malaria	tonsillitis	chikungunya
hepatitis	dengue	influenza	cerebral malaria

Exercise - 3

Read the text. Find the following words and underline them.

parasite	transmitted	saliva	clot	chills
constipation	dysfunction	disorientation	transfusion	antibodies
immune	respiratory	stagnant	contagious	nausea
fatal	display	inflammation	intense	pronounced

Next, work with a partner and try to guess their meaning from the context. After you have discussed and meanings of all these words, check your answers from the glossary given at the end of this book.

Ans: See 'Word/Meaning' in the beginning of this lesson.

Exercise - 4

Work in pairs and see how many of these words you can use in your own sentences. The pair that will make the most correct sentences will be the winner.

Words	Sentences
parasite	Many diseases are caused by parasites.
transmitted	The information is transmitted electronically to the central computer.
saliva	Saliva dribbled from the baby's mouth.
clot	He underwent surgery to remove a blood clot on the brain.
chills	She got a fever with chills.
constipation	A recent study links childhood constipation with low fiber in the diet.
dysfunction	Your screen is still frozen, blank, or dysfunctional in some way.
disorientation	Symptoms may include fatigue, headaches, fever, memory loss, disorientation, insomnia, and loss of coordination.
transfusion	Without a blood transfusion her chances of survival were slim.
antibodies	Antibodies fight off infections and viruses.
immune	Everybody is immune to smallpox nowadays.

respiratory	Smoking can cause respiratory diseases.
stagnant	Few fish survive in the stagnant waters of the lake.
contagious	Not all the infectious diseases are contagious.
nausea	Some people experience nausea when flying.
fatal	The slightest mistake may lead to a fatal disaster.
display	Those books were on display in the window.
inflammation	An extreme allergic reaction causes rapid inflammation.
intense	He shielded his eyes from the intense flash of light.
pronounced	She speaks with a pronounced French accent.

Exercise - 5

For questions see "Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)" - Q.1 to Q.5 on page 52.

Exercise - 6

Read the text and complete the following table in your notebook:

Ans:

Disease	Source(s) of Transmission	Organs/Cells Attacked	Symptoms
Malaria	infected mosquitoes	red blood cells, liver, brain	High fever with chills, sweating
Dengue	infected mosquitoes blood transfusion mother to child	white blood cells, immune system	High fever with body pain Pain behind eyes Respiratory difficulties Headaches, skin rashes Bleeding from gums and nose
Chikungunya	infected mosquitoes	muscles, joints, skin, connective tissue, nervous system	Fever with skin rashes Headache, nausea and vomiting, severe joint pain, loss of taste

Exercise - 7

For questions see "Short Answer Questions" - Q.1 to Q.10 on page 53 & 54.



Unit
6.1

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
access	approach or enter	opinion	a belief or view
appreciate	to admire greatly	philanthropist	a person who seeks to promote the welfare of others
assignment	a task or piece of work	recess	a temporary cessation
betterment	improvement	recognition	acknowledgement
brainstorm	to consider or investigate	rehearse	to practise
contribution	participation	remarkable	worthy of attention; striking
dentistry	the branch of medical science which deals with the treatment of the teeth and gums	renowned	famous
educationist	an expert of education	rural	relating to village
enthusiasm	eagerness	shyly	bashfully
establishment	the act of forming	simultaneously	at the same time
honorary	conferred as an honour	tireless	showing great effort or energy
inspired	give an idea or feeling	tiring	exhausting
journals	periodicals or magazines	tremendous	enormous
marvelous	amazing	voluntary	acting of one's own free will
nod	shake head		

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Sana was sitting silently on the last bench of her classroom. Aliya was sitting next to her, and noticed a confused expression on her face. She asked, "Sana, what are you worried about?"

ثناء اپنی جماعت کی آخری بینچ پر خاموشی سے بیٹھی تھی۔ عالیہ اس کے برابر بیٹھی تھی اور اُس نے اُس کے چہرے پر پریشانی کا تاثر دیکھا۔ اُس نے پوچھا، "ثناء، کس بارے میں پریشان ہو؟"

"Aliya, I don't have a computer! How will I gather the information for our social studies assignment, 'Important Women of Pakistan'?" Sana replied.

"عالیہ، میرے پاس کمپیوٹر نہیں ہے! میں معاشرتی علوم کے کام 'پاکستان کی اہم خواتین' کے لئے معلومات کیسے اکٹھی کروں گی؟" ثناء نے جواب دیا۔

"Don't worry! All of us will sit together during the recess and divide the task amongst ourselves. You can bring the information from the school library."

"Yes! I can do that!" Sana nodded. Aliya smiled.

"پریشان مت ہو! ہم سب آدھی چھٹی کے دوران مل بیٹھیں گے اور کام اپنے درمیان تقسیم کر لیں گے۔ تم اسکول کے کتب خانے سے معلومات لاسکتی ہو۔"
"ہاں! میں یہ کر سکتی ہوں!" ثناء نے سر ہلایا۔ عالیہ مسکرائی۔

During the recess, the members of Sana's group took their lunch boxes and sat under the tall, shady, neem tree, which was their favourite spot. The group leader, Aliya, started off like an expert planner.

آدھی چھٹی کے دوران ثناء کے گروپ کے ارکان اپنے لंच بکس لے کر لمبے، سایہ دار، نیم کے درخت کے تلے بیٹھ گئے جو ان کی پسندیدہ جگہ تھی۔ گروپ لیڈر عالیہ نے ایک ماہر منصوبہ سازی طرح آغاز کیا۔

"Do you remember our science teacher taught us a problem-solving tool, called IDEAL?"

Everyone replied, "Oh yes, we do. But it is used for science."

Sameer said, "No, it's a tool for solving all kinds of problems and for planning too."

"کیا تمہیں یاد ہے کہ ہماری سائنس کی استاد نے مسئلہ کو حل کرنے کا طریقہ سکھایا تھا جسے آئیڈیل کہتے ہیں؟"

ہر ایک نے جواب دیا، "ہاں ہمیں یاد ہے۔ لیکن وہ سائنس کے لئے استعمال ہوتا ہے۔"

سمیر بولا، "نہیں یہ تمام قسم کے مسائل حل کرنے اور منصوبہ بنانے کا طریقہ ہے۔"

Ahmad explained, "First of all, we identify what the problem is. Then, we define what exactly we want to do to solve the problem. Next, we try and find out as much as we can about how to solve it. After that, we take the best possible action to try and solve it. Finally, we look back to see whether the problem has been solved or not."

احمد نے وضاحت کی، "سب سے پہلے، ہمیں شناخت کرنا ہے کہ مسئلہ کیا ہے۔ پھر، ہمیں یہ دیکھنا ہے کہ ہم اس مسئلہ کو حل کرنے کے لئے کیا کرنا چاہتے ہیں۔ پھر، ہم کوشش کرتے ہیں اور یہ معلوم کرنے کی پوری کوشش کرتے ہیں کہ ہم اسے حل کرنے کے لئے کیا کر سکتے ہیں۔ اُس کے بعد، ہم اسے حل کرنے کے لئے ہر ممکن بہترین عمل کی کوشش کرتے ہیں۔ آخر میں ہم یہ دیکھتے ہیں کہ مسئلہ حل ہوا کہ نہیں۔"

"So," said Hania, "Our problem is doing the assignment for which we need to find information from different sources."

"Exactly," said Aliya. "We also need to decide who will do what and then prepare and give our presentation."

"پھر،" ہانیہ بولی، "ہمارا مسئلہ ہے کہ ہمیں اسائنمنٹ کرنا ہے جس کے لئے ہمیں مختلف ذرائع سے معلومات تلاش کرنی ہیں۔"

"بالکل درست،" عالیہ بولی۔ "ہمیں یہ بھی فیصلہ کرنا ہے کہ کون کیا کرے گا اور پھر ہمیں اپنی پریزنٹیشن (پیشکش) تیار کرنی اور دینی ہے۔"

Next, Aliya told everyone to brainstorm and make a list of the women that they would like to work on. Everyone took out a sheet of paper and wrote many names. The list was very long. Finally, after a lot of discussion, they agreed on six names.

پھر عالیہ نے ہر ایک سے سوچنے اور ان خواتین کی فہرست بنانے کو کہا جن پر وہ کام کرنا چاہتے تھے۔ ہر کسی نے ایک کاغذ نکالا اور کئی نام لکھے۔ فہرست بہت طویل تھی۔ آخر کافی بحث و مباحثہ کے بعد انہوں نے چھ ناموں پر اتفاق کیا۔

Sana said, "I will bring information on Fatima Jinnah from the library books."

Sameer said, "My elder brother, Waqar bhai, has a laptop so I can bring information from the internet."

ثناء نے کہا، "میں کتب خانے کی کتابوں سے فاطمہ جناح پر معلومات لاؤں گی۔"

سمیر نے کہا، "میرے بڑے بھائی، وقار بھائی، کے پاس لیپ ٹاپ ہے اس لئے میں انٹرنیٹ سے معلومات لاسکتا ہوں۔"

Aliya suddenly realized that Razia was sitting quietly and had not shared her opinions with the group. So she asked, "Razia what about you, which source can you access?"

Razia replied shyly, "My father sells newspapers. I will ask him to bring old and new newspapers for this assignment."

"That would be great!" everyone exclaimed simultaneously.

عالیہ کو اچانک احساس ہوا کہ رضیہ خاموشی سے بیٹھی ہے اور اُس نے گروپ کو اپنی رائے نہیں دی۔ پھر اُس نے پوچھا، "رضیہ، تمہارا کیا، کس ذرائع تک تمہاری رسائی ہے؟" رضیہ نے جھجکتے ہوئے جواب دیا، "میرے والد اخبارات بیچتے ہیں۔ میں اس اسائنمنٹ (کام) کے لئے انہیں پرانے اور نئے اخبارات لانے کا کہوں گی۔" یہ تو بہت ہی عمدہ ہوگا! "ہر کسی نے زور سے ایک ہی وقت کہا۔

"I will use my uncle's smart phone to gather the required information," said Ahmed.

"What is a smart phone? How will you search information on a phone?" asked Sana.

"It's a mobile phone that has a touch screen instead of a keyboard for performing different tasks and we can use internet on it also," explained Ahmed, with actions.

"میں ضرورت کی معلومات جمع کرنے کے لئے اپنے چچا کا اسمارٹ فون استعمال کروں گا،" احمد نے کہا۔

"اسمارٹ فون کیا ہوتا ہے؟ تم فون پر معلومات کیسے تلاش کرو گے؟" سنا نے پوچھا۔

"یہ ایک موبائل فون ہوتا ہے جس میں مختلف کام کرنے کے لئے کی بورڈ کے بجائے ٹچ اسکرین ہوتی ہے اور ہم اس میں انٹرنیٹ بھی استعمال کر سکتے ہیں،" احمد نے اشاروں کے ساتھ وضاحت کی۔

Aliya informed that her mother had a big collection of magazines – she would use them for this assignment.

Hania said that she would get information from some journals and books.

عالیہ نے مطلع کیا کہ اُس کی ماں کے پاس میگزین کا ایک بڑا ذخیرہ ہے۔ وہ اس اسائنمنٹ کے لئے انہیں استعمال کر لے گی۔
ہانیہ نے کہا کہ وہ کچھ جریدوں اور کتابوں سے معلومات حاصل کر لے گی۔

Finally, they divided the list of the famous women amongst themselves and agreed to meet again with the information on the following Monday.

In the next meeting, they shared their material and rehearsed their presentations.

آخر میں انھوں نے مشہور خواتین کی فہرست اپنے درمیان تقسیم کر لی اور معلومات کے ساتھ آنے والے پیر کو دوبارہ ملنے پر اتفاق کیا۔
اگلی ملاقات میں انھوں نے اپنا مواد ایک دوسرے سے بانٹا اور اپنی پریزینٹیشن (نمائش) کی مشق کی۔

On the project day, they gave marvelous presentations because the group members had done their jobs very well.

Below is the information that they had gathered through the various media sources.

پراجیکٹ والے دن انھوں نے شاندار پریزینٹیشن (نمائش) دی کیونکہ گروپ کے اراکین نے اپنا اپنا کام بہت اچھی طرح کیا تھا۔
نیچے وہ معلومات دی جا رہی ہیں جو انھوں نے مختلف ذرائع ابلاغ سے اکٹھی کی تھیں۔

Some Famous Pakistani Women

کچھ مشہور پاکستانی خواتین

Mohtarma Fatima Jinnah (1893 – 1969)

محترمہ فاطمہ جناح

She was Quaid-e-Azam Mohammad Ali Jinnah's younger sister. She helped him in the struggle for the establishment of Pakistan. She left dentistry to live with her brother and support him. Her support continued for about 28 years, including the last nineteen, tiring years of his life. Through her, the Muslim women of the sub-continent were able to interview Mohammad Ali Jinnah and seek his guidance. The grateful nation gave her the title of Madr-e-Millat which means 'Mother of the Nation'.

یہ قائد اعظم محمد علی جناح کی چھوٹی بہن تھیں۔ انھوں نے پاکستان کے قیام میں ان کی جدوجہد میں ان کی مدد کی۔ انھوں نے اپنے بھائی کے ساتھ رہنے اور ان کا سہارا بننے کے لئے دندان سازی کو چھوڑ دیا۔ ان کا سہارا 28 سال تک جاری رہا جس میں ان کی زندگی کے آخری تھکادینے والے 19 سال بھی شامل ہیں۔ ان کے ذریعے برصغیر کی مسلمان خواتین محمد علی جناح سے بات کرنے اور ان کی رہنمائی حاصل کرنے کے قابل ہو پائیں۔ شکر گزار قوم نے انھیں 'مادرِ ملت' کا لقب دیا جس کے معنی ہیں 'قوم کی ماں'۔

Resources used for gathering information: Library Books

Presenter: Sana

معلومات جمع کرنے میں استعمال ہونے والے ذرائع: کتب خانے کی کتابیں

پیش کار: سنا

Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan (1905 – 1990)

بیگم راعنا لیاقت علی خان

She worked as an honorary secretary and typist to her husband, Liaquat Ali Khan, because at that time the Muslim League could not afford the salary of a secretary. She arranged meetings of the Muslim League women with the wife and daughter of the Viceroy so that they could explain to them the issues and problems related to Muslim women. She also organized the Muslim voluntary service and, later, the women's National Guards, consisting of three battalions, with 2400 girls, in which, she herself held the rank of a Brigadier. She is also the founder of the All Pakistan Women Association (APWA).

یہ اپنے شوہر، لیاقت علی خان، کے لئے بطور ایک اعزازی سیکریٹری اور ٹائپسٹ کام کرتی تھیں کیونکہ اُس وقت مسلم لیگ ایک سیکریٹری کی تنخواہ کی استعداد نہ رکھتی تھی۔ انھوں نے وائسرائے کی بیٹی سے مسلم لیگ کی خواتین کی ملاقاتوں کا اہتمام کیا تاکہ وہ مسلم خواتین سے متعلق مسائل سے انھیں آگاہ کر سکیں۔ انھوں نے مسلمانوں کی رضا کارانہ سروس، بعد میں خواتین کی نیشنل گارڈ منظم کی جو 2400 لڑکیوں کے ساتھ تین بٹالین پر مشتمل تھی، جس میں وہ خود بریگیڈیئر کے عہدے پر فائز تھیں۔ وہ آل پاکستان ویمن ایسوسی ایشن (اپوا) کی بانی بھی ہیں۔

Resources used for gathering information: Internet (laptop)

Presenter: Sameer

معلومات جمع کرنے میں استعمال ہونے والے ذرائع: انٹرنیٹ (لیپ ٹاپ)

پیش کار: سمیر

Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (1896 – 1979)

بیگم جہاں آراء شاہنواز

She represented the Muslim women at the three Round Table Conferences held in London. She was the first woman to make speech in London Guild's Hall. She also travelled widely and explained to the people of other countries, why the Muslims in India wanted a separate state.

انھوں نے لندن میں منعقدہ تینوں گول میز کانفرنس میں مسلمان خواتین کی نمائندگی کی۔ وہ لندن کے گلڈز ہال میں تقریر کرنے والی پہلی خاتون ہیں۔ انھوں نے بہت سفر کئے اور دوسرے ممالک کے عوام پر واضح کیا کہ انڈیا کے مسلمان ایک علیحدہ ریاست کیوں چاہتے ہیں۔

Resources used for gathering information: Newspapers

Presenter: Razia

معلومات جمع کرنے میں استعمال ہونے والے ذرائع: اخبارات

پیش کار: رضیہ

Professor Anita Ghulam Ali (1934 – 2014)

پروفیسر انیتا غلام علی

She was a popular newscaster of the English news and well known teacher of her time. She also wrote several articles and books. She served twice as the Sindh Minister of Education, in addition to being the Minister of Culture, Science and Technology and Youth and sports. Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was also the founding manager of the Sindh Education Foundation, Government of Sindh. Under her leadership, the Foundation played a remarkable role promoting quality education and bringing many out of school children to school, particularly in the rural areas of Sindh.

وہ انگریزی خبروں کی مقبول نیوز کاسٹر اور اپنے دور کی ایک جانی پہچانی استاد تھیں۔ انھوں نے کئی آرٹیکلز اور کتابیں تحریر کیں۔ انھوں نے دو بار بطور سندھ کی وزیر تعلیم کی خدمات سرانجام دیں اور اس کے ساتھ ساتھ ثقافت، سائنس و ٹیکنالوجی، نوجوانوں اور کھیل کی وزیر بھی تھیں۔ پروفیسر انیتا غلام علی سندھ ایجوکیشن فاؤنڈیشن، حکومت سندھ، کی بانی مینیجر بھی تھیں۔ ان کی رہنمائی میں فاؤنڈیشن نے معیاری تعلیم کے فروغ اور اسکولوں سے نکلے ہوئے کئی بچوں کو واپس اسکول لانے میں خصوصاً سندھ کے دیہی علاقوں میں قابل ذکر کردار ادا کیا۔

The government of Pakistan recognized her tremendous contribution to the cause of education. She was awarded the Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz for her life time contribution to Education.

تعلیم کے کار کے لئے ان کی شاندار خدمات کو حکومت پاکستان نے سراہا۔ تعلیم میں ان کی خدمات کے صلے میں ان کو پرائڈ آف پرفارمنس اور ستارہ امتیاز سے نوازا گیا۔

Resources used for gathering information: Internet (Smart Phone)

Presenter: Ahmad

معلومات جمع کرنے میں استعمال ہونے والے ذرائع: انٹرنیٹ (اسمارٹ فون)

پیش کار: احمد

Bilquis Bano Edhi (1947)

بلقیس بانو ایڈھی

She is a philanthropist who is also trained as a professional nurse. She is the widow of Abdul Sattar Edhi, who was a renowned social worker. She now heads the Edhi Foundation which provides nationwide support and care to the public, such as shelter homes and ambulance service.

وہ ایک انسان دوست شخصیت ہیں جو ایک تربیت یافتہ نرس ہیں۔ وہ عبدالستار ایڈھی کی بیوہ ہیں جو ایک معروف سماجی کارکن تھے۔ وہ اب ایڈھی فاؤنڈیشن کی سربراہی کرتی ہیں جو ملکی سطح پر عوام کو سماجی خدمات فراہم کرتی ہے جیسا کہ پناہ کے لئے گھر اور ایمرولنس سروس۔

She has received Hilal-e-Imtiaz from the Government of Pakistan in recognition of her tireless efforts for the betterment of the society. She has also been named the mother of Pakistan.

معاشرے کی بھلائی کے لئے ان کی انتھک خدمات کے اعتراف میں حکومت پاکستان نے انہیں ہلال امتیاز سے نوازا ہے۔ انہیں پاکستان کی ماں کا نام بھی دیا گیا ہے۔

Resources used for gathering information: Magazines, journals and books

Presenter: Aliya

معلومات جمع کرنے میں استعمال ہونے والے ذرائع: رسائل، جرائد اور کتب

پیش کار: عالیہ

After the presentations the teacher appreciated the effort the students had put in and invited everyone to comment on the presentations. Sadia stood up and commented that the information about these women had inspired her to dream big and to work for the nation. The teacher then asked a few students to share their future dreams with the class.

پریزینٹیشن کے بعد استاد نے طلباء کی کوششوں کی تعریف کی اور ہر کسی کو پریزینٹیشن پر تبصرہ کرنے کی دعوت دی۔ سعدیہ کھڑی ہوئی اور تبصرہ کیا کہ ان خواتین کے بارے میں معلومات نے اسے بڑے خواب دیکھنے اور قوم کے لئے کام کرنے کے لئے متاثر کیا۔ استاد نے پھر کچھ طلباء سے اپنے مستقبل کے خواب جماعت کے سامنے بیان کرنے کو کہا۔

Maryam shared that she wanted to be an educationist like Anita Ghulam Ali, and her grandmother, who was also an educationist. She expressed her wish to work for the improvement of female education. Next, Hira told her class fellows that she wanted to be philanthropist like Bilquis Edhi and wanted to protect girls from all troubles. Daniyal added that, like Abdul Sattar Edhi, he would like to help all human beings in trouble.

مریم نے بتایا کہ وہ انیتا غلام علی اور اپنی دادی جو ایک ماہر تعلیم تھیں، کی طرح ایک ماہر تعلیم بننا چاہتی ہے۔ اُس نے تعلیم نسواں کی بہتری کے لئے کام کرنے کی اپنی خواہش کا اظہار کیا۔ پھر حرانے اپنے ہم جماعتوں کو بتایا کہ وہ بلقیس ایڈھی کی طرح ایک انسان دوست بننا چاہتی ہے اور لڑکیوں کو ہر مصائب سے بچانا چاہتی ہے۔ دانیال نے اضافہ کیا کہ عبدالستار ایڈھی کی طرح مشکل میں پھنسی ساری انسانیت کی مدد کرنا چاہتا ہے۔

The teacher was very happy to see the enthusiasm of the future leaders of the country.

استاد ملک کے مستقبل کے رہنماؤں کا جوش و خروش دیکھ کر بہت خوش ہوئیں۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

1. Which is of the following sources of information were not used by the students?
 - (a) Laptop and internet
 - (b) Newspaper and magazines
 - (c) Books and smart phone
 - (d) Radio and television
2. **Madr-e-Millat means:**
 - (a) Leader of Asia
 - (b) Leader of the nation
 - (c) Mother of the nation
 - (d) Pride of the nation
3. **The first woman who represented the Muslim women in three Round Table Conferences in London, was:**
 - (a) Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (b) Bilquis Edhi
 - (c) Fatima Jinnah
 - (d) Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan
4. **Bilquis Edhi was awarded:**
 - (a) Hilal-e-Imtiaz
 - (b) Nishan-e-Haider
 - (c) Sitara-e-Imtiaz
 - (d) Sitara-e-Jura'at
5. **Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was appointed twice as a minister of:**
 - (a) Culture
 - (b) Education
 - (c) Science and Technology
 - (d) Youth and Sports
6. **She was Quaid-e-Azam Mohammad Ali Jinnah's younger sister.**
 - (a) Fatima Jinnah
 - (b) Rana Liaquat Ali
 - (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
7. **She helped Quaid-e-Azam in the struggle for the establishment of Pakistan.**
 - (a) Rana Liaquat Ali
 - (b) Fatima Jinnah
 - (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
8. **She left dentistry to live with her brother and support him.**
 - (a) Rana Liaquat Ali
 - (b) Fatima Jinnah
 - (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
9. **Fatima Jinnah support Quaid-e-Azam for about:**
 - (a) 10 years
 - (b) 20 years
 - (c) 23 years
 - (d) 28 years
10. **The grateful nation gave Fatima Jinnah the title of:**
 - (a) Mother of Pakistan
 - (b) Iron Lady
 - (c) Madr-e-Millat
 - (d) Khatoon-e-Millat
11. **Madr-e-Millat means:**
 - (a) Mother of Pakistan
 - (b) Mother of nation
 - (c) Sister of nation
 - (d) Woman of nation
12. **She worked as honorary secretary and typist to her husband.**
 - (a) Fatima Jinnah
 - (b) Rana Liaquat Ali
 - (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
13. **She arranged meetings of Muslim League women with the wife and daughter of the Viceroy.**
 - (a) Rana Liaquat Ali
 - (b) Fatima Jinnah
 - (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
14. **She organized the Muslim voluntary service and, later, the women's National Guard.**
 - (a) Fatima Jinnah
 - (b) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 - (c) Bilquis Edhi
 - (d) Rana Liaquat Ali

15. **Women's Nation Guard consisted of:**
 (a) 1 battalion (b) 2 battalions (c) 3 battallions (d) 4 battalions
16. **She was the founder of the All Pakistan Women Association (APWA).**
 (a) Rana Liaquat Ali (b) Fatima Jinnah
 (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
17. **She represented the Muslim women at the three Round Table Conference held in London.**
 (a) Fatima Jinnah (b) Rana Liaquat Ali
 (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
18. **She was the first woman to make speech in London's Guild Hall.**
 (a) Rana Liaquat Ali (b) Fatima Jinnah
 (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
19. **She was a popular newscaster of the English news and a well-known teacher of her time.**
 (a) Rana Liaquat Ali (b) Fatima Jinnah
 (c) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
20. **Anita Ghulam Ali served twice as the Sindh Minister of:**
 (a) Culture (b) Sport (c) Education (d) Industries
21. **She was the founding manager of Sindh Education Foundation.**
 (a) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz (b) Anita Ghulam Ali
 (c) Rana Liaquat Ali (d) Bilquis Bano Edhi
22. **For her life time contribution to Education, Anita Ghulam Ali was awarded:**
 (a) Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz
 (b) Pride of Performance and Hilal-e-Imtiaz
 (c) Sitara-e-Imtiaz and Hilal-e-Imtiaz
 (d) Pride of Performance only
23. **She is a philanthropist who is also trained as a professional nurse.**
 (a) Fatima Jinnah (b) Jahan Ara Shahnawaz
 (c) Bilquis Edhi (d) Anita Ghulam Ali
24. **For her tireless efforts for the betterment of the society, Bilquis Edhi has received:**
 (a) Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz
 (b) Hilal-e-Imtiaz
 (c) Sitara-e-Imtiaz
 (d) Pride of Performance

Answers

1.	d	2.	c	3.	a	4.	a	5.	b	6.	a	7.	b	8.	b	9.	d	10.	c
11.	b	12.	b	13.	a	14.	d	15.	c	16.	a	17.	c	18.	c	19.	d	20.	c
21.	b	22.	a	23.	c	24.	b												

Summary / Note

A group of students is given a social studies assignment at school entitled 'Important Women of Pakistan'. Group members distribute their work for the assignment and collect information from different sources. On the project day, they give a wonderful presentation. They collect the following

information:

Mohatarma Fatima Jinnah was the younger sister of Quaid-e-Azam. She left her job to help his brother and continued to strive for the establishment of Pakistan with her brother for 28 years. The nation gave her the title of Mother of the Nation.

Begum Rana Liaquat Ali Khan worked as a secretary for her husband. She conveyed the voice of Muslim women to the Viceroy's wife and daughter. She established the Women's National Guard and was also the founder of the All Pakistan Women's Association (APWA).

Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz represented Muslim women in all three Round Table Conferences and spread the voice of Indian Muslims to the people of other countries.

Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was a newscaster and teacher. She wrote many articles and books. She served twice as the Education Minister of Sindh. She was one of the founders of Sindh Education Foundation which worked for education in rural areas of Sindh. The Government of Pakistan recognized her services and awarded Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz.

Bilquis Edhi is a philanthropist and the head of the Edhi Foundation. In recognition of her social services, the government of Pakistan has awarded her Hilal-e-Imtiaz.

The group's presentation filled the students with enthusiasm and they were determined to work for the nation in the future.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 Why is Miss Fatima Jinnah called Madr-e-Millat (mother of the nation)?

Ans: Miss Fatima Jinnah helped her brother in the struggle for the establishment of Pakistan. She devoted her life to Quaid-e-Azam. She looked after her brother so much. The grateful nation thus calls her Madr-e-Millat which means the mother of the nation.

Q.2 What role did Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan play in the Pakistan movement? OR How did Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan help her husband in the Pakistan movement?

Ans: Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali worked as an honorary secretary and typist of Liaquat Ali Khan. She arranged parties where Muslim women could meet the wife and the daughter of the Viceroy. She also organized Women's National Guards.

Q.3 What role did Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz play in the independence movement?

Ans: Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz represented the Muslim women at the three Round Table Conferences held in London. She also travelled widely and explained to the people of other countries why the Muslims in India wanted a separate state. She was also the first woman ever to make a speech in London's Guild Hall.

Q.4 Who was Miss Fatima Jinnah? Why is she called Madr-e-Millat?

Ans: Miss Fatima Jinnah was the youngest sister of the Quaid-e-Azam. She looked after her brother so much. She devoted her life for the Pakistan movement. Due to her devotion, services and sincerity, the nation calls her 'Madr-e-Millat'.

Q.5 What do you know about the services of Anita Ghulam Ali?

Ans: Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was a newscaster and teacher. She wrote many articles and books. She served twice as the Education Minister of Sindh. She was one of the founders of Sindh Education Foundation which worked for education in rural areas of Sindh. The Government of Pakistan recognized her services and awarded Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz.

Q.6 What do you know about the services of Bilquis Bano Edhi?

Ans: She is philanthropist who is also trained a professional nurse. She now heads the Edhi Foundation which provides nationwide support and care to the public, such as shelter homes and ambulance services.

Exercise - 1

Write the answers to the following questions in your notebook:

1. How many students were there in Sana's group? Write their names.

Ans: There are 6 students in Sana's group.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|
| (i) Sana | (ii) Aliya | (iii) Sameer |
| (iv) Razia | (v) Hania | (vi) Ahmed |

2. How many famous women of Pakistan are mentioned in the text? Write their names in the order of appearance in the text.

Ans: Five famous women of Pakistan are mentioned in the text. In the order of appearance in the text, they are:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (i) Motharma Fatima Jinnah | (ii) Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan |
| (iii) Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz | (iv) Professor Anita Ghulam Ali |
| (v) Bilquis Edhi | |

3. How many students shared their dreams at the end of the presentations? Write their names.

Ans: Four students shared their dreams at the end of the presentations.

JOIN FOR MORE!!!

Exercise - 2

Work in pairs, find the following words in the text and underline them.

opinions	access	simultaneously	rehearsed	contribution	philanthropist
renowned	recognition	tireless	inspired	enthusiasm	

Now, try and guess the meanings of these words. Share your guesses with your partner. Check the Meanings from the glossary given at the end of the book.

Ans: See 'Word/Meaning' in the beginning of the lesson.

Exercise - 3

Do the following exercise in your notebook. Fill the blanks using all the words given in exercise 2. You can use each word only once. The first one has been done as an example. After you have finished, compare your answers with your partner.

1. My brother decided to become a soldier because he was inspired by uncle's disciplined way of life.
2. There are many charitable institutions in Pakistan that are funded by _____.
3. The whole class _____ said 'Yes' when the teacher asked if they wanted to go for a picnic.

4. Every year, the government awards titles to people in _____ of their services in different fields.
5. My father always asks for our _____ before buying any new furniture or other household things.
6. Our principal praised all the students for their _____ to the flood relief fund.
7. Everyone clapped with _____ when the small children ran in the race.
8. Our group _____ many times before the finals of the folk song competition.
9. Pakistan was created through the _____ efforts of many Muslims working under the leadership of Quaid-e-Azam.
10. All children in Pakistan should have _____ to quality education.
11. Allama Iqbal is a _____ poet of the sub-continent.

Answers

1. inspired	2. philanthropist	3. simultaneously	4. recognition
5. opinions	6. contribution	7. enthusiasm	8. rehearsed
9. tireless	10. access	11. renowned	

Exercise - 4

Do you remember what each letter stands for in the IDEAL problem solving tool and what it means? Read the text and complete the following statements. Write all the five complete statements in your notebook. The first one has been done as an example.

I	stands for	identify.	Here we identify the problem.
D	stands for	_____.	Here we _____.
E	stands for	_____.	Here we _____.
A	stands for	_____.	Here we _____.
L	stands for	_____.	Here we _____.

Ans:

D	stands for	define.	Here we define what exactly we want to do to solve the problem.
E	stands for	explore.	Here we try and find out as much as we can about how to solve it.
A	stands for	action.	Here we take the best action to try and solve it.
L	stands for	look back.	Here we look back to see whether the problem has been solved or not.

Exercise - 5

For questions see "Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)" - Q.1 to Q.5 on page 62.

Exercise - 6

Work in pairs and find out two things or achievements about each of the following famous women. Once you have orally discussed, write the two things /achievements of each of these women in your notebooks.

1. Fatimah Jinnah

- Ans:** (i) She left dentistry to live with her brother, Quaid-e-Azam and support him.
(ii) She helped Quaid-Azam in the struggle for the establishment of Pakistan for about 28 years.

2. Begum Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan

- Ans:** (i) She organized Muslim voluntary service, and later, the women's National Guards.
(ii) She is also the founder of the All Pakistan Women Association (APWA).

3. Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz

- Ans:** (i) She represented the Muslim women at the three Round Table Conferences.
(ii) She was the first woman to make a speech in London's Guild Hall.

4. Professor Anita Ghulam Ali

- Ans:** (i) She was well known teacher. She wrote many articles and books.
(ii) She was founding manager of the Sindh Education Foundation.

5. Bilquis Edhi

- Ans:** (i) She is philanthropist who is also trained a professional nurse.
(ii) She now heads the Edhi Foundation.

JOIN FOR MORE!!!

Exercise - 7

Read the text and fill in the following table. First fill in the years of birth and death and the put chronological order (chronological order means the order in which things happened). Finally, write their main contribution.

After you have completed, discuss your answers with your partner.

Name	Year of Birth	Year of Death	Chronological order by year of birth	Chronological order by year of death	Main Contribution for Pakistan
Fatima Jinnah					
Bilquis Bano Edhi					
Anita Ghulam					
Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz					
Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan					

Ans:

Name	Year of Birth	Year of Death	Chronological order by year of birth	Chronological order by year of death	Main Contribution for Pakistan
Fatima Jinnah	1893	1969	1	1	Help her brother, Quaid-e-Azam, in the struggle for the establishment of Pakistan.
Bilquis Bano Edhi	1947	Still alive	5	5	Social worker and head of Edhi Foundation
Anita Ghulam	1934	2014	4	4	Worked for education. Founded Sindh Education Foundation.
Begum Jahan Ara Shahnawaz	1896	1979	2	2	Made speeches and explained to the people of other countries, why the Muslims in India wanted a separate state.
Ra'ana Liaquat Ali Khan	1905	1990	3	3	Founded Women's National Guards and All Pakistan Women Association.

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

Exercise - 8

Work in pairs and orally complete the following statements by giving reasons. After you have discussed all the statements, write the complete sentences in your notebook. The first one has been done as an example.

1. Sana was worried because she did not have a computer for gathering information.
2. Aliya suggested that they use the IDEAL tool because _____.
3. The Muslim women benefitted from Fatima Jinnah's support because _____.
4. Begum Rana Liaquat Ali worked as a secretary because _____.
5. Begum Jahan Ara could explain Muslims' point of view to people in many countries because _____.
6. Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was awarded the Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz because _____.
7. Bilquis Edhi has received the Hilal-e-Imtiaz award because _____.
8. Maryam said that she wanted to be an educationist because _____.
9. Daniyal said that he wanted to be like Abdul Sattar Edhi because _____.

Ans:

1. Sana was worried because she did not have a computer for gathering information.
2. Aliya suggested that they use the IDEAL tool because it was a tool for solving problems.
3. The Muslim women benefitted from Fatima Jinnah's support because the Muslim women of the sub-continent were able to interview Quaid-e-Azam and seek his guidance.
4. Begum Rana Liaquat Ali worked as a secretary because at that time the Muslim League could not afford the salary of a secretary.
5. Begum Jahan Ara could explain Muslims' point of view to people in many countries because she wanted the world to know why the Muslims of India wanted a separate state.
6. Professor Anita Ghulam Ali was awarded the Pride of Performance and Sitara-e-Imtiaz because she had tremendous contribution to the cause of education.
7. Bilquis Edhi has received the Hilal-e-Imtiaz award because she has tireless efforts for the betterment of society.
8. Maryam said that she wanted to be an educationist because she wanted to work for the improvement of female education.
9. Daniyal said that he wanted to be like Abdul Sattar Edhi because he would like to help all human beings in trouble.

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**



The Secret of Success

Unit
7.1

کامیابی کا راز

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
announce	make a formal public statement اعلان کرنا	fortunate	lucky خوش قسمت
argue	giving opposite views in anger بحث کرنا	frequently	repeatedly متعدد بار - اکثر
bearded	having a beard داڑھی والا	glanced	took a brief look سرسری نظر ڈالی
bedding	bedsheets بستر	grief	sorrow دُکھ - ملال
bitter	resentful نخست - شدید	hay	grass سوکھی گھاس
break of day	dawn دن کا نکلنا	hospitality	generous reception مہمان نوازی
consult	seek advice مشورہ کرنا یا لینا	humbly	unpretentiously عاجز انداز میں
count on me	rely on me مجھ پر اعتماد کریں	meaningful	having meaning بامعنی - معنی خیز
courtiers	persons who attend a royal court درباری	ministers	cabinet members وزیر - وزراء
debated	argued about بحث کی	moment	instant - time لحظہ - پل
departed	left روانہ ہو گیا	motivated	inspired - stimulated ترغیب دی
destitute	extremely poor محتاج	needy	poor ضرورت مند
determined	having made a firm decision ثابت قدم - پختہ	patience	ability to wait صبر
disappointed	sad or displeased مایوس	pondered	thought carefully غور کیا - سوچا
discover	find - located دریافت کرنا	rags	torn clothes پھٹے پرانے کپڑے
evade	escape or avoid بچنا - ٹال دینا	restful	relaxed پُر سکون
fade	becoming less bright دھندلا ہونا - مدہم پڑنا	saint	a very virtuous, holy person صوفی - پیر - درویش
fainted	became unconscious بے ہوش ہو گیا	spade	a digging tool پھاؤڑا
fame	being known شہرت	straightaway	immediate فورا - فی الفور
		stranger	unfamiliar person اجنبی
		wounds	injuries خراش

Lesson with Urdu Translation

A long time ago there lived a king who was in search of the secret of success. He thought that if he could find out the answers to three questions, he would discover the secret and never fail. He

thought and thought for many days but the answers evaded him. So, he called all his ministers and asked them these three questions:

1. What is the most important time to start something?
2. What is the most important work to do?
3. Who is the most important person?

But none of them could come up with a satisfactory answer.

بہت زمانہ پہلے ایک بادشاہ رہتا تھا جو کامیابی کے راز کی تلاش میں تھا۔ اس کا خیال تھا کہ اگر اسے تین سوالات کے جواب مل جائیں تو اسے راز مل جائے گا اور وہ بھی کامیاب ہو گا۔ وہ کئی دنوں تک سوچتا اور سوچتا رہا لیکن اسے جوابات نہ مل پائے۔ اس لئے اس نے اپنے سارے وزیروں کو بلایا اور ان سے تین سوالات پوچھے:

1- کب شروع کرنے کے لئے سب سے اہم وقت کونسا ہوتا ہے؟

2- کرنے کے لئے سب سے اہم کام کونسا ہے؟

3- سب سے اہم انسان کون ہے؟

مگر ان میں سے کوئی بھی کوئی تسلی بخش جواب نہ دے سکا۔

Next, he called all his courtiers and asked them the same questions. They discussed and debated for long but none of their answers satisfied the king.

پھر اس نے اپنے سارے درباریوں کو بلایا اور ان سے وہی سوالات پوچھے۔ انھوں نے کافی دیر تاہم خیال اور بحث کی لیکن ان کا کوئی جواب بادشاہ کو مطمئن نہ کر سکا۔

He then called the wise and learned men of his country to his court. He discussed the problem with them for many days. They too were unable to satisfy the king, because they could not see eye to eye with each other, and ended up arguing amongst themselves. They came up with many different answers but none of the answers provided any meaningful solution.

تب اس نے اپنے ملک کے دانشور اور فاضل آدمیوں کو اپنے دربار میں بلایا۔ اس نے کئی دنوں تک اس مسئلہ پر ان سے بحث کی۔ وہ بھی بادشاہ کو مطمئن نہ کر سکے کیونکہ وہ خود بھی ایک دوسرے سے اتفاق نہیں کرتے تھے اور اختتام آگے نہیں جاتا تھا۔ وہ اپنی مختلف جوابات لائے لیکن ان میں سے کوئی جواب کوئی تسلی بخش نہ کر سکا۔

The king then asked his ministers to announce that whoever answers these questions, would get a reward of 5000 gold coins. Many people came and talked to the king but their answers did not satisfy the king.

بادشاہ نے پھر اپنے وزیروں کو اطلاع کرنے کو کہا کہ جو کوئی ان سوالات کے جواب دے گا اس کو 5000 سونے کے سکے انعام دیئے جائیں گے۔ کئی لوگ آئے اور بادشاہ سے بات کی مگر ان کے جوابات بادشاہ کو مطمئن نہ کر سکے۔

At some distance from the capital, there was a jungle. The king had heard that in the jungle there lived an old wise man who was considered a saint. He lived all alone. His fame had spread far and wide as someone who would solve everyone's problem. The king decided to consult the wise old saint. But the problem was he only mixed with poor and needy. He did not mix with the rich and wealthy. Since the saint did not like meeting wealthy people, the king started thinking as how to approach him.

دار الحکومت کے کچھ فاصلے پر ایک جنگل تھا۔ بادشاہ نے سن رکھا تھا کہ جنگل میں ایک بوڑھا عقلمند شخص رہتا ہے جس کو ایک درویش تصور کیا جاتا ہے۔ وہ بالکل تنہا رہتا تھا۔ اس کی شہرت دور دور تک پھیل چکی تھی کہ وہ ایسا شخص ہے جو ہر ایک کا مسئلہ حل کر دیتا ہے۔ بادشاہ نے اس بوڑھے عقلمند درویش سے مشورہ کرنے کا فیصلہ کیا۔ لیکن مسئلہ یہ تھا کہ وہ صرف غریبوں اور ضرورت مندوں سے گھلتا ملتا تھا۔ امیروں اور دولت مندوں سے وہ نہیں ملتا تھا۔ کیونکہ وہ درویش دولت مند لوگوں سے ملنا پسند نہیں کرتا تھا، اس لئے بادشاہ نے سوچنا شروع کر دیا کہ اس تک کیسے پہنچا جائے۔

The king pondered and thought deeply about a way to meet the saint. Soon he came up with a plan. He dressed himself in rags and set out to see the wise old saint. Since he wanted to appear poor and destitute, he asked his servants to remain behind. Alone he headed straight for the saint's hut.

بادشاہ نے غور کیا اور درویش سے ملنے کے کسی راستے پر گہری سوچ بچا کر۔ جلد ہی اسے ایک منصوبہ سوچا۔ اس نے پھٹے پرانے کپڑے پہنے اور بوڑھے دانشمند درویش سے ملنے

روانہ ہو گیا۔ کیونکہ وہ چاہتا تھا کہ وہ غریب اور محتاج نظر آئے، اس لئے اس نے اپنے ملازمین کو پیچھے رہنے کو کہا۔ وہ خود تہا سیدھا رویش کی جھونپڑی کی جانب چلا۔

When the king arrived at the hut, the saint was digging the ground in front of his hut. He was old and weak, and as he worked he was breathing hard. He tired quickly and stopped frequently to rest. The king approached him and addressed him directly. "Sir, I have come a long way to ask you the answers to my three important questions." The king continued, "My first question is : What is the most important time to start some work? My second question is what is the most important work to do? And third, who is the most important person?" Humbly the king continued, "Would you kindly help me by telling the answers to three questions?"

جب بادشاہ جھونپڑی پر پہنچا تو وہ درویش اپنی جھونپڑی کے سامنے کی زمین کھود رہا تھا۔ وہ بوڑھا حالور کٹر ورتھا اور کیونکہ وہ کام کر رہا تھا، اس لئے وہ مشکل سے سانس لے رہا تھا۔ وہ جلد تھک جاتا تھا اور تھوڑا آرام کرنے کے لئے کئی بار رُک جاتا تھا۔ بادشاہ اُس کے پاس پہنچا اور اُس سے براہ راست مخاطب ہوا، "جناب، میں بہت دُور سے آپ سے اپنے تین سوالات کے جوابات پوچھنے آیا ہوں۔" بادشاہ نے بات جاری رکھی، "میرا پہلا سوال ہے: کسی کام کو شروع کرنے کا سب سے اہم وقت کونسا ہے؟ میرا دوسرا سوال ہے کہ کرنے کے لئے سب سے اہم کام کونسا ہے؟ اور تیسرا ہے کہ سب سے اہم شخص کون ہے؟" بادشاہ نے عاجزانہ طور سے بات جاری رکھی، "برائے مہربانی کیا آپ ان تین سوالات کے جوابات پر مہربانی مدد کریں گے؟"

The saint paid no attention to the king and continued digging. The king waited for a few moments and then said, "Sir, you look tired. Let me dig the ground for you."

درویش نے بادشاہ کی طرف کوئی توجہ نہ دی اور زمین کھودتا جاری رکھی۔ بادشاہ نے چند لمحے انتظار کیا اور پھر کہا، "جناب آپ تھکے ہوئے نظر آ رہے ہیں۔ لائیے میں آپ کے لئے زمین کھود دیتا ہوں۔"

The saint thanked him and gave him the spade, and the king started digging. After some time the king repeated the questions and requested the answers. But all that the saint said to the king was, "Let me dig now." The king did not give him the spade, and kept digging. He remained calm and did not lose patience. The hope that he would find the answers to his questions, kept him motivated and determined. When evening fell and the light began to fade, he stopped digging and turned to the saint. He said, "Could you please let me have the answers to my questions now?"

درویش نے اُس کا شکریہ ادا کیا اور پھاؤڑا اُسے دے دیا اور بادشاہ نے کھودنا شروع کر دیا۔ کچھ وقت کے بعد بادشاہ اپنے سوالات دہراتا اور جوابات کی درخواست کرتا۔ لیکن درویش بادشاہ سے جو کہتا وہ تھا کہ "اب مجھے کھودنے دو۔" بادشاہ نے اُسے پھاؤڑا نہیں دیا اور کھودنا جاری رکھا۔ وہ دُکھ سکون رہا اور صبر کو ہاتھ سے نہ جانے دیا۔ اس اُمید نے کہ اُس کو سوالات کے جوابات ملیں گے، اُسے حوصلہ دیا اور ثابت قدم رکھا۔ جب شام ہو گئی اور روشنی کم ہوتا شروع ہو گئی، اُس نے کھودنا بند کر دیا اور درویش کی طرف مڑا۔ اُس نے کہا، "برائے مہربانی کیا آپ اب میرے سوالات کے جوابات دے سکتے ہیں؟"

The saint remained silent and pointed to one side. The king glanced in that direction and saw that a bearded man with a dagger in his hand was running towards them. When he reached them, he fell down and fainted. The King straightaway picked up the bearded stranger and carried him into the hut and laid him down on the ground. The king noticed that the man was injured, so he immediately took steps to stop the bleeding and, with the help of the saint he bandaged his wounds. The bearded man fell into a deep restful sleep.

درویش خاموش رہا اور ایک جانب اشارہ کیا۔ بادشاہ نے اُس سمت ایک سرسری نظر ڈالی اور دیکھا کہ اپنے ہاتھوں میں خنجر لئے ایک باریش شخص اُن کی طرف بھاگا چلا آ رہا ہے۔ جب وہ اُن تک پہنچا تو نیچے گر پڑا اور بے ہوش ہو گیا۔ بادشاہ نے فوراً اُس باریش اجنبی کو اٹھایا اور جھونپڑی کے اندر لے گیا اور زمین پر لٹا دیا۔ بادشاہ نے دیکھا کہ وہ شخص زخمی تھا، اس لئے اُس نے فوراً خون روکنے کے لئے اقدامات کئے، درویش کی مدد سے اُس نے اُس کے زخموں پر پٹی باندھی۔ باریش شخص ایک دُکھ سکون نیند سو گیا۔

By now, night had fallen and it was very dark. The king was too tired to return home. The saint invited him to stay the night and the king accepted the saint's hospitality. The saint prepared some simple food and provided the king with a bedding of hay to sleep on.

تب تک رات ہو چکی تھی اور بہت اندھیرا تھا۔ گھر جانے کے لئے بادشاہ بہت تھک چکا تھا۔ درویش نے اُسے رات ٹھہرنے کی دعوت دی اور بادشاہ نے درویش کی مہمان نوازی

قبول کر لی۔ درویش نے سادہ سا کھانا تیار کیا اور بادشاہ کو سونے کے لئے سوکھی گھاس کا بستر فراہم کیا۔

At break of day, the king awoke. He found that the bearded man too was awake. The king said, "How do you feel now?" The bearded man replied, "I am better now thanks to Your Majesty. Forgive me, I came to kill you because you had had my brother killed. I became your bitter enemy out of grief. I was hiding and waiting for your return. As you did not return, I came out of my hiding place, that's when your servants saw me. They immediately recognized me. They wounded me seriously but I escaped. Had you not cared for me I would have died. I thank you. Now, count on me as one of your most faithful servants." Saying this he saluted the king and left.

دن طلوع ہوا تو بادشاہ جاگا۔ اُس نے باریش شخص کو بھی جاگتے ہوئے پایا۔ بادشاہ نے کہا، "اب تم کیسا محسوس کر رہے ہو؟" باریش شخص نے جواب دیا، "میں اب ٹھیک ہوں، آپ کا شکریہ، بادشاہ سلامت۔ مجھے معاف کر دیں، میں آپ کو مارنے آیا تھا کیونکہ آپ نے میرے بھائی کو قتل کروا دیا تھا۔ دکھ کی وجہ سے میں آپ کا کٹر دشمن بن گیا تھا۔ میں چھپا ہوا تھا اور آپ کی واپسی کا انتظار کر رہا تھا۔ جب آپ واپس نہیں آئے تو میں اپنی خفیہ جگہ سے باہر نکل آیا، یہی وقت تھا جب آپ کے ملازموں نے مجھے دیکھ لیا۔ انھوں نے فوراً مجھے پہچان لیا۔ انھوں نے مجھے شدید زخمی کر دیا لیکن میں بچ نکلا۔ اگر آپ نے میری دیکھ بھال نہ کی ہوتی تو میں مر چکا ہوتا۔ میں آپ کا شکریہ ادا کرتا ہوں۔ اب آپ اپنے سب سے وفادار ملازموں میں سے مجھ ایک سمجھیں۔" یہ کہہ کر اُس نے بادشاہ کو سلام کیا اور چلا گیا۔

When the bearded man had departed, the king again asked the saint for the answers to his questions. The saint replied, "Your questions have already been answered. First, the most important time was when you wanted to help me. The most important work was the digging of the ground. And I was the most important person for you. Had it not been so, you would have returned and been killed."

جب باریش شخص چلا گیا تو بادشاہ نے دوبارہ درویش سے اپنے سوالات کے جوابات کے لئے کہا۔ درویش نے جواب دیا، "تمہارے سوالات کے جواب پہلے ہی دے دیئے گئے ہیں۔ پہلا، سب سے اہم وقت جب تم نے میری مدد کرنا چاہتے تھے۔ سب سے اہم کام زمین کھودنا تھا۔ اور میں تمہارے لئے سب سے اہم شخص تھا۔ اگر ایسا نہ ہوتا تو آپ واپس جاتے تو قتل کر دیئے جاتے۔"

The saint continued, "The second time, the most important man was the bearded man. The most important work was dressing his wound. Had it not been so you would not have won a faithful servant. You are very fortunate."

درویش نے بات جاری رکھی، "دوسری بار سب سے زیادہ اہم آدمی وہ باریش شخص تھا، سب سے اہم کام اس کے زخم کی مرہم پٹی کرنا تھا۔ اگر ایسا نہ ہوتا تو آپ ایک وفادار ملازم سے محروم ہو جاتے۔ تم بہت خوش قسمت ہو۔"

So, this is the moral of the lesson: The most important time for doing anything is the present. The most important work is what we are doing now. And the most important person is the one whom we are with at the moment.

اس لئے اس سبق کی اخلاقی نصیحت ہے: کسی کام کو کرنے کا سب سے اہم وقت موجودہ وقت (حال) ہے۔ سب سے اہم کام وہ ہے جو ہم اب کر رہے ہیں۔ اور سب سے اہم شخص وہ ہے جس کے ساتھ ہم اس لمحہ ہیں۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- Which one of the following statements best summarizes the story?
 - The present has all the answers.
 - The present is not what matters.
 - The present is the most important time.
 - The present gives you the most joy.
- The saint who lived in the jungle was a very:
 - rich man
 - poor man
 - severe man
 - wise man



3. The king went to see the saint:
 (a) all alone (b) with all his soldiers
 (c) along with his family (d) with all his courtiers
4. Who warned the king that the bearded man was coming?
 (a) his soldiers (b) the saint (c) his servants (d) his minister
5. After the bearded man left, the saint told the king that:
 (a) he would not answer his questions
 (b) his questions were too difficult
 (c) the bearded man had answered his questions
 (d) all his questions had been answered
6. The king thought if he could find out the answers to three questions, he would never:
 (a) lose (b) fail (c) win (d) pass
7. The most important time is the:
 (a) present (b) past (c) future (d) none of these
8. The most important work is what we are doing:
 (a) in the future (b) soon (c) now (d) none of these
9. The most important person is that one whom we are with at the:
 (a) moment (b) office (c) meeting (d) none of these
10. The king announced a reward of:
 (a) 2,000 gold coins (b) 3,000 gold coins
 (c) 4,000 gold coins (d) 5,000 gold coins
11. The king did not approve of their:
 (a) logic (b) answers (c) explanation (d) suggestions
12. The saint did not mix with the:
 (a) poor people (b) rich people
 (c) foolish people (d) wise people
13. The king dressed himself in:
 (a) rags (b) uniform (c) royal dress (d) fine clothes
14. The bearded man became a bitter enemy of the king out of:
 (a) revenge (b) grief (c) sorrow (d) hatred
15. The king found out the answers to his three questions from the:
 (a) old man (b) saint (c) scholars (d) learned men

Answers

1.	c	2.	d	3.	a	4.	b	5.	d	6.	b	7.	a	8.	c	9.	a	10.	d
11.	b	12.	b	13.	a	14.	b	15.	b										

Summary / Note

A long time ago there was king who that was searching for the secret of success. He thought that if he could answer three questions, he would find the secret of success. The questions were: What is the most important time to start some work? What is the most important work to do? Who is the most important person? The king asked his ministers, courtiers and the wise and learned people, but no one

could answer. The king announced the prize, but no one could answer. To answer the questions, the king disguised himself as a poor man and went to a saint. The king placed his questions before him asked their answers but the saint kept quiet. The king spent the whole day with him. In meantime, a wounded and breaded man came there and collapsed. The king dressed his wounds. The man was his enemy. The treatment and behavior of the king changed his mind and he became his faithful servant. The saint then told the king the answers. The most important time to start some work is present, the most important work is what we are doing now and the most important person is that man with whom we are at the moment.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 What were the three questions asked by the king?

Ans: These were the three questions the king asked?

(i) What is the most important time to start some work?

(ii) What is the most important work to do?

(iii) Who is the most important person?

Q.2 Why did the king want to know the answers to his three questions?

Ans: The king was in search of the secret of success. The king thought if he could find out the answers to three questions, he would discover this secret and never fail. He announced a reward of 5,000 gold coins for the man who could give correct answers.

Q.3 What could have happened if the King had returned earlier from the saint's hut?

Ans: The bearded man would kill the king if he had returned earlier from the saint's hut.

Q.4 Why did the king decide to take the saint's advice? What was the problem with meeting the saint and how did the king solve it?

Ans: The king had heard of the saint's wisdom who lived in the jungle at some distance from the capital. The problem with the saint was that he did not mix with the rich. The king overcame the problem by disguising himself in rags and set out to see the saint.

Q.5 Write a short note on "The Secret of Success".

Ans: The most important time for doing a thing is the present. The most important work is what we do in present and the most important person is he with whom we are at present. Past has gone, the future is unseen and will come, both are not present but the present is with us so it is important.

Q.6 Why did the bearded man want to kill the king? What happened to him?

Ans: The bearded man wanted to kill the king because he had got his brother killed. He kept in hiding for the return of the king. As the king did not return, he came out of the hiding and was wounded by the king's servants.

Q.7 What is the moral of the lesson "The Secret of Success"?

Ans: The moral of the lesson is that the most important time for doing anything is the present. The most important work is what we are doing now. The most important person is the one whom we are with at the moment. In short, the 'present' is important, we should value it.

Exercise - 1

The king asked the following people the three questions. However, the order in which these people were asked is jumbled up. Read the text and put them in the right order, by writing the number in the blank space. One has been done as an example for you.

- (a) Common people _____
- (b) Ministers _____
- (c) Saint _____
- (d) Scholars and wise-man _____
- (e) King Himself 1
- (f) Courtiers _____

- Ans:
- (a) Common people 5
 - (b) Ministers 2
 - (c) Saint 6
 - (d) Scholars and wise-man 4
 - (e) King Himself 1
 - (f) Courtiers 3

Exercise - 2

(1) Did the king find his answers?

Ans: Yes, the king found his answers.

(2) Who gave him the answers?

Ans: The saint gave him the answers on his questions.

Exercise - 3

Read the text. Find the following words / phrases and underline them.

discover	evaded	disappointed	consult	pondered	destitute
frequently	determined	glanced	straight away	hospitality	break of day
	bitter	grief	count on me	departed	

Work with your partner and guess the meanings of these words. Then check the meanings given in the glossary at the end of the book to see if you have guessed correctly.

Ans: See 'Words/Meaning' in the beginning of the lesson.

Exercise - 4

Work in pairs and see how many of the given words in exercise 3 you can use in your own sentences. The pair who will make the most correct sentences will be the winner.

Word	Sentence
discover	Did you discover something new today?
evaded	She evaded the direct question.
disappointed	I was disappointed that you didn't call.

consult	I persuaded him to consult a doctor.
pondered	He pondered the question before he answered.
destitute	The floods left thousands of people destitute.
frequently	Maria and Biljees spoke frequently on the phone.
determined	Waseem was a poor boy who was determined to learn.
glanced	She glanced briefly at the newspaper.
straight away	He needs to see a doctor straightaway.
hospitality	All the guests were touched by her hospitality.
break of day	We set out at break of day.
bitter	False friends are worse than bitter enemies.
grief	He hid his grief behind a smile.
count on me	You can count on me.
departed	He departed for Lahore the day before yesterday.

Exercise - 5

The following are statements about the story 'The Secret of Success'. Read them and write (T) if the statement is true and (F) if the statement is false, in the blanks provided. The first one has been done as an example for you.

- (a) The King wanted to find answers to 5 questions. F
- (b) The answers were important for him to be able to control his army.
- (c) The king was looking for the answers in order to succeed in life.
- (d) The king was happy with the answers that the group of learned men found.
- (e) The saint was living in the jungle with his family.
- (f) The king accepted the saint's invitation to visit him in the jungle.
- (g) The bearded man wanted to kill the king.
- (h) The bearded man had been injured by the king's servants.
- (i) The saint asked the king to look after the bearded man.
- (j) The bearded man became the king's loyal citizen.

Answers

a.	F	b.	F	c.	T	d.	F	e.	F	f.	F	g.	T	h.	T	i.	F	j.	F
----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---

Exercise - 6

For questions see "Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)" - Q.1 to Q.5 on page no 73 & 74.

Exercise - 7

Read the text and complete the following sentences. Write the completed sentences in your notebook.

- (a) The king wanted to find the answers to the three questions because
- (b) The wise and learned men were unable to give the answers because
- (c) The king dressed himself in rags to meet the saint because
- (d) The king told his servants not to go with him because
- (e) The king realized the saint's tired easily because
- (f) Although the saint did not answer his questions the king waited because
- (g) The bearded man was running towards the king because
- (h) The bearded man fainted when he reached the king because
- (i) The king agreed to stay the night in the saint's hut because
- (j) The bearded man became the king's loyal servant because

Ans:

- (a) he thought if he could find out the answers to three questions he would discover the secret and never fail.
- (b) they could not see eye to eye with each other, and ended up arguing amongst themselves.
- (c) the saint did not mix with rich and wealthy.
- (d) he wanted to appear poor and destitute.
- (e) he was old and weak.
- (f) he hoped that he would find the answers to his questions.
- (g) he wanted to kill the king.
- (h) he was wounded and bleeding.
- (i) he was too tired to return home.
- (j) the king bandaged his wounds, took care of him and saved his life.

Unit
8.1

Ghazi's Dairy

غازی کا روزنامہ

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
access	approach پہنچ۔ رسائی	gossips	little talks گپ شپ
capture	catch - seize گرفتار کرنا۔ قبضہ کرنا۔ پکڑنا	havoc	widespread destruction تباہی۔ بربادی
carefree	free from anxiety or responsibility بے فکر۔ لا پرواہ	irrigation	the supply of water to land آبیاری
commute	travel some distance سفر کرنا	locality	vicinity - site علاقہ۔ مقام
compromise	settle a dispute by mutual concession سمجھوتہ کرنا۔ مفاہمت کرنا	luxurious	extremely comfortable پریش
credit	Money available for a client to borrow اُدھار	pollution	contamination آلودگی
cusec	a unit of flow (کیوسک) بہاؤ کی پیمائش	quilt	a warm bed covering made of padding رضائی۔ گدا۔ لحاف
desperately	gravely - critically مافیہ کی حالت میں	release	set free چھوڑنا۔ اخراج۔ نکالنا
devastation	great destruction تباہی۔ بربادی	replaced	took the place of بدل لینا۔ تبدیل کرنا
devices	gadgets-appliances آلات	retain	keep برقرار رکھنا
distanced	went far ahead of دور نکل گیا	self-sufficient	needing no outside help in satisfying one's basic needs خود کفیل
facilities	things provided for a particular purpose سہولیات	siblings	brothers or sisters بہن بھائی
flesh and blood	used to emphasize that a person is physical گوشت پوست کا انسان	structure	make up - arrangement of parts ساخت
folk	relating to the traditional art or culture لوک	surplus	excess - extra فالتو۔ زائد
		tamed	domesticated - subdued سدا ہایا۔ مانوس کیا
		unmarried	not married غیر شادی شدہ

Lesson with Urdu Translation

Ghazi loved writing about his feelings and experiences. He often wrote things in his diary whenever he got into the writing mood. The following are two pages from his diary.

غازی اپنے احساسات اور تجربات کے متعلق لکھنا پسند کرتا تھا۔ جب کبھی وہ لکھنے کے موڈ میں ہوتا تو اکثر اپنی ڈائری میں چیزیں لکھتا۔ اُس کی ڈائری سے دو صفحات ذیل میں دیے جا رہے ہیں۔

Wednesday, 10th February, 2015

10:30 pm

Village life

دہلی زندگی

Today, I am once again reminded of my simple village and its loving and caring people. I am living in Karachi now, in a beautiful house that has many modern facilities. It is located in a locality that has clean streets and big houses that have beautiful gardens, with a variety of plants and trees. But I am desperately missing my village; the simple, mud house that we lived in, the simple toys that gave us so much pleasure, and the simple, carefree people amongst whom we lived. I wish I could get into a time machine and go back sixty years, back to my life in the village.

آج ایک بار پھر مجھے اپنے سادہ سے گاؤں اور اس کے پیار کرنے والے اور خیال رکھنے والے لوگوں کی یاد آ رہی ہے۔ میں اب کراچی میں رہتا ہوں، ایک خوبصورت گھر میں جس میں کئی جدید سہولیات موجود ہیں۔ یہ ایک ایسے علاقے میں ہے جس میں صاف گلیاں اور بڑے بڑے گھر ہیں جن میں مختلف اقسام کے پودوں اور درختوں کے ساتھ خوبصورت باغات ہیں۔ مگر میں بہت شدت سے اپنے گاؤں کی کمی کو محسوس کرتا ہوں؛ مٹی کے سادہ مکان جہاں ہم رہتے تھے، سادہ کھلونے جو ہمیں اتنی زیادہ خوشی دیتے تھے، اور سادہ، بے فکر لوگ جن کے درمیان ہم رہتے تھے۔ میری خواہش ہے کہ کاش میں ٹائم مشین میں سوار ہو جاؤں اور ساٹھ سال پیچھے چلا جاؤں، پیچھے گاؤں میں اپنی زندگی میں۔

The house that we lived in, had three rooms and a kitchen, all spread out in a yard that had no boundary wall, just some bushes separating our property from that of our neighbours. My grandparents and two of my unmarried aunts lived in one room, we, my parents and siblings, lived in another room, while my uncle and his family lived in the third room. We had a common kitchen, where the women of the family cooked for all of us.

وہ گھر جس میں ہم رہتے تھے، اُس میں تین کمرے اور ایک باورچی خانہ تھا، سب ایک صحن میں پھیلے ہوئے تھے جس کی کوئی باؤنڈری وال (بیرونی دیوار) نہیں تھی، صرف چند جھاڑیاں ہماری ملکیت کو پڑوسیوں کی ملکیت سے جدا کرتی تھیں۔ میرے دادا دادی اور میری دو غیر شادی شدہ بھوپھیاں ایک کمرے میں رہتی تھیں، ہم میرے والدین اور بھائی بہن دوسرے کمرے میں رہتے تھے جبکہ میرے چچا اور ان کا خاندان تیسرے کمرے میں رہتا تھا۔ ہمارا ایک مشترکہ باورچی خانہ تھا جہاں خاندان کی خواتین ہم سب کے لئے کھانا پکاتی تھیں۔

The house in which I now live is made of cement and painted in beautiful colours, with tiled floors; however, the houses in our village were all made of wood, straw and mud. We had no furniture, as such; we sat on the floor and slept on the floor by spreading some quilts that were kept on a wooden stand during the day. This was probably why very few people had knee problems; people of all ages comfortably sat on the floor, which exercised their knees.

یہ گھر جس میں اب میں رہتا ہوں سینٹ سے بنا ہے اور اس پر خوبصورت رنگ و روغن ہوا ہے، فرش میں ٹائلز لگی ہیں، مگر ہمارے گاؤں میں سارے گھر لکڑی، گھاس پھوس اور مٹی کے بنے تھے۔ ہمارے پاس ایسا کوئی فرنیچر نہیں تھا؛ ہم فرش پر بیٹھتے تھے اور گلے بچھا کر فرش پر سوتے تھے جو دن میں لکڑی کے ایک اسٹینڈ پر رکھے رہتے تھے۔ غالباً یہی وجہ تھی کہ بہت کم لوگوں کو گھٹنے کے مسئلے ہوتے تھے؛ تمام عمر کے لوگ فرش پر آرام سے بیٹھ جاتے تھے جن سے ان کی گھٹنوں کی ورزش ہوتی تھی۔

Our village did not have roads or streets; there were just narrow mud lanes, which became very slippery during the rainy season. Commuting from one place to another was not an issue; people did not need cars, buses or even motorbikes to go from one place to another in the village, they just walked. All this exercise kept them healthy and the absence of motor vehicles kept the environment pollution free.

ہمارے گاؤں میں شاہرائیں اور سڑکیں نہیں تھیں؛ وہاں صرف مٹی کی تنگ گلیاں تھیں جو بارش کے موسم میں پھسلن زدہ ہو جاتی تھیں۔ ایک جگہ سے دوسری جگہ جانا کوئی مسئلہ نہیں تھا؛ گاؤں میں ایک جگہ سے دوسری جگہ جانے کے لئے لوگوں کو کاروں، بسوں حتیٰ کہ موٹر سائیکلوں کی ضرورت نہ تھی، وہ پیدل جاتے تھے۔ یہ ساری ورزش انھیں صحت مندر رکھتی تھی اور موٹر گاڑیوں کا نہ ہونا ماحول کو آلودگی سے پاک رکھتا تھا۔

Unlike the city, the village did not have big shops and supermarkets. There were just a few small shops selling goods that people needed for everyday living. One did not always need money or credit cards to buy things from these shops; one could buy things from these shops even if one did not have any money because the village shopkeepers knew everyone by name and were usually willing to give goods on credit.

شہر کے برخلاف گاؤں میں بڑی بڑی دکانیں اور سپر مارکیٹیں نہیں تھیں۔ وہاں صرف چند چھوٹی دکانیں تھیں جو لوگوں کی روزمرہ ضرورت کا سامان بیچتے تھیں۔ ان دکانوں سے چیزیں خریدنے کے لئے کسی کو ہمیشہ رقم کی یا کریڈٹ کارڈ کی ضرورت نہیں ہوتی تھی؛ اگرچہ کسی کے پاس پیسے نہ بھی ہوں تو بھی وہ دکانوں سے چیزیں خرید سکتا تھا کیونکہ گاؤں کے دکاندار ہر ایک کو نام سے جانتے تھے اور عموماً ادھار پر سامان دے دیا کرتے تھے۔

The village Otaq, the place where men met in the evening, was where men spent their free time, shared news and gossips, laughed at shared jokes, talked about the weather, their crops and village issues, and enjoyed folk songs sung to the tune of the ghaghar and tamboora. The women had the village well which was the centre of all their activities. The village men and women shared their news and issues with people and enjoyed each other's company. They did not get their news from the television, learn about what was happening with people from the face book, get their entertainment from the You tube, and talk to people sitting at the next table through sms or email. All their activities centred on people in the flesh and blood, not people via devices.

گاؤں کی اوطاق ایسی جگہ تھی جہاں مرد شام میں ملتے تھے، جہاں مرد اپنا فارغ وقت گزارتے تھے، خبروں کا تبادلہ کرتے اور گپ شپ کرتے تھے، لطیفوں پر ہنستے، موسم، اپنی فصلوں اور گاؤں کے مسائل پر بات کرتے تھے اور کھا کھرا اور ظہور کے سروں پر گائے گئے لوگ گیتوں سے لطف اندوز ہوتے تھے۔ خواتین کے پاس گاؤں کا کنواں تھا جو ان کی تمام سرگرمیوں کا مرکز تھا۔ گاؤں کے مرد اور خواتین اپنی خبروں اور مسائل کا تبادلہ لوگوں سے کرتے تھے اور ایک دوسرے کی سنت میں خوش رہتے تھے۔ ان کو اپنی خبریں ٹیلی ویژن سے نہیں ملتی تھیں، لوگوں کے ساتھ کیا ہو رہا ہے انہیں ٹیکسٹ سے معلوم نہیں ہوتا تھا، اپنی تفریح یوٹیوب سے حاصل نہیں کرتے تھے، اور ان کی میز پر بیٹھے لوگوں سے ایس ایم ایس یا ای میل (برقی خط) سے بات نہیں کرتے تھے۔ ان کی تمام سرگرمیوں کا مرکز گوشت پوست کے انسان ہوتے تھے، آلات کے ذریعے جڑے لوگ نہیں۔

Alas! Our luxurious life style has compromised our health. The availability of devices has distanced us from people. The access to technology replaced the human touch. I wish for a time machine to take me back to my simple life, simple people, simple interests, and simple wants and needs.

آہ! ہماری پر تعیش طرز زندگی نے ہماری صحت سے گھونٹ کر لیا ہے۔ آلات کی دستیابی نے ہمیں انسانوں سے دور کر دیا ہے۔ ٹیکنالوجی تک رسائی نے انسانی لمس کی جگہ لے لی ہے۔ مجھے ایک ٹائم مشین کی خواہش ہے جو مجھے میری سادہ زندگی، سادہ لوگوں، سادہ دلچسپیوں اور سادہ خواہشات اور ضرورتوں میں واپس لے جائے۔

(2)

Friday, 4th August, 2017

11:45 am

'We Need to Store Rain Water'

ہمیں بارش کا پانی ذخیرہ کرنے کی ضرورت ہے

Monsoons once again! Floods everywhere! The much needed rain is here. While water is an important need of life, too much of it can cause flooding and devastation. In Pakistan, floods create havoc when rivers over flow their banks during the monsoon season.

ایک بار پھر مون سون! ہر طرف سیلاب! یہاں ضرورت سے زیادہ بارش آگئی۔ پانی جبکہ زندگی کی ایک اہم ضرورت ہے مگر بہت زیادہ سیلاب اور تباہی کا سبب بنتا ہے۔ پاکستان میں سیلاب تباہی مچاتا ہے جب دریا مون سون کے موسم میں اپنے کناروں سے باہر بہہ جاتے ہیں۔

Rivers have always played a very important role in the life of human beings. They have served as trade routes from the earliest of times. Before the building of roads and railways, most trade was carried on by boats and ships along rivers. In addition to this, rivers have been important for growing food. This was the reason that most towns in ancient times were built near rivers.

دریاؤں نے ہمیشہ انسانی زندگی میں بہت اہم کردار ادا کیا ہے۔ وقت کے شروعات سے ہی یہ بطور تجارتی راستوں کے استعمال ہو رہے ہیں۔ سڑکوں اور ریلوے کی تعمیر سے قبل

زیادہ تر تجارت دریاؤں کے ساتھ ساتھ کشتیوں اور بحری جہازوں سے کی جاتی تھی۔ اس کے علاوہ دریاغدا اُگانے کے لئے بھی اہم رہے ہیں۔ یہی وجہ تھی کہ قدیم دور میں زیادہ تر شہر دریاؤں کنارے ہی آباد کئے گئے تھے۔

However, rivers flood during the rainy season and run dry or have very little water sometime after the rains. One way that people have found to capture and retain the rain water for later use is by building structures to hold the water and prevent it from flooding. This way, the retained water can be used throughout the year for growing food. One way in which water is stored is through barrages built on rivers.

پھر بھی بارشوں کے موسم میں دریاؤں میں سیلاب آ جاتا ہے اور کبھی کبھی بارشوں کے بعد سوکھ جاتا ہے یا پھر ان میں بہت کم پانی رہ جاتا ہے۔ بارش کے پانی کو اکٹھا کرنے اور اسے بعد میں استعمال کرنے کے لئے رکھنے کا ایک طریقہ جو لوگوں نے دریافت کیا وہ ہے کہ پانی ذخیرہ کرنے اور اسے سیلاب بننے سے بچانے کے لئے عمارتی ساختیں تعمیر کی جائیں۔ اس طریقے سے جمع شدہ پانی کو خوراک اُگانے کے لئے پورا سال استعمال کیا جاسکتا ہے۔ ایک طریقہ جس کے ذریعے پانی ذخیرہ کیا جاسکتا ہے وہ ہے کہ دریاؤں پر بیراج تعمیر کئے جائیں۔

A barrage is a kind of wall, which blocks the flow of water. It has gates, through which the water is allowed to pass in a limited quantity. Its aim is to control the flow of water in the flood season, store it, and release it for irrigation, through the canals, throughout the year.

بیراج ایک طرح کی دیوار ہوتی ہے جو پانی کے بہاؤ کو روکتے ہیں۔ اس میں دروازے ہوتے ہیں جن میں سے محدود (مقررہ) مقدار میں پانی گذرتا ہے۔ اس کا مقصد سیلابی موسم میں پانی کے بہاؤ کو قفا کرنا، اسے ذخیرہ کرنا اور اسے نہروں کے ذریعے پورے سال آبپاشی کے لئے چھوڑنا ہے۔

The Guddu barrage, built on the river Indus, is one of the many barrages built in Pakistan. It is built at a place where the river is fourteen kilometres in width. It is designed to force the water spread over fourteen kilometres, to pass through a narrow barrage, about one kilometre wide. The barrage is 1355 kilometres in length. It is made in such a way that a flood of about 1.2 million cusecs can pass through it.

دیباے سندھ پر تعمیر شدہ گدو بیراج پاکستان میں تعمیر شدہ کئی بیراجوں میں سے ایک ہے۔ گدو بیراج کو اس جگہ تعمیر کیا گیا ہے جہاں دریا کی چوڑائی چودہ کلومیٹر ہے۔ اس کو اس طرح بنایا گیا ہے کہ پانی چودہ کلومیٹر کے پاٹ میں پھیلا ہوا ہے، اسے تقریباً ایک کلومیٹر چوڑے تنگ بیراج سے گذارا جاتا ہے۔ بیراج کی لمبائی 1355 میٹر ہے۔ اس کو اس طرح بنایا گیا ہے کہ تقریباً 12 لاکھ کیوبک کا سیلاب اس میں سے گذر سکے۔

The Guddu barrage has a system of three main canals. Two of these are on the right bank and one on the left. The Begari Sindh Feeder and the Desert Pat Feeder, are on the right bank. The third canal, the Ghotki Feeder is on the left bank. The three canals are amongst the largest feeder canals in the world. The barrage is meant to irrigate an area of 2.7 million acres. Most of this area lies in the Sukkur and Jacobabad districts of Sindh, and the rest in the Kalat division of the Baluchistan province.

گدو بیراج میں تین بڑی نہروں کا نظام ہے۔ ان میں سے دو دائیں کنارے پر ہیں اور ایک بائیں کنارے پر ہے۔ بیگاری سندھ فیڈر اور ڈیزرٹ پٹ فیڈر دائیں کنارے پر ہیں۔ تیسری نہر گھوٹکی فیڈر بائیں کنارے پر ہے۔ یہ تینوں نہریں دنیا کی سب سے بڑی فیڈر نہروں میں سے ہیں۔ اس بیراج کو 27 لاکھ ایکڑ زمین کی آبپاشی کے لئے بنایا گیا ہے۔ اس رقبے کا زیادہ تر حصہ سندھ کے اضلاع سکھراور جیکب آباد میں اور باقی صوبہ بلوچستان کے قلات ڈویژن میں واقع ہے۔

The Guddu barrage is one of the biggest barrages of Pakistan. It has also been the most difficult to complete. More than 5000 engineers, technicians, and labourers worked day and night to complete it. It was put into operation on 4th February, 1962.

گدو بیراج پاکستان کے بڑے بیراجوں میں سے ایک ہے۔ اس کو مکمل کرنا بھی بہت دشوار تھا۔ پانچ ہزار سے زیادہ انجینئروں، کاریگروں اور مزدوروں نے دن رات کام کر کے اسے مکمل کیا۔ اس نے 4 فروری 1962ء کو کام کرنا شروع کیا۔



The barrage has tamed the river and put an end to the damaged caused by floods in this area. It is about time that the government started constructing more barrages to control flooding during the rainy season and to supply water throughout the year for irrigating more land so that Pakistan becomes

self-sufficient in meeting its demands for grains, fruits and vegetables. In fact, proper water management can allow us to grow surplus food items, which we can then export and earn foreign exchange.

بیراج نے دریا کو قابو کر لیا ہے اور اس علاقے میں سیلاب کے باعث ہونے والے نقصانات کا خاتمہ کر دیا ہے۔ اب صحیح وقت ہے کہ حکومت بارشوں کے موسم میں ہونے والے سیلاب کو قابو کرنے اور مزید زمینوں کو سیراب کرنے کے لئے پورا سال پانی کی سپلائی کے لئے مزید بیراج تعمیر کرنا شروع کرے تاکہ پاکستان غلہ، پھل اور سبزیوں کی طلب پوری کرنے میں خود کفیل ہو سکے۔ دراصل پانی کا مناسب انتظام ہمیں غذائی اشیاء کی اضافی پیداوار لگانے میں ہماری مدد کر سکتا ہے جو برآمد کر سکتے ہیں اور زر مبادلہ کماسکتے ہیں۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Read the text and tick (✓) OR circle the correct answer:

- The writer 'Ghazi' is living in:
(a) Hyderabad (b) Karachi (c) Lahore (d) Sukkur
- The writer, Ghazi, is desperately missing his:
(a) wife (b) childhood (c) daughter (d) village
- Village houses were made of:
(a) mud (b) leaves (c) blocks (d) cement
- The villagers are very simple and:
(a) talkative (b) fat (c) carefree (d) tall
- Village people did not need vehicles, they just walked and this exercise kept them:
(a) wealthy (b) smart (c) tired (d) healthy
- In the village, the meeting place for men was:
(a) Otaq (b) village well (c) fields (d) school
- In the village, the meeting place for women was:
(a) Otaq (b) village well (c) fields (d) school
- Rivers have served as:
(a) traffic routes (b) trade routes (c) travel routes (d) transit routes
- Most towns in ancient times were built near:
(a) seas (b) canals (c) rivers (d) lakes
- There is a shortage of water in the rivers during the:
(a) summer season (b) autumn season (c) spring season (d) winter season
- A barrage which blocks the flow of water is a kind of:
(a) wall (b) dam (c) slope (d) barrier
- A barrage has gates through which water passes in a:
(a) plentiful quantity (b) large quantity (c) limited quantity (d) small quantity
- The purpose of a dam is to control the flow of water in floods and:
(a) deposit (b) collect (c) store it (d) accumulate
- The Guddu Barrage is built on the river:
(a) Jhelum (b) Chenab (c) Indus (d) Sattlej
- In length, the Guddu Barrage is:
(a) 1155 m (b) 1255 m (c) 1355 m (d) 1455 m

16. Through the Guddu Barrage, can pass a flood of:
 (a) 1.2 cusecs (b) 2.2 cusecs (c) 3.2 cusecs (d) 4.2 cusecs
17. The Guddu Barrage has a system of:
 (a) 3 main canals (b) 4 main canals (c) 5 main canals (d) 6 main canals
18. The barrage is meant to irrigate an area of:
 (a) 1.7 million acres (b) 2.7 million acres (c) 3.7 million acres (d) 4.7 million acres
19. Most of the area irrigated by the Guddu Barrage lies in Sukkur and:
 (a) Khairpur districts (b) Mirpur districts
 (c) Tharparkar districts (d) Jacobabad districts
20. The Guddu Barrage also irrigates some areas of:
 (a) Kalat (b) Zhob (c) Ziarat (d) Punjab
21. The Guddu Barrage was put into operation on 4th February:
 (a) 1960 (b) 1961 (c) 1962 (d) 1963
22. Begari Sindh Feeder and Desert Pat Feeder are on the:
 (a) right bank (b) left bank (c) north bank (d) south bank
23. Ghotki Feeder is on the:
 (a) right bank (b) left bank (c) north bank (d) south bank
24. The engineers, technicians and labourers worked day and night to complete the Guddu Barrage were:
 (a) 3,000 (b) 4,000 (c) 5,000 (d) 6,000

Answers

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c	5. d	6. a	7. b	8. b
9. c	10. d	11. a	12. c	13. c	14. c	15. c	16. a
17. a	18. b	19. d	20. a	21. c	22. a	23. b	24. c

Summary / Note

In this lesson, the pages of the diary of a man named Ghazi are given. Ghazi now lives in Karachi where all the comforts of life are available but he misses the simple life of his village, the simple living and simple people. He remembers his three-room house where he used to live with his parents, siblings, aunts, uncle and his family. People sat on the floor and slept. They used to travel on foot which kept them healthy.

He remembers the village shops whose shopkeepers knew all the villagers and used to give goods on credit. Men shared news, gossips, spent their free time and had fun in the village Otaq. The village well was the centre of all their activities. Ghazi complains that today's man has become so addicted to television, Facebook and YouTube that he has forgotten the people of flesh-and-blood.

On the second page of the diary, Ghazi talks about the devastation caused by the rains and the Guddu Barrage.

Rivers have been used for trade and irrigation since ancient times. That is why the most towns in ancient times were built near rivers. Man learned to control rivers by building barrages. Barrages store

flood water and provide us with water all year round. Guddu Barrage is one of the largest barrages in Pakistan. It was built on the Indus River. Its length is 1355 km. 1.2 million cusecs of flood water can pass through it. It has three main canals, two on the right bank and one on the left bank. Most of the area of this barrage is in Sukkur and Jacobabad districts of Sindh but some part is also in Kalat division of Balochistan. It has also been the most difficult to complete. Finally, to avoid rain disasters and to supply water all year round, Ghazi advises the government to build more barrages.

Short Answer Questions

Q.1 What are the things that the writer was missing?

Ans: The writer was missing his village, the simple mud houses, simple toys and simple carefree people whom he lived.

Q.2 Why did the lanes in the village become slippery in the rainy season?

Ans: The narrow streets of the village were covered with mud, so in rainy season they became slippery.

Q.3 Is the writer happy with his present life? Why? Why not?

Ans: He is not happy with his present life because he prefers the simple life and things of the village to the comforts of the present life and is disgusted with the artificial things of modern life.

Q.4 Why do most parts of Pakistan have flood problem in summer?

Ans: Because of poor water management, in the rainy season, Pakistan's rivers overflow their banks and create havoc far and wide. The population is dense and most of the population is inhabited near rivers.

Q.5 Why did people start building barrages?

Ans: Rivers flood during the rainy season and run dry or have very little water sometime after the rains. People started building barrages to capture and retain the rain water for later use and to prevent it from flooding.

Q.6 Do you agree / think that we should build bridges? Why? Why not?

Ans: Bridges are very useful for transportation but in the current situation we need more barrages to overcome the water shortage. Rainwater can be stored. Floods can be avoided. By doing so, we will take the country towards development. I think we should build more barrages than bridges.

Q.7 What do you know about the life of the writer's village?

Ans: The villagers were very simple and carefree people. They had simple things. They sat and slept on floor. The houses were simple, small and made of wood, straw and mud. The village had narrow mud lanes. The environment of the village was peaceful and pollution free.

Q.8 Why were the villagers healthy and strong?

Ans: The villagers walked a lot. They sat and slept on floor. They worked hard from dawn to dusk, so they are healthy and strong.

Q.9 What was 'Otaq'? What did people do there?

Ans: Otaq was the meeting place for men in the village. The village men used to meet there in the evening or in leisure. They used to share news, jokes and gossips. They used to talk about weather, crops and village affairs and enjoy the folk songs there.

Q.10 What was the meeting place for women in village?

Ans: The village well was the meeting place for village women. They discuss their matters there.



Q.11 Why does the author dislike new technology in this lesson?

Ans: The author says that our luxurious life style has compromised our health. The availability of modern technology and new devices has distanced us from people. The access to technology has replaced the human touch. That is why the author dislikes new technology.

Q.12 What is a barrage? What are the benefits of a barrage? Why are barrages built? OR How can we get benefits from a barrage?

Ans: A barrage is a kind of wall constructed across the river. It has gates through which water passes in a limited quantity. A barrage controls the flow of water in floods and thus protects life and property. A barrage also stores water which is used for irrigation through canals.

Q.13 What are the benefits of Guddu Barrage?

Ans: Benefits of Guddu Barrage are: (i) A flood of about 1.2 million cusecs can pass through the Guddu Barrage. (ii) The barrage irrigates an area of 2.7 million acres mostly in Sukkur and Jacobabad districts of Sindh. (iii) It will increase the grain output by half a million tons. (iv) It has reduced the distance between Lahore and Quetta while the distance between Rahim Yar Khan and Kashmore has almost been halved.

Q.14 Name the canal system of the Guddu Barrage. Which areas are being irrigated by this system?

Ans: The Guddu Barrage has three main canals. They are one of the biggest feeder canals in the world. The Bigari Sindh Feeder and the Desert Pat Feeder are on the right bank and the Ghotki Feeder on the left bank of the Indus river. This system irrigates most of the area of the Sukkur and Jacobabad districts of Sindh and some are of the Kalat division of Baluchistan province.

Q.15 Why were most towns in ancient times built near rivers?

Ans: Before the building of roads and railways, most trade was done by boats and ships. This is the reason for most towns in ancient times were built near rivers. Besides this, rivers provide water for irrigation.

Q.16 What are the two problems posed by rivers? What is the solution to these problems?

Ans: The two problems posed by rivers are how to get water from the rivers throughout the year and how to escape the fury of floods. A barrage is the solution to these problems. Barrages store water and control the flow of water.

Q.17 Write down a few sentences on the Guddu Barrage?

Ans: The Guddu Barrage is one of the biggest barrages in Pakistan, which has been built on the Indus river. More than 5000 people worked day and night to put it into operation on February 4, 1962. The barrage is 1355 m in length and has three main feeder canals. It has brought many benefits to our country.

Exercise - 1

Read the diary entries quickly and find out information for filling the following table. One entry is narrative and the other is descriptive. After filling the table, discuss with your partner.

Item	Day	Date	Topic	Place Mentioned	No. of Paragraphs	Type of Text
Entry 1						
Entry 2						

Ans:

Item	Day	Date	Topic	Place Mentioned	No. of Paragraphs	Type of Text
Entry 1	Wednesday	10 th Feb 2015	Village life	Karachi	7	Narrative
Entry 2	Friday	4 th Aug 2017	Storage of water	Sukkur, Jacobabad Kalat	8	Descriptive

Exercise - 2

The words in the box have been taken from the text. Find them in the reading text and underline them.

Entry 1	desperately	siblings	commuting	credit	gossips
	devices	compromised	distanced	access	replaced
Entry 2	devastation	havoc	capture	retain	structures
	releases	irrigation	tamed	self-sufficient	surplus

Discuss the possible meanings of these words with your partner. Next, check the meanings given in the glossary at the end of the book.

Ans: See the 'Words/Meanings' in the beginning of the lesson

Exercise - 4

The following sentences are summary of each paragraph of the two entries. Read the text and in the blanks provided, write the number of the paragraph to which each sentence is related. One has been done as an example.

Entry 1:	(a)	There were no roads and no vehicles.	4
	(b)	The modern lifestyle has affected our health and our relationships.	
	(c)	I miss the simple village life.	
	(d)	Men met and discussed things at the Otaq and women at the village well.	
	(e)	Three families lived in three rooms.	
	(f)	The houses were not made of cement.	
	(g)	People bought things from small shops.	
Entry 2:	(a)	One of the barrages in Pakistan is the Guddu Barrage.	
	(b)	Construction of more barrages is an important need of Pakistan today.	

(c)	The Guddu barrage irrigates land in two provinces.	
(d)	Rivers has always been important for travel and for growing crops.	
(e)	The flow of water is controlled through gates in a barrage.	
(f)	Many different people worked to complete the Guddu barrage.	
(g)	A way was found to store extra water for later use.	
(h)	Rains cause rivers to overflow, leading to flood.	

Ans:

Entry 1:	(a)	There were no roads and no vehicles.	4
	(b)	The modern lifestyle has affected our health and our relationships.	7
	(c)	I miss the simple village life.	1
	(d)	Men met and discussed things at the Otaq and women at the village well.	6
	(e)	Three families lived in three rooms.	2
	(f)	The houses were not made of cement.	3
	(g)	People bought things from small shops.	5
Entry 2:	(a)	One of the barrages in Pakistan is the Guddu Barrage.	5
	(b)	Construction of more barrages is an important need of Pakistan today.	8
	(c)	The Guddu barrage irrigates land in two provinces.	6
	(d)	Rivers has always been important for travel and for growing crops.	2
	(e)	The flow of water is controlled through gates in a barrage.	4
	(f)	Many different people worked to complete the Guddu barrage.	7
	(g)	A way was found to store extra water for later use.	3
	(h)	Rains cause rivers to overflow, leading to flood.	1

Exercise - 5

How was the village life of the past different from the city life of today, as given in the text?

Complete the following table to show the difference.

Work in pairs and do this exercise in your notebook.

S.No.	Items	Village life 60 years ago	City Life today
1.	Houses		

2.	Road/Streets		
3.	Mode of travel		
4.	Atmosphere		
5.	Shops/Markets		
6.	Buying from shops		
7.	Source of news		
8.	Information about people		
9.	Source of entertainment		
10.	Communicating with people		

Ans:

S.No.	Items	Village life 60 years ago	City Life today
1.	Houses	simple mud houses	made of cement with all facilities
2.	Road/Streets	no road or streets – narrow mud lanes	wide and lighted roads and streets
3.	Mode of travel	Walking	motorbikes, cars etc
4.	Atmosphere	clean and pollution free	Polluted
5.	Shops/Markets	small shops with less items	big shops and supermarket with variety of goods
6.	Buying from shops	cash or mostly on credit	cash or credit or debit cards
7.	Source of news	Village Otag or well	television, whatsapp, facebook etc.
8.	Information about people	Village Otag or well	television, youtube, facebook etc.
9.	Source of entertainment	Village Otag or well	television, youtube, facebook etc.
10.	Communicating with people	face to face	phone, sms, whatsapp etc.

Exercise - 6

Complete the following sentences in your notebook. After you have completed, discuss your answers with your partner and make changes, if needed.

- (a) Very few people had knee problems in the village because

- (b) The people in the village did not need vehicles because
- (c) People could buy things from the shops without money as
- (d) When the men met at the Otaq in the evening they
- (e) The writer wanted a time machine so that
- (f) Rivers have always been important for two reasons:
- (g) The main purpose of barrages is
- (h) The Guddu barrage has made a difference in this region by
- (i) Pakistan needs more barrages to
- (j) Through proper water management we can

Ans:

- (a) village people of all ages sat on the floor, which exercised their knees.
- (b) they just walked.
- (c) village shopkeepers knew everyone by name and were usually willing to give goods on credit.
- (d) spent their free time, shared news and gossips, laughed at jokes, talked about weather, crops and the village.
- (e) he could go back sixty years, back to his life in the village.
- (f) (i) they were used as trade routes. (ii) They have been important for growing food.
- (g) to block the flow of water and store it for later use.
- (h) eliminating the damage caused by floods in the area.
- (i) control flooding during the rainy season and to supply water throughout the year.
- (j) grow surplus food items which can then export and earn foreign exchange.

Exercise - 7

For questions see "Short Answer Questions" - Q.1 to Q.6 on page 85.

Grammar and Composition

Language Practice

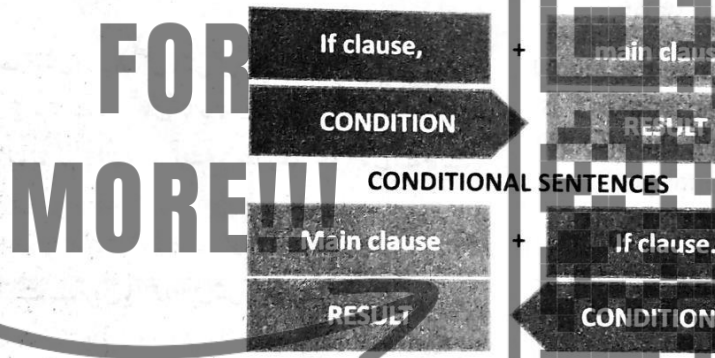
Conditional Sentences

There are several structures in English that we call conditionals or if conditionals. The word "condition" means "situation or circumstance". If a particular condition is true, then a particular result happens:

There are three basic English conditionals plus the so-called zero conditional. So, altogether there are four types of conditional sentences in English.

Structure of Conditional Sentences

The structure of most conditionals is very simple. There are two ways to describe them.



For example,

- If I see him, I will tell him.
- I will tell him if I see him.

Notice the comma in the first sentence. In the second sentence we do not normally use a comma.

First Conditional Sentences (for real possibility)

If I win the prize bond, I will buy a car.

We are talking about the future. We are thinking about a particular condition or situation in the future, and the result of this condition. There is a real possibility that this condition will happen. For example, it is morning. You are at home. You plan to play cricket this evening. But there are some clouds in the sky. Imagine that it rains. What will you do?

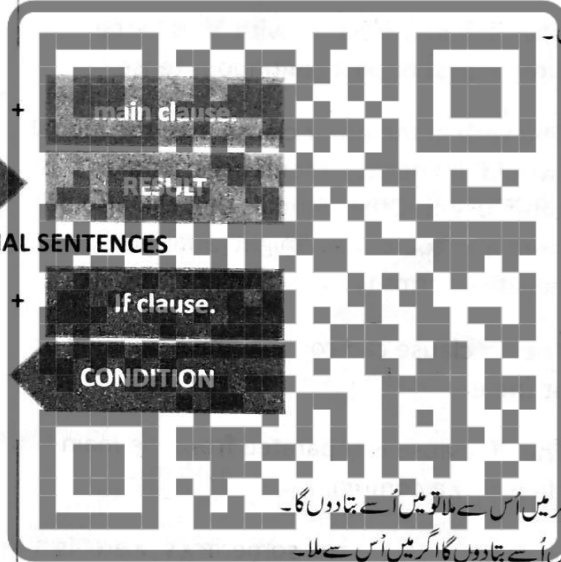
شرطیہ جملے

انگریزی زبان میں جملوں کی کئی اقسام ایسی بھی ہیں جنہیں ہم شرطیہ جملے کہتے ہیں۔ یہاں لفظ "شرطیہ" سے مراد "حالت یا صورتحال" ہے۔ اگر یہ خاص شرط یا صورتحال پوری ہوتی ہے تو پھر یہ خاص نتیجہ پیدا ہوگا:

انگریزی میں تین بنیادی شرطیہ جملے ہوتے ہیں اور ایک جسے صفر شرطیہ جملہ کہتے ہیں۔ اس طرح انگریزی میں کل چار اقسام کے شرطیہ جملے ہوتے ہیں۔

شرطیہ جملوں کی ساخت

زیادہ تر شرطیہ جملوں کی ساخت بہت سادہ ہوتی ہے۔ انہیں بیان کرنے کے دو انداز ہیں۔



مثلاً

- ☆ اگر میں اس سے ملا تو میں اسے بتا دوں گا۔
- ☆ میں اسے بتا دوں گا اگر میں اس سے ملا۔

پہلے جملے میں کو ما کا استعمال دیکھیں۔ دوسرے جملے میں عام طور پر کو ما کا استعمال نہیں کیا جاتا۔

پہلی قسم کے شرطیہ جملے (حقیقی امکان کے لئے)

اگر میں پرائز بانڈ جیتا تو میں ایک کار خریدوں گا۔

ہم مستقبل کی بات کر رہے ہیں۔ ہم مستقبل میں پیش آنے والے کسی خاص امکان اور اس سے پیدا ہونے والے نتیجے کی بات کر رہے ہیں۔ اس کا واقعی امکان ہے کہ ایسی حالت پیش آجائے۔ مثال کے طور پر صبح کا وقت ہے۔ آپ گھر پر ہیں۔ شام کو آپ کا ارادہ کرکٹ کھیلنے کا ہے۔ لیکن آسمان پر کچھ بادل ہیں۔ تصور کریں کہ بارش ہو جاتی ہے تو آپ کیا کریں گے؟



if	condition شرط	result نتیجہ
	Present Simple Tense	will + base verb
If	it rains,	I will stay at home.

Unit 1.3

Rules of Conditional Sentences (Second Conditional)

You have learnt about type 1 conditional sentences in earlier classes. Here we will discuss and practise Type 2 conditional sentences.

Type 2 conditional sentences are often used for talking about imaginary or unreal. Here are some basic rules followed in the second conditional sentences:

- The verb in the clause with 'if' is in the simple past or past continuous tense.
- The verb in the other clause uses the modal 'would' (in negative sentences 'wouldn't' is often used). Other modals that can also be used are 'could' and 'might' and their negative forms (couldn't, might not).
- The 'if' clause can come at the beginning or at the end.
- The 'if' clause is separated from the main clause by a comma.
- In a type 2 'if' clause, sometimes 'were' is used instead of 'was'.

Examples:

- If they drank sufficient water, they would have a healthy skin.
- If Sana was watching television, the lights would be on.
- I would go mad, if I received a billion rupees.
- If allowed, they could sleep the whole day.

Exercise - 1

The following table has some second conditional sentences. The first part is in column A and the second in column B, but in a jumbled order. Find the correct match from column B and write the answer in the answer column. The first one has been done as an example.

ہم پچھلی جماعتوں میں پہلی قسم کے شرطیہ جملے سیکھ چکے ہیں۔ یہاں ہم دوسری قسم کے شرطیہ جملوں پر بات کریں گے اور ان کی مشق کریں گے۔

دوسری قسم کے شرطیہ جملے اکثر تصوراتی اور غیر حقیقی صورتحال کی بات کرنے کے لئے استعمال کئے جاتے ہیں۔ یہاں کچھ بنیادی اصول دیئے جا رہے ہیں جن کی پابندی دوسری قسم کے شرطیہ جملوں میں کی جاتی ہے:

۱۔ 'if' کے فقرے ساتھ والا ورب (فعل) زمانہ ماضی مطلق یا زمانہ ماضی جاری میں ہوگا۔

جملے کے دوسرے جز میں ورب (فعل) میں فعل معاون 'وڈ' (منفی جملوں میں 'وڈ ناٹ' استعمال کیا جاتا ہے) استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔ دوسرے فعل معاون 'کڈ' اور 'مائیٹ' اور ان کی منفی اشکال (کڈ ناٹ، مائیٹ ناٹ) جو استعمال کئے جاسکتے ہیں۔

'if' لفظ والا جز ہمیں کے شروع یا آخر دونوں میں آسکتا ہے۔

'if' لفظ والے جز کو ماکے ذریعہ مرکزی جملے سے الگ کرتے ہیں۔

دوسری قسم میں 'if' جز میں کبھی کبھار 'واز' کے بجائے 'ور' استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔

No.	Column A	No.	Column B	Ans
1	If all people in Pakistan became honest	a	if the students and teachers paid due attention	1g
2	I could easily get an A grade in my exams	b	if they had an updated map of the area.	
3	If our driver did not drive so fast	c	they could visit all their friends.	
4	The tourists would not be lost	d	we would not be in hospital right now.	
5	If they had time	e	if she presented it well.	
6	If money grew on trees	f	if I worked really hard.	
7	Our schools would produce capable leaders	g	the country would progress very fast.	
8	Her idea would be accepted	h	everyone would be rich.	

Once you have completed the exercise, discuss with your partner. Then write the complete sentences in your notebooks.

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

Answers

1. 1g 2. 2f 3. 3d 4. 4b 5. 5c 6. 6h 7. 7a 8. 8e

Exercise - 2

Work in pairs and orally complete the following second conditional sentences by using the correct form of the verbs given in brackets. You may use other verbs, but make sure that you use the correct form.

Next, write the correct sentences in your notebooks. The first two sentences have been done as examples.

- If we had a computer, (finish)
 - If we had a computer, we could finish this work quickly.
 - If we had a computer, we could find some more information.
 - We might see a bear, (go)
 - We might see a bear, if we went further in the woods.
 - We might see a bear, if we climbed on a tree.
 - (a) If she studied harder, (get)
 - (b) If you grew multiple crops on your land, (earn)
 - (c) People would fly, (Have)
 - (d) If I owned a camera, (Take)
 - (e) They might win the match, (Work)
 - (f) If Abdullah lived with his family, (Save)
 - (g) My family would move to the city, (Allow)
 - (h) She could become a good doctor, (get)
- Ans: (a)she could get better grades. (b) you could earn more money.
(c) if they had wings. (d) I would take your picture.
(e) if they worked hard. (f) he could save lot of money.
(g) if they allowed me to attend college. (h) if she got MBBS degree.

Exercise - 3

Complete the following dialogue by using some or all of the words given below. You may use your own words or use these words any number of times. The first one has been done as an example. Do this exercise in your notebook.

want	have	come	fall	sick	join	swim	go	plan	be
------	------	------	------	------	------	------	----	------	----

Zahid: We had to call off our picnic plan. First, we decided to go to the seaside but we could not do so.

Qasim: Why?

Zahid: If we went to the sea side, Salim would not come.

Qasim: Why would Salim not come?

Zahid: If _____, he _____

Qaim: You don't fall sick when you swim.

Zahid: Salim's heart is weak. He _____, if he _____.

Qasim: You could have gone to the park.

Zahid: Tahir and Salman said that if we _____, they _____.

Qasim: Then what?

Zahid: Someone suggested that we visit the museum. However, half the group objected and said that if we _____, they _____.

Qasim: Why?

Zahid: They said that they _____ themselves, if we just _____.

Qasim: They were right. If you _____ to have fun, then you _____ that inside the museum.

Zahid: So, if we _____ to please everyone, we _____ on a place to go, hence, the plan was dropped.

Ans: If he went for swimming, he would fall sick.
Salim's heart is weak. He would be sick, if he went near water.
Tahir and Salman said that if we went to park, they wouldn't join us.
Someone suggested that we visit the museum. However, half the group objected and said that if we planned to go to the museum, they would not go inside with us.
They said that they would not wanted to tired themselves, if we just stayed outside the museum. If you want to have fun, then you have to go inside the museum.
So, if we wanted to please everyone, we would be agreed on a place to go, hence, the plan was dropped.

Punctuation

Punctuations are used for clarity. Few rules of punctuation are given below:

1. **Period or Full Stop (.):** We use it:

- (i) at the end of a sentence.
- (ii) For abbreviations.

e.g. He is a student.
a.m., p.m., B.C., A.D., etc

2. **Question Mark (?):** We use it:

- (i) after a question e.g. Are you happy?

What's the time?

Comma (,): We use it:

3. (i) between the parts of a series. e.g. I bought a pen, some pencils, an eraser and a sharpener.
(ii) After direct address e.g. Samina, I will help you. Do it again, Najia.
(iii) After introductory words e.g. Yes, I was absent yesterday.
(iv) to separate the reporting speech from the direct speech.
She said, "He is angry with me." "What do you want", they said.

Sign of exclamation (!): We use it:

4. (i) to express surprise, shock, a sharp outburst, or a command, etc.
Oh!, Ah!, Wow!, Ugh!, Nonsense!, Watch out!, Run away!, What a fine day!, How heavy!, Etc.

Capital Letters: We use them:

5. at the beginning of:
(i) sentences (ii) a proper noun (iii) adjectives made from proper nouns
(iv) each line of a poem (v) the first word following the inverted commas, etc.

Exercise - 4

Work in pairs and correct the punctuation and capitalization in the following passage.
Here are some tips on how to do it:

Step 1: Read each paragraph and identify where each sentence is getting completed. Mark that part again to see whether it is a question or a statement. If it is a question, put a question mark, otherwise put a full stop.

Step 2: Read each sentence again to see where commas and apostrophes are needed.

Step 3: Check and put the capital letters where needed.

Step 4: Read the whole Passage again to check for any errors.

Forming Habits

how long does it take to form a new habit I looked for an answer the same way most people do nowadays i asked google the answer i got was 21 days it seemed that if you repeat a behaviour everyday for 21 days you can form a brand-new habit then i asked can one change all types of behaviour in 21 days or just some types i was not able to find an answer all i could find out was that if it was exercise smoking writing a diary or turning cartwheels you could do it 21 days the important thing was to maintain a chain of 21 days without breaking it.

One psychologist mr mohan decided to do some research to find out if all new habits could be formed in just 21 days about 100 people from the multan university participated in the research they were asked to choose a behaviour that they wanted to turn into a habit they all had to choose something they didn't already do that could be repeat every day what do you think the result was the results showed that on average it took 66 days until a habit was formed however this does not mean that people weren't able to form new habits in 21 days according to the study findings some habits could be formed in 21 days while some could take as long as 254 days so 21 days to form a habit is probably right as long as all you want to do is drink a glass of water after breakfast anything harder is likely to take longer to become a really strong habit and in the case of some activities much longer

Ans:

How long does it take to form a new habit? I looked for an answer the same way most people do. I asked 'Google', the answer got was 21 days. It seemed that if you repeat a behavior everyday for 21 days, you can form a brand-new habit. Then I asked can one change all types of behaviour in 21 days or just some types. I was not able to find an answer; all I could find out was that if it was exercise, smoking,

writing a diary or turning cartwheels you could do it. 21 days - the important thing was to maintain a chain of 21 days without breaking it.

One psychologist Mr Mohan decided to do some research to find out if all new habits could be formed in just 21 days. About 100 people from the Multan University participated in the research. They were asked to choose a behaviour that they wanted to turn into a habit. They all had to choose something they didn't already do, that could be repeated every day. What do you think the result was? The results showed that, on average, it took 66 days until a habit was formed. However, this does not mean that people weren't able to form new habits in 21 days. According to the study findings, some habits could be formed in 21 days; while some could take as long as 254 days. So 21 days to form a habit is probably right, as long as all you want to do is drink a glass of water after breakfast, anything harder is likely to take longer to become a really strong habit and in the case of some activities much longer.

Unit 2.3

Using Modals for Ability

The modal verbs are **can, could, may, might, shall, should, will** and **would**. Modals are used for different language functions; like talking about ability, asking permission, making request, giving suggestions, etc. Here, we will learn about using the modals **can, could, may** for ability and permission.

Ability

We use **can** to talk about someone's skill or general abilities at a given time in the present or future:

He **can swim** like a fish.

They **can't speak** Punjabi very well.

You **can get** good marks in the exams.

We use **could** to talk about past time:

She **could speak** several languages.

They **couldn't write** very well.

کین، کنڈ، مے، مائیٹ، شل، شوڈ اور ووڈ فعل معاون ہیں۔ فعل معاون مختلف لسانی افعال کے لئے استعمال کئے جاتے ہیں؛ جیسا کہ قابلیت کا ذکر کرنا، اجازت لینا، درخواست کرنا، تجاویز دینا وغیرہ۔ یہاں ہم فعل معاون کین، کنڈ اور مے کو قابلیت اور اجازت کے لئے استعمال کرنا سیکھیں گے۔

قابلیت
ہم کین کو زمانہ حال یا مستقبل میں ایک خاص وقت میں کسی کی مہارت اور عمومی قابلیت کے بارے میں بات کرنے کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
وہ مچھلی طرح تیر سکتا ہے۔
وہ اچھی پنجابی نہیں بول سکتے ہیں۔
تم امتحانات میں اچھے مارکس حاصل کر سکتے ہو۔
ہم کنڈ کو زمانہ ماضی کے بارے میں بات کرنے کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
وہ کئی زبانیں بول سکتی تھی۔
وہ اچھی طرح لکھ نہیں سکتے تھے۔

Exercise - 1

Fill in the blanks with the positive or negative form of suitable modal verbs: **can/could**.

- I _____ swim when I was a child but I _____ swim now.
- My brother _____ run fast when he was five years old but he _____ run fast now.
- They _____ come early but they _____ find a bus earlier.
- Nowadays, Sana _____ speak English fluently but she _____ speak so well a year ago.

- (e) Sameer _____ speak several languages when he was young now he _____ speak only English fluently.
- (f) Little Shahzain _____ crawl but he still _____ walk.
- (g) Sara _____ embroider and stitch clothes but her sister _____.
- (h) We _____ play after completing our homework but we _____ play before that.

Answers

a. couldn't, can	b. could, can't	c. could, couldn't	d. can, couldn't
e. could, can	f. can, can't	g. can, can't	h. can, can't

permission

We also use **can** to ask for permission to do something:

Can I borrow your pencil, please?

Can we go home now?

The use of '**could**' is more formal and polite than can:

Could I borrow your pencil, please?

Could we go home now?

Another **more formal** and polite way of asking for permission is with the use of '**may**'.

May I borrow your pencil, please?

May we go home now?

We use **can** to give permission:

You **can** go home now if you like.

You **can** borrow my pencil if you like.

We can also use **may** as **more formal** and polite way of **giving permission**:

You **can** go home now if you like.

اجازت

کچھ کرنے کی اجازت لینے کے لئے بھی ہم کین کا استعمال کرتے ہیں:

برائے مہربانی کیا میں آپ کی پینسل لے سکتا ہوں؟

کیا اب ہم گھر جاسکتے ہیں؟

مکا استعمال کین سے زیادہ رسمی اور مہذب ہے:

برائے مہربانی کیا میں آپ کی پینسل لے سکتا ہوں؟

کیا اب ہم گھر جاسکتے ہیں؟

اجازت لینے کا ایک اور زیادہ رسمی اور مہذب طریقہ مے کا استعمال ہے:

برائے مہربانی کیا میں آپ کی پینسل لے سکتا ہوں؟

کیا اب ہم گھر جاسکتے ہیں؟

اجازت دینے کے لئے ہم کین کا استعمال کر سکتے ہیں:

اگر تم چاہو تو گھر جاسکتے ہو۔

اگر پسند کر دو تم میری پینسل لے سکتے ہو۔

ہم زیادہ رسمی اور مہذب طریقے سے اجازت دینے کے لئے مے کا استعمال کر سکتے ہیں:

اگر تم چاہو تو گھر جاسکتے ہو۔

Exercise - 3

Work in groups of six; three of you should complete Dialogue A given below, while three should complete Dialogue B. Add at least 10 lines in both the dialogue. You can change the names or add more names.

Dialogue A: Using can / could for ability

Zara: Can you speak Chinese, Najma?

Najma: No, but I can speak Persian.

Zara: Wow! What about you Farah?

Farah: I can't _____ but I can _____.

Dialogue B: Using can/ could/ may for permission

Areeb: I have completed my work. Can I play now?

Mother: Yes, you can, but come back soon.

Areeb: May I take my new _____?

Mother: _____

Bilal: _____

Ans: Dialogue A:

Zara: Can you speak Chinese, Najma?

Najma: No, but I can speak Persian.

Zara: Wow! What about you Farah?

Farah: I can't speak Persian but I can speak Arabic.

Najma: Can you? It means you can understand the Quran Majeed.

Farah: Yes, I can with the grace of Allah.

Zara: I could speak Arabic a little bit but now it's rusty.

Najma: I wish I could understand the Quran Majeed in its language.

Farah: You can learn Arabic if you want to.

Najma: Can I? Isn't it too late?

Farah: It's never too late. You can do whatever you want and whenever you want.

Zara: If Najma can learn, I can too.

Farah: Of course, you can do that. Everyone can do that whoever wants to understand the Quran Majeed.

Ans: Dialogue B:

Areeb: I have completed my work. Can I play now?

Mother: Yes, you can, but come back soon.

Areeb: May I take my new bat with me?

Mother: Yes, you can if you like.

Bilal: Mama, Could I go with brother Areeb?

Mother: No, you can't go. You will annoy him.

Bilal: No, I won't. Let me go.

Mother: No, you will stay at home.

Areeb: Mamma, May I put on this shirt?

Mother: Yes, you can. Can you bring some sweets and biscuits for Bilal?

Areeb: Of course, I can.

Mother: What would you like Bilal?
 Bilal: May I have chocolate cake and chips?
 Mother: Yes, son. You can have them.
 Areeb: Could I go now?
 Mother: Yes, son. You can.

Suffixes

We sometimes add a pair or group of alphabets at the end of a word to add something to the meaning of a word. These are called suffixes. We can use suffixes to make many new words, including nouns.

لاحقہ
 کبھی کبھار ہم کسی لفظ کے معنی میں کچھ اضافہ کرنے کے لئے اُس لفظ کے آخر میں حروف تہجی کے جوڑے یا گروپ کا اضافہ کر دیتے ہیں۔ یہ لاحقے ہوتے ہیں۔ ہم نئے الفاظ، بشمول اسم کے، بنانے کے لئے لاحقے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

Examples: agree + ment = agreement postpone + ment = postponement
 willing + ness = willingness frank + ness = frankness
 arrive + al = arrival profession + al = professional

JOIN

Exercise - 4

A. Fill the blanks in the following exercise with nouns formed by using the suffix 'ment' with the appropriate given words. One has been done as an example.

employ treat manage pay retire judge

- As soon as the judgement was given, the reporters left the court room.
- Zaman is back to work after his _____.
- The workers receive their weekly _____ every Friday.
- My son is looking for _____ as he lost his job last week.
- After his _____ at the age of sixty he has decided to write a book.
- The _____ of the school announced their new admission policy yesterday.

Answers

1.	judgement	2.	treatment	3.	payment
4.	employment	5.	retirement	6.	management

B. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the suffix 'ness' with the appropriate given words.

ill bold neat kind soft

- Her _____ has made her weak.
- I love the _____ of our new sofa set.
- Our neighbour's son, who is a soldier, fought the enemy with _____.
- The principal of our school treats everyone with _____.
- My mother taught us _____ in all our work.

Answers

1.	illness	2.	softness	3.	boldness
4.	kindness	5.	neatness		

C. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the suffix 'al' with the appropriate given words.

sign	survive	approve	propose	remove
------	---------	---------	---------	--------

- The _____ of the green turtle is in danger on the Karachi beaches.
- Our _____ for setting up a dispensary was accepted by the minister.
- The _____ of garbage is the responsibility of the government.
- The train moved out of the station as soon as the guard gave the _____.
- I needed my parents' _____ for going to friend's wedding.

Answers

1.	survival	2.	proposal	3.	removal
4.	signal	5.	approval		

Unit
3.3

Types of Sentences

جملوں کی اقسام

In English we have different types of sentences. Each type is used for a specific purpose. Below are two sentence types and the purpose for which each type is used.

1. Declarative Sentences are sentences that are generally called statements. They can be affirmative or negative.

For example:

I'm tired. I'm not tired.
Raheel is hungry. Raheel isn't hungry.
I have four pencils. I don't have four pencils.

2. Interrogative Sentences are what we call question forms and are used to make enquires, to confirm information, and so on. They can be affirmative or negative.

انگریزی میں ہمارے پاس مختلف اقسام کے جملے ہیں۔ ہر قسم ایک مخصوص مقصد کے لئے استعمال ہوتی ہے۔ نیچے جملوں کی دو اقسام اور ہر قسم کا مقصد کے لئے استعمال ہوتی ہے بیان کیا جا رہا ہے۔

بیانیہ جملے وہ جملے ہوتے ہیں جنہیں عام طور پر بیانات کہا جاتا ہے۔ یہ مثبت یا منفی ہو سکتے ہیں۔

مثال کے طور پر
میں تھکا ہوا ہوں۔ میں تھکا ہوا نہیں ہوں۔
راہیل بھوکا ہے۔ راہیل بھوکا نہیں ہے۔
میرے پاس چار پینسل ہیں۔ میرے پاس چار پینسل نہیں ہیں۔

سوالات کے جملے سوالات کی شکل میں ہیں اور انہیں سوالات پوچھنے، معلومات کی یقین دہانی کرنے وغیرہ کے لئے استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔ یہ مثبت یا منفی ہو سکتے ہیں۔

For example

Are you hungry?

Aren't you hungry?

Did you do your homework?

Didn't you do your homework?

Have you washed the dishes?

Haven't you washed the dishes as yet?

مثال کے طور پر

کیا تم بھوکے ہو؟

کیا تم بھوکے نہیں ہو؟

کیا تم نے اپنا ہوم ورک کر لیا تھا؟

کیا تم نے اپنا ہوم ورک نہیں کیا تھا؟

کیا تم برتن دھو چکے/چکی ہو؟

کیا تم نے ابھی تک برتن نہیں دھوئے؟

Negative Sentences

انکاریہ جملے

مثبت (ASSERTIVE) جملے کو انکاریہ جملے میں تبدیل کرنے کے مندرجہ ذیل تین طریقے ہیں:

(i) اگر جملے میں امدادی فعل (HELPING VERB) یعنی HAVE, HAD, IS, AM, ARE, WAS, WERE, WILL, HAS, SHALL, MIGHT, MAY, COLOUR, CAN, SHOULD, WOULD وغیرہ ہو تو اس کے بعد NOT لگاتے ہیں۔

(ii) اگر جملے میں HELPING VERB نہ ہو اور صرف VERB کی پہلی فارم ہو تو

(a) VERB کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ S یا ES کا اضافہ ہو تو VERB سے پہلے DOES NOT لکھتے ہیں اور VERB کے ساتھ S یا ES کے اضافہ کو ختم کر دیتے ہیں۔

(b) صرف اور صرف VERB کی پہلی فارم ہو تو اس سے پہلے DO NOT لکھتے ہیں۔

(iii) اگر جملے میں VERB کی دوسری فارم ہو تو اس سے پہلے DID NOT لگاتے ہیں اور VERB کی دوسری فارم کو پہلی فارم میں تبدیل کر دیتے ہیں۔

Interrogative Sentences

سوالیہ جملے

بیانیہ جملے کو سوالیہ جملے میں تبدیل کرنے کے مندرجہ ذیل تین طریقے ہیں۔

(i) اگر جملے میں امدادی فعل (HELPING VERB) یعنی HAVE, HAD, IS, AM, ARE, WAS, WERE, WILL, WOULD, SHOULD, CAN, COULD, MAY, MIGHT, SHALL, HAS, وغیرہ ہو تو انہیں جملے کے شروع میں استعمال کیا جاتا ہے اور جملے کے آخر میں سوالیہ نشان "?" لگاتے ہیں۔

(ii) اگر جملے میں VERB کی پہلی فارم ہو اور اس کے ساتھ S یا ES کا اضافہ ہو تو جملے سے پہلے DOES لگاتے ہیں اور S یا ES کا اضافہ ختم کر دیا جاتا ہے اور اگر VERB کی پہلی فارم ہو تو جملہ DO سے شروع کیا جاتا ہے۔

(iii) اگر جملے میں VERB کی دوسری فارم ہو تو فاعل SUBJECT سے پہلے DID استعمال کرتے ہیں اور VERB کی دوسری فارم کو پہلی فارم میں تبدیل کر دیتے ہیں۔

Exercise - 1

Below is a list of sentences. Against each one write what type of sentence it is. For example: 'declarative affirmative' or 'interrogative negative' and so on. The first one has been done for you as an example:

(declarative affirmative)

1. Sabiha is shivering.
2. Are we going to the football field?
3. The stranger was not calling from the hospital.
4. Will you come to my house tomorrow to study?

5. I like to play cricket.
6. Isn't this your book?
7. Aren't you the girl who won the gold medal?
8. Juman doesn't like to play hockey.

Answers

1. declarative affirmative	2. interrogative affirmative	3. declarative negative
4. interrogative affirmative	5. declarative affirmative	6. interrogative negative
7. interrogative negative	8. declarative negative	

Exercise - 2

Change all the affirmative sentences in exercise 1 into negative and all the negative ones into affirmative.

Ans:

1. Sabiha is not shivering.
2. Are we not going to the football field?
3. The stranger was calling from the hospital.
4. Will you not come to my house tomorrow to study?
5. I do not like to play cricket.
6. Is this your book?
7. Are you the girl who won the gold medal?
8. Juman likes to play hockey.

Articles

There are three articles in English grammar, they are: 'A', 'An' and 'The'.

- 'A' is used only with 'countable nouns'.
- 'A' is used only with 'singular number'.
- 'An' is used only with 'countable nouns'.
- 'An' is used only with 'singular number'.

Use of 'A' and 'An'

- 'A' is used if the first letter of a word begins with a consonants. as: a car, a boy, a cow, a ball.
- 'An' is used if the first letter of a word begins with a vowel. as: an egg, an icecream, an eagle, an orange.
- If 'u' sounds 'a', 'an' is used, as an umbrella (ambrella)

انگریزی میں تین Articles ہیں: A, An اور The

- 'A' صرف "countable noun" کے ساتھ استعمال ہوتا ہے۔
- 'A' صرف "singular number" کے ساتھ استعمال ہوتا ہے۔
- 'An' صرف "countable noun" کے ساتھ استعمال ہوتا ہے۔
- 'An' صرف "singular number" کے ساتھ استعمال ہوتا ہے۔

A اور An کا استعمال

- اگر کسی لفظ کا پہلا حرف "consonant" ہو تو A استعمال ہوگا۔
- اگر پہلا حرف "vowel" ہو تو an استعمال کریں گے۔
- اگر کسی آواز a جیسی ہو تو an استعمال کریں گے۔

- If 'u' sounds as 'y', 'a' is used as a university (university)
- If the word starts with vowel sound, 'an' is used, as an hotel (otel), an honest (onest) man.
- If the first letter is 'e' but the second letter 'u' sounds, 'a' is used as: a european.

Use of 'The'

- 1. Unique things:**
e.g. the sun, the moon, the sky, the earth, the sea, etc.
- 2. Particular persons or things:**
e.g. the girl in blue, the house at the end of the street, etc.
- 3. People or things mentioned for the second time:**
e.g. I saw an elephant. The elephant was in the zoo. The car hit a tree. The tree fell down.
- 4. Persons or things understood from the context:**
e.g. in the bathroom, on the table, in the garden, etc.
- 5. Singular nouns representing the whole class:**
e.g. The computer is a useful machine. The rose is a beautiful flower.
- 6. Names of rivers/ gulfs/ seas/ oceans/ groups of islands/ mountain ranges/ etc.**
e.g. the Nile, the Suez Canal, the Pacific Ocean, the Everest, the Persian Gulf, etc. the Himalayas, the Black Sea, the Andes, etc.
- 7. Names of nationalities, communities, events, political parties, etc.**
e.g. the Muslim League, the Muslims, the Chinese, the Big Bang, etc.
- 8. Names of newspapers, magazines, holy books, movies, plays, hotels, etc.**
e.g. the Dawn, the Times, the Quran, the Sheraton Hotel, etc.
- 9. Before ordinal numbers:**
e.g. the first, the last, etc.
- 10. Before the names of musical instruments:**
e.g. the guitar, the piano, etc.
- 11. Before superlative degrees:**
e.g. the largest, the biggest, etc.

• اگر u کی آواز جیسی ہو تو a استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

• اگر h کی آواز حذف کر لی جائے تو an استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

• اگر پہلا حرف e ہو لیکن بعد کے حرف u کی آواز سے آئے تو a استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

دی/اوا کا استعمال

یکتا چیزیں۔

خصوص اشخاص یا اشیاء۔

جب کسی شخص یا چیز کا ذکر دوسری مرتبہ ہو۔

جب صورت حال کے حساب سے پتہ ہو کہ کون سا شخص یا چیز مراد ہے۔

واحد ناموں کی پوری کلاس کو ظاہر کرے۔

دریاؤں، سمندروں، پہاڑوں، جزائر اور پہاڑی سلسلوں کے ناموں کے ساتھ، وغیرہ

قوموں، فرقوں، کمیونٹیز، خاص واقعات اور سیاسی جماعتوں کے ناموں کے ساتھ، وغیرہ

اخبارات، رسائل، مقدس کتابوں، فلموں، ڈراموں اور ہوٹلوں کے ناموں کے ساتھ، وغیرہ

ترتیب ظاہر کرنے والے اعداد کے ساتھ

موسیقی کے آلات کے ناموں سے پہلے

ایجنسیوں کی سپر لیٹوڈ گریز سے پہلے



12. **Before double comparatives:**
e.g. The more you read, the more you learn.
The higher you go, the cooler it is.
13. **Before names of trains, ships, etc.**
e.g. the Titanic, the Tezgam
14. **With some adjectives to make nouns (used in the plural):**
e.g. the rich, the injured, the young, etc.
15. **Before directions:**
e.g. in the east, to the west, etc.

ڈبل کیمپریٹو سے پہلے

ٹرینوں، جہازوں کے ناموں سے پہلے

اسم بنانے کے لئے مخصوص ایڈجیکٹیو کے ساتھ (جو ہمیشہ جمع میں استعمال ہوتے ہیں۔)

سمتوں سے پہلے

Exercise - 4

Fill the following blanks with a, an, the, where necessary. Remember that "a/ an" are used with countable singular nouns and "the" is used in a number of places, for example: when referring to a particular thing, before superlative degrees, when using two comparative degrees together, before the names of rivers, seas, mountains, etc., before titles, nationalities, names of institutions, communities, and so on.

- I know that _____ Indus is _____ longest river in Pakistan.
- In order to learn _____ language, we need two things; _____ good teacher and _____ will to work.
- _____ capital of Pakistan is Islamabad.
- Some people have _____ bicycles, some have _____ car, I have _____ both.
- In many countries, children go to _____ school at _____ age of five.
- They are studying _____ geography, and in particular _____ geography of _____ United Arab Emirates.
- Her friend loves eating _____ orange at breakfast time, _____ apple with her lunch, and _____ banana at dinner time.
- My mother says _____ more you exercise, _____ better your health.
- _____ Chinese are helping _____ Pakistanis to build _____ road from _____ Gwadar to _____ Chinese border.
- _____ intelligent person always thinks before speaking, but many _____ people just say whatever comes to their mind.

Answers

1.	the , the	2.	a , a , the	3.	The	4.	x , a , x
5.	x , the	6.	x , the , the	7.	an , an , a	8.	the , the
9.	The , the , a , x , the	10.	A , x				

Exercise - 5

Work with a partner and fill in the following blanks with the correct articles where necessary. There are five extra blanks, where an article is not needed.

In _____ poor zoo of Pakistan, _____ lion was very sad as he was given only one kg of meat _____ day. _____ lion thought he was _____ luckiest lion on earth when one-day _____ manager of _____ Dubai Zoo visited _____ zoo where _____ lion was and requested _____ zoo management to shift _____ lion to _____ Dubai Zoo. _____ lion was very happy and started _____ thinking of having _____ air-conditioned cage and _____ goat to eat every day. On its first day after arrival, _____ lion was offered big bag, sealed very nicely, for breakfast. _____ lion opened it quickly but was shocked to see that _____ bag contained _____ few bananas only. _____ lion thought that since he had recently come from Pakistan, may be _____ zoo management was worried about upsetting his _____ stomach so they had given him _____ bananas. _____ next day _____ same thing happened. On _____ third day again when _____ same food bag of bananas was given to him. _____ lion stopped _____ delivery boy and shouted at him, "Don't you know I am _____ lion, _____ king of _____ jungle? What's wrong with _____ management of this zoo? What _____ nonsense is this? Why are you delivering bananas to me?" _____ delivery boy politely said, "Sir, I know you are _____ king of _____ jungle. But... you have been brought here on _____ monkey's visa!!!" _____ moral of _____ story is, better to be _____ lion in your own country than _____ monkey elsewhere.

Ans:

In a poor zoo of Pakistan, a lion was very sad as he was given only one kg of meat a day. The lion thought he was the luckiest lion on earth when one-day the manager of the Dubai Zoo visited the zoo where the lion was and requested the zoo management to shift the lion to the Dubai Zoo. The lion was very happy and started x thinking of having an air-conditioned cage and a goat to eat every day. On its first day after arrival, the lion was offered a big bag, sealed very nicely, for breakfast. The lion opened it quickly but was shocked to see that the bag contained x few bananas only. The lion thought that since he had recently come from Pakistan, maybe the zoo management was worried about upsetting his x stomach so they had given him x bananas. The next day the same thing happened. On the third day again when the same food bag of bananas was given to him. The lion stopped the delivery boy and shouted at him, "Don't you know I am a lion, the king of the jungle? What's wrong with the management of this zoo? What x nonsense is this? Why are you delivering bananas to me?" The delivery boy politely said, "Sir, I know you are the king of the jungle. But... you have been brought here on a monkey's visa!!!" The moral of the story is, better to be a lion in your own country than a monkey elsewhere.

We use passive voice when:

- (i) We don't know the agent.
- (ii) We don't want to mention the agent.

Pattern: to be (form) + V(pp)

Rules for making passive voice:

1. The subject of the active voice becomes the object of the passive voice.
2. The object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive voice.
3. We use the form of 'be' according to the tense of the active voice.
4. We always use the past participle (pp) of the verb in the passive voice.
5. We can omit the agent (the subject of the active voice) in the passive voice if it is a pronoun or it is unimportant.

Passive Voice of Present Indefinite Tense

S V O
I write essays. (Active)
Essays are written by me. (Passive)

Note: There are 3 forms of 'be' (am/is/are) in the present.

We use them according to the subject of the passive voice.

ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
1. He takes a catch.	1. A catch is taken by him.
2. She does not like tea.	2. Tea is not liked by her.
3. Do you love books?	3. Are books loved by you?
4. Who knows it?	4. Who is it known by? or By whom is it known?

Passive Voice of Present Continuous Tense

Here we add 'being' before the V(pp). The other rules are the same. The form of 'be' is already present, there can be a change according to the subject.

I am writing letters. (active)

Letters are being written by me. (passive)

استعمال کرتے ہیں جب: **Passive voice**

- (i) ہم کام کرنے والے کو نہیں جانتے ہیں۔
- (ii) ہم کام کرنے والے کا ذکر نہیں کرنا چاہتے۔

Passive voice بنانے کے اصول:

1. active voice کا فاعل Passive voice کا مفعول بن جاتا ہے۔

2. active voice کا مفعول Passive voice کا فاعل بن جاتا ہے۔

3. 'be' کی فارم active voice کے ٹینس کے مطابق استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

4. ہم Passive voice میں ہمیشہ verb pst particle استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

5. ہم Passive voice میں کام کرنے والے (agent) کو فاعل کے فاعل کو چھوڑ سکتے ہیں اگر وہ پروناؤن ہو یا اگر وہ غیر اہم ہو۔

نوٹ: Present میں 'be' کی 3 فارمز ہیں۔ ہم ان کو passive voice کے فاعل کے مطابق استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

Note: The form of 'be' (am) was already present but we changed it into "are".
because of the subject

What is troubling you? (active)

He is not helping us. (active)

What are you being troubled by? (passive)

We are not being helped by him. (passive)

Passive Voice of Present Perfect Tense

Here we add 'been' before the V(pp). The other rules are the same.

I have seen this film. (active)

Have you got the visa? (active)

Who has done it? (active)

By whom has it been done? (old fashioned passive)

This film has been seen by me. (passive)

Has the visa been got by you? (passive)

Who has it been done by? (passive)

Passive Voice of Past Indefinite Tense

Note: There are two forms of 'be' (was/were) in the past. We use them according to the subject of passive voice.

He dug a hole. (active)

We did not do it. (active)

What caused the explosion? (active)

What was the explosion caused by? (passive)

A hole was dug by him. (passive)

It was not done by us. (passive)

Passive Voice of Past Continuous Tense

* The rule is the same as for the present continuous tense.

* Passive voice is made for only two continuous tenses:

Present continuous and past continuous.

I was watching a play on TV. (active)

A play was being watched on TV by me. (passive)

Were you doing homework? (active)

Was homework being done by you? (passive)

Who was teasing you? (active)

Who were you being teased by? (passive)

Passive Voice of Past Perfect Tense

* The rule is the same as for the present perfect.

She had visited Paris. (active)

Who had eaten my food? (active)

By whom had my food been eaten? (old fashioned)

Paris had been visited by her. (passive)

Who had my food been eaten by? (passive)

Passive Voice of Future Indefinite Tense

We use 'be' in the future tense.

The police will catch the thief. (active)

The thief will be caught by the police. (passive)

Will you not help her?(active)

Will she not be helped by you? (passive)

How will you do it?

(active)

How will it be done by you?

(passive)

Passive Voice of Future Perfect Tense

The rule is the same as for present perfect and past perfect 'been' is added before , V(pp) of the passive voice.

We will have completed the lesson by tomorrow. (active)

The lesson will have been completed by tomorrow by us. (passive)

Will he have learnt this lesson in a week? (active)

Will this lesson have been learnt in a week by him? (passive)

Passive with Modal Auxiliaries. Modal auxiliaries or simply modals are:

will, would, shall, should, can, could, may, might, must, have to, has to, had to, ought to, had better, etc.

موڈلز (موڈلز آگزیلیٹرز) جو اوپر درج ہیں، ان کے Passive بنانے کا طریقہ درج ذیل ہے۔

Modals + be + V(pp)

e.g: She can type the letters. (active)

The letters can be typed by her. (passive)

They should not do it. (active)

It should not be done by them. (passive)

Passive With Two Objects:

When there are two objects after a verb, the first object is usually an indirect object (a pronoun) and the second object is a direct object (a noun). The subject of the passive voice is often the indirect subject.

جب کسی ورب (فعل) کے بعد دو مفعول Objects ہوں۔ پہلا مفعول اکثر Indirect (کوئی پرونان) ہوتا ہے جبکہ دوسرا مفعول direct (کوئی ناؤن) ہوتا ہے۔ اکثر Indirect object (Object) کا نفعہ Passive voice یعنی پرونان کو بنایا جاتا ہے۔

He made her fool. (active)

She was made fool by him. (passive)

He gave me a present. (active)

I was given a present by him. (passive)

(passive)

Passive of Imperative Sentences:

Imperative sentences are of two types: 'Do it.' or 'Don't do it.'

They are made passive by the following pattern.

Let + object + be + V(pp)

e.g: Open the door. (active)

Let the door be opened. (passive)

Don't do it again. (active)

Let it not be done again. (passive)

Exercise - 2

Work in pairs and complete the following news report using the correct form the passive, using the verbs given in brackets. Write the correct news report in your notebook.

The northern part of the country was hit (hit) by a massive earthquake this morning. The entire

infrastructure _____ (break). The telephone lines _____ (damage) very badly. The roads _____ (destroy), and the mobile services _____ (disrupt). The people _____ (scare) as many aftershocks _____ (expect). Food, water and medical aid _____ (rush) to the area. An appeal _____ (make) by the government asking people not to panic. Work _____ (do) by the army to enable reaching of aid to the remote areas. Funds _____ (release) by the government to help people in this hour of grief.

Ans:

The northern part of the country was hit by a massive earthquake this morning. The entire infrastructure has been damaged very badly. The roads have been broken. The telephone lines have been destroyed, and the mobile services have been disrupted. The people are scared as many aftershocks are expected. Food, water, and medical aid are being rushed to the area. An appeal has been made by the government asking people not to panic. Work is being done by the army to enable reaching of aid to the remote areas. Funds have been released by the government to help people in this hour of grief.

Exercise - 3

Read the following story. Then, work with a partner and orally complete Samina's report to the police, using the passive form. Use the verbs from the story. Write the complete report in your notebook.

Samina hired a new servant. She asked her to submit a copy of her identity card. The servant gave her a copy. She gave her someone else's card. Unfortunately, Samina did not check all the details. After a few days the servant asked for a loan. Samina refused to give her a loan. The following week, the servant told her a sad story and again asked for some money. She told the servant not to come to work from the next day. When Samina went to her room after a couple of hours, she found it in a mess, with all her things on the floor. The servant had emptied her cupboard. She had taken away all the money and the jewellery.

This is what Samina said to the police when they asked her for details:

A new servant was hired by me. She _____ to submit a copy of her identity card. A copy _____ by her. I _____ someone else's card by her. Unfortunately, the details _____ by me. After a few days, I _____ by the servant for a loan. The loan _____ by me. The following week, I _____ told a sad story by the servant and again I _____ for some money. The servant _____ to come to work from the next day. When I went to my room, after a couple of hours, it _____ in a mess, with all the things on the floor. The cupboard _____ by her. All the money and the jewellery _____ by her.

Ans:

A new servant was hired by me. She was asked to submit a copy of her identity card. A copy was given by her. I was given someone else's card by her. Unfortunately, the details were not checked by me. After a few days, I was asked by the servant for a loan. The loan was refused by me. The following week, I was told a sad story by the servant and again I was asked for some money. The servant was told not to come to work from the next day. When I went to my room, after a couple of hours, it was found in a mess, with all the things on the floor. The cupboard was emptied by her. All the money and the jewellery had been taken by her.

Prefixes

We sometimes add a pair or group of alphabets at the **beginning** of a word to add something to the meaning of a word. These are called **prefixes**.

بہی بھار ہم کسی لفظ کے شروع میں حروف تہجی کا ایک جوڑا یا گروپ کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں تاکہ اس لفظ کو کوئی معنی دیا جاسکے۔ یہ سب لفظ ہوتے ہیں۔

Examples:

re + try = retry
re + group = regroup
mis + spell = misspell
mis + trust = mistrust

ہم ایک سابقہ کو کسی لفظ کی ضد بنانے کے لئے بھی استعمال کر سکتے ہیں۔

We can also use a prefix to form the opposite of a word.

Examples:

Dis + join = disjoin
dis + allow = disallow
un + tidy = untidy

Exercise - 4

A. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 're' with the appropriate given words. One has been done as an example.

tell	do	claim	apply	print	arrange
------	----	-------	-------	-------	---------

- The government is trying to reclaim land from the sea in Karachi.
- The company had to _____ this book three times.
- I advised my friend to _____ for a teaching position in our school.
- My father likes to _____ his childhood stories to his grandchildren.
- Saira and Khalida decided to _____ the furniture in their room.
- The teacher told the class to _____ the exercise.

Answers

1. reclaim	2. reprint	3. reapply	4. retell	5. rearrange	6. redo
------------	------------	------------	-----------	--------------	---------

B. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 'mis' with the appropriate given words.

treat	match	behave	understand	place
-------	-------	--------	------------	-------

- When children _____ they are often punished by their parents.
- My brothers always _____ their mobile phones.
- There is a _____ between their income and expenditure.

4. Many people _____ their leader's message.
5. It is not right to _____ servants.

Answers

1. misbehave 2. misplace 3. mismatch 4. misunderstand 5. mistreat

C. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 'inter' with the appropriate given words.

national faith personal city dependent

1. The _____ bus service is very good in some countries.
2. There is more _____ travel today than about fifty years ago.
3. For success in any work good _____ skills are needed.
4. The quality of goods and their price are _____.
5. _____ understanding is very important for peace in the world.

Answers

1. intercity 2. international 3. interpersonal 4. interdependent 5. interfaith

Unit
5.3

Simple and Compound Sentences

سادہ اور مرکب جملے

In English, we use three main types of sentences: simple, compound, and complex. Use of a variety of sentences makes the writing more interesting. Here we will discuss two types of sentences, simple and compound.

A **Simple Sentence** has one subject and one predicate.

My mother is a good cook.

In a **Compound Sentence** two complete sentences are joined together by a comma + conjunction: and, but, for, because, or nor, etc.

My mother is a good cook but she cannot stitch well.

انگریزی میں ہم تین اہم اقسام کے جملے استعمال کرتے ہیں: سادہ، مرکب اور پیچیدہ۔ مختلف اقسام کے جملوں کا استعمال تحریر کو زیادہ دلچسپ بناتا ہے۔ یہاں ہم دو اقسام کے جملوں کا بیان کریں گے، سادہ اور مرکب۔

ایک سادہ جملہ فاعل اور مسند پر مشتمل ہوتا ہے۔

میری ماں ایک اچھی باورچی ہیں۔

ایک مرکب جملہ میں دو مکمل جملے آپس میں کوما اور حرف عطف (اور، لیکن، مگر وغیرہ) سے جڑے ہوتے ہیں۔

میری ماں ایک اچھی باورچی ہیں لیکن وہ اچھی طرح سی نہیں سکتیں۔

Exercise - 1

Look at the sentences in the table below. Against each sentence put a (✓) mark in the column that identifies whether it is a simple or a compound sentence. The first one has been done for you as an example.

No.	Sentence	Simple	Compound
1.	This year has started on a positive note for the students.	✓	
2.	The classrooms smell of fresh paint, as they were painted during the holidays.		
3.	The students love the newly painted classrooms, and they like the newly polished desks.		
4.	Their motivation has increased and their enthusiasm is clearly visible.		
5.	Most of the students come to school regularly now.		
6.	They actively participate in various class activities.		
7.	The students enjoy being outdoors, because they all like sports activities.		
8.	They are happy with the new look of the school, but they are not happy with the sports facilities that they have.		
9.	They have requested their principal for better sports and game facilities.		
10.	The students are hopeful that they will have good facilities soon, because their principal has promised that new play grounds will be developed.		

Answers

1.	simple	2.	compound	3.	compound	4.	compound	5.	simple
6.	simple	7.	compound	8.	compound	9.	simple	10.	compound

Exercise - 2

In the exercise given below, join the two sentences to form a compound sentence, using any conjunction: and, but, for, because, as, so, or, nor, etc.

Write the compound sentences in your notebook. Compare your answers with your partner's answers and make any changes, if needed.

- (a) Najma and Rehana studied very hard. They both got A grades in their exams.
- (b) Her father is a pilot. He has flown many different types of planes.
- (c) Our car is very old. Its engine is in good condition.
- (d) The boys were playing cricket. It was the first day of their summer vacations.

- (e) My brother is a good artist. He cannot sing at all.
- (f) You may buy only a new dress now. You may buy a new dress and new shoes next month.
- (g) The baby cannot walk. The baby can crawl very fast.
- (h) I love gardening. I can grow my own fresh vegetables.
- (i) The flowers in this pot are very colourful. The flowers in your garden have a lovely fragrance.
- (j) This book is very informative. It is also very interesting.

Ans:

- (a) Najma and Rehana studied very hard, and they both got A grades in their exams.
- (b) Her father is a pilot, so he has flown many different types of planes.
- (c) Our car is very old, but its engine is in good condition.
- (d) The boys were playing cricket because it was the first day of their summer vacations.
- (e) My brother is a good artist, but he cannot sing at all.
- (f) You may buy only a new dress now, or you may buy a new dress and new shoes next month.
- (g) The baby cannot walk, but the baby can crawl very fast.
- (h) I love gardening, for I can grow my own fresh vegetables.
- (i) The flowers in this pot are very colourful, and the flowers in your garden have a lovely fragrance.
- (j) This book is very informative, and it is also very interesting.

Exercise - 4

Sabiha keeps repeating the same words in her letter to her friend Munira. Help her write a mix of simple and compound sentences to make her writing interesting.

Work in pairs and rewrite the letter in your notebooks. Decide which parts should be simple sentences and which should be compound sentences. You may remove some of the words that you think are not needed or replace some of them.

Sabiha's letter to Munira

I have some exciting news for you about my town. There is a 'Housing boom!' in our town. Builders are building new houses. They are planning to build at least 300 new houses. These houses are small. They can easily accommodate single families. The houses will be mainly two storeyed. The people of our town are really excited. The people of our town think that the town needs new people and new business. It will be nice to have new people and new friends.

More people will mean more progress for our town. More people will require more facilities. New roads will have to be built. More transport facilities will be required. We will have to build more schools. We will also need to build more colleges. The town will need more shopping areas. The town will also have to provide other facilities. New water and electricity facilities will have to be provided.

Some people are not so happy. They feel that more people will make the town crowded. There will be more electricity problems. There will be more pollution. There will be more garbage in the town. There will be more vehicles and factories. Travelling in the town will take a longer time. There will be more traffic.

The houses will be built soon. The houses are expected to be built within two years. Many people are interested. Many people want to buy a house in our town. The town is being connected to the port through a new highway. The town is near a river. Water can be supplied easily to the town from the river. Many people have already selected their property. There are still properties available. Those interested in buying a house should hurry. All the houses will be sold. People can contact the builders. The builder's office can give them more details.

Ans:

I have some exciting news for you. There is a 'Housing boom!' in our town as builders are building new houses. They are planning to build at least 300 new houses. These houses are small but they can easily accommodate single families. They will be mainly two-storeyed. The people of our town are excited as they think that the town needs new people and new business. It will be nice to have new people and new friends.

More people will mean more progress for our town because they will require more facilities. New roads will have to be built for more transport facilities will be required. We will have to build more schools and colleges. The town will need more shopping areas and other facilities. New water and electricity facilities will have to be provided.

Some people are not so happy because they feel that more people will make the town crowded. There will be more electricity problems. There will be more pollution as there will be more garbage, and more vehicles and factories. Travelling in the town will take a longer time as there will be more traffic.

The houses will be built soon as they are expected to be built within two years. Many people are interested and they want to buy a house in our town. The town is being connected to the port through a new highway. The town is near a river so water can be supplied easily to the town. Many people have already selected their property but there are still properties available. Those interested in buying a house should hurry because all the houses will be sold soon. People can contact the builders and They can give them more details.

Direct and Indirect Speech

There are two main ways of reporting people's words.

1. **Direct Speech:** It consists of someone's exact words. It is written inside inverted commas. It begins with a Capital letter.
2. **Indirect Speech:** It is the reported speech. The verb introducing the reported speech is called a reporting verb.

1. ڈائریکٹ اسپیچ: یہ کسی شخص کے اصل الفاظ پر مشتمل ہوتی ہے۔ یہ انگریز کو ماز کے اندر لکھی جاتی ہے۔ یہ بڑے حرف سے شروع ہوتی ہے۔
2. انڈائریکٹ اسپیچ: یہ بیان کردہ اسپیچ ہوتی ہے۔ وہ درج جو بیان کردہ اسپیچ کا آغاز کرتا ہے رپورٹنگ ورب کہلاتا ہے۔

Rules for changing Direct Speech to Indirect Speech:

Rule 1: Changing the Punctuation:

In the indirect (reported Speech), we omit the inverted commas in the direct speech. We also omit the comma after the reporting verb.

انڈائریکٹ اسپیچ میں، ہم ڈائریکٹ اسپیچ کے انگریز کو ماز کو چھوڑ دیتے ہیں۔ ہم رپورٹنگ ورب کے بعد والے کوئے کو بھی چھوڑ دیتے ہیں۔

Rule 2: Changing the time and place expressions

وقت اور جگہ کے الفاظ کی تبدیلی

Direct	Indirect	Direct	Indirect
here	there	yesterday	the day before/the previous day
these	those	last week	the week before/the previous week
today	that day	next day/ week/etc	the following day/week etc.

tomorrow	next day / the following day	
ago	before	the day
thus	so	after
this	that	in two days' time
now	then	tomorrow

Rule 3: Changing the person:

پرسن کی تبدیلی:

- (i) First person pronouns 'I' and 'we' and first person possessive adjectives 'my' and 'our' change according to the Subject of the reporting verb.
 فرسٹ پرسن پرناؤنز I اور We اور فرسٹ پرسن Possessive پر My اور Our کے مطابق تبدیل ہوتے ہیں۔
- (ii) Second person pronoun 'you' and second person possessive adjective 'your' change according to the object of the reporting verb.
 سیکنڈ پرسن پرناؤنز You اور سیکنڈ پرسن 'Your, possessive adjective' کے مطابق تبدیل ہوتے ہیں۔
- (iii) Third person pronouns 'he', 'she', 'it', 'they' and third person possessive adjectives 'his', 'her', 'its' and 'their' never change.
 تھرڈ پرسن پرناؤنز 'He', 'She', 'It' اور 'They' اور تھرڈ پرسن her, his, possessive adjectives کبھی بھی تبدیل نہیں ہوتے ہیں۔

Example: 1. Direct speech → He says, "I am happy."
 Indirect speech → He says that he is happy.

Rule 4:

If there is an object after 'say', it changes into 'tell'. If there is no object after 'say' it remains say and does not change to 'tell'.

- (iv) In Declarative sentences, we use 'that' to begin the reported speech.
 اگر say کے بعد کوئی object ہو تو یہ tell میں تبدیل ہو جاتا ہے۔ اگر say کے بعد کوئی object نہ ہو تو یہ say ہی رہتا ہے، اور tell میں تبدیل نہیں ہوتا ہے۔
- (v) Sometimes there is no object after reporting verb, and the speaker says 'you', assume that you are being talked to. Change 'you' to 'I/me' or 'we/us'.
 اظہار یہ جملوں میں ہم رپورٹڈ اسپیچ شروع کرنے کے لئے 'that' لگاتے ہیں۔
 They will say, "You are a fool." → They will say that I am a fool.

Rule 5: Changing the tenses:

1. If the reporting speech is in present, present perfect or future indefinite tense, there is no change of tenses in the reported speech.
 اگر رپورٹنگ اسپیچ Present Perfect, Present یا Future Indefinite میں ہو تو رپورٹڈ اسپیچ میں ٹینس کی تبدیلی نہیں ہوتی ہے۔

Rule 6: Changing the tenses

2. If the reporting verb is in past tense, the following changes take place.
 اگر رپورٹنگ ورب Past tense میں ہو تو درج ذیل تبدیلیاں ہوتی ہیں۔
- (a) Present indefinite tense → Past indefinite tense
 e.g: He said to me, "I change my subjects now."
 He told me that he changed his subjects then.
- (b) Present continuous tense → Past continuous tense
 e.g: She said to her, "You are not doing well in your studies."
 She told her that she was not doing well in her studies.

- (c) **Present perfect tense** _____ **Past perfect tense**
e.g: He said to my brother, "You have made a great mistake."
He told my brother that he had made a great mistake.
- (d) **Present perfect continuous tense** _____ **Past perfect continuous tense**
e.g: She said to her sister, "You have been wasting your time for three days."
She told her sister that she had been wasting her time for three days.
- (e) **Past indefinite tense** _____ **Past perfect tense**
e.g: She said to me, "You made a good decision."
She told me that I had made a good decision.
- (f) **Past continuous tense** _____ **Past perfect continuous tense**
e.g: He said to her, "You were wearing a red dress."
He told her that she had been wearing a red dress.
- (g) **Past perfect tense** _____ **no change**
e.g: She said, "I had not met him before."
She said that she had not met him before.
- (h) **Past perfect continuous tense** _____ **no change**
e.g: My friend said to me, "I had been living in Dubai for two years."
My friend told me that she had been living in Dubai for two years.
- (i) **will/shall** _____ **would/should**
e.g: They said to us, "You will get a reward."
They told us that we would get a reward.
- (j) **will be (ing)** _____ **would be (ing)**
Naheed said to me, "He will be playing in the ground."
Naheed told me that he would be playing in the ground.
- (k) **must** _____ **had to**
e.g: He said to me, "You must take care of your health."
He told me that I had to take care of my health.
- (l) **can** _____ **could**
e.g: He said to me, "I can speak English."
He told me that he could speak English.
- (m) **may** _____ **might**
e.g: He said, "It may rain today."
He said that it might rain that day.
- (n) **have to/has to** _____ **had to**
e.g: She said, "You have to hurry."
She said that I had to hurry.
- (o) **would/should/might/could/had to/had better/ought to/ used to** _____ **no change**
e.g: She said, "I used to live here."
She said that she used to live there.
- (p) **a universal truth** _____ **no change**
e.g: My teacher said, "Aids is caused by a virus."
My teacher said that aids is caused by a virus.

Rule 7: Changing Simple Interrogative Sentences:

- (i) We change the reporting verb into 'ask'

سادہ سوالیہ جملوں کی تبدیلی
ہم رپورٹنگ ورب کو 'ask' میں تبدیل کر دیتے ہیں۔ (i)

- (ii) Instead of that we use 'if' or 'whether', 'if' is more popular/common. (ii)
- (iii) The simple interrogative sentence is changed into an affirmative sentence. (iii)
- (iv) A simple interrogative sentence begins with an auxiliary (model) e.g. am/is/are/was/were/will/shall/can/could/may/might/must/should/would, etc. (iv)
- e.g: He said, "Will you help me?"
He asked if I would help him.

Rule 8: Changing Real Interrogative Sentences:

رول 8: حقیقی سوالیہ جملے

- (i) Like simple interrogative sentences, we change the reporting verb to 'ask'. (i)
- (ii) We do not use 'that' or 'if', but we use the given interrogative word. (ii)
- (iii) The real interrogative sentence is changed to an affirmative sentence. (iii)
- (iv) Real interrogative sentences begin with interrogative words (w).
e.g: what/when/who/which.whose/why/where/how/whom, etc.
e.g: He said to me, "Who did it?"
He asked me who had done it. (iv)

Rule 9: Changing Imperative Sentences:

- (i) The reporting verb is changed to tell/order/warn/advise/remind/beg/ask, etc. However, we can use 'tell' for commands and 'ask' for requests in all situations. (i)
- e.g: He said to me, "Don't do it again."
He told me not to do it again.
She said to her, "Please, help me."
She asked her to help her.
- (ii) Positive imperative sentences start with "to" and negative imperative sentences start with "not to". (ii)
- (iii) If the reporting verb is not followed by an object, supply an object yourself. (iii)
- (iv) An imperative sentence makes a request or gives a command. (iv)

Rule 10: Changing Exclamatory Sentences:

رول 10: Exclamatory جملوں کی تبدیلی:

- (i) They are changed into affirmative sentences. (i)
- (ii) An exclamatory sentence expresses a thought with strong emotions. (ii)
- (iii) The reporting verb is 'tell' or, 'expressed with sorrow/joy. Tell is more common. (iii)

(iv) We use 'that' in exclamatory sentences.

He said, "What a hot day!"

He said that it was a hot day.

She said, "How heavy it is!"

She said that it was heavy.

exclamatory جملوں میں 'that' استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ (iv)

Direct speech

Indirect speech

Direct speech

Indirect speech

REVISION: Change the narration of statements, exclamations, wishes, promises and hopes.

You have learnt the rules about changing statements, requests and orders in earlier classes. Here are some basic rules once again.

Tense Rules for changing from direct to indirect

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
present simple / present continuous / present perfect / present perfect continuous	past simple / past continuous past perfect / past perfect continuous
past simple / past continuous past perfect	past perfect / past perfect continuous / past perfect
past perfect continuous	past perfect continuous

Exclamations, Wishes, Promises, Hopes

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
said + exclamation mark	exclaimed
said + wish	wished
said + hope	hoped
said + promise	promised

Exercise - 5

The following exercise has some statements, exclamations, wishes, hopes and promises in direct speech. Change them from direct to indirect speech and write them in your notebooks. Once you have completed, discuss your answers with your partner.

- "I have many friends and I have to invite all of them tomorrow," said Abid.
- Reshma said, "I hope I will get admission in the medical college this year."
- "I wish I had ten hands and a hundred fingers to do all this work," said Feroza.
- The student said, "I promise I will do my homework regularly from today."
- "They want to buy a new car," said the lawyer, "but they don't have any money."
- "We hope we will be able to get permission from our parents," said the children.
- "I never thought that a son of mine would get such bad marks!" said his father.
- The blind boy said, "I wish I could see this interesting match on the television."
- "Next week, we promise, we will clean the whole house," the children said to their parents.
- "Our team has won the champion's trophy here for the first time!" said the coach.

Ans:

1. Abid said that he had many friends and he had to invite all of them the next day.
2. Reshma hoped that she would get admission in the medical college that year.
3. Feroza wished that she had ten hands and a hundred fingers to do all that work.
4. The student promised that he would do his homework regularly from that day.
5. The lawyer said that they wanted to buy a new car but they did not have any money.
6. The children hoped that they would be able to get permission from their parents.
7. His father exclaimed with sorrow that he had never thought that a son of his would get such bad marks.
8. The blind boy wished that he could see that interesting match on the television.
9. The children promised their parents that they would clean the whole house the following week.
10. The coach exclaimed with joy that his team had won the champion's trophy there for the first time.

Exercise - 6

Work in pairs, read the following story and put all the direct speech sentences into indirect speech. The story has statements, exclamations, wishes, promises and hopes. Make sure you follow the rules related to changing these different types of sentences.

Avoiding Criticism

Nasrudin and his son were travelling with their donkey. Nasrudin preferred to walk while his son rode the donkey. Soon they passed a group of bystanders, and one of them said, "This boy is so selfish. He is riding on a donkey while his poor old father is forced to walk alongside."

"This is so disrespectful," said another man. "What a horrible and spoiled child!"

Nasrudin and his son felt embarrassed, so they changed places — this time Nasrudin rode the donkey while his son walked. "I hope I am doing the right thing now," he said to himself.

Soon they passed another group of people. Seeing them, one of them exclaimed, "The poor young boy has to walk while his selfish father is riding the donkey! He is a heartless parent!"

Nasrudin was upset to hear this. "I wish people would mind their own business," he said. Since he wanted to avoid any further comments, he decided that both he and his son would ride the donkey at the same time. As they both rode, they passed another group of people. "That man and his son are so cruel," one bystander commented. "They are forcing that poor donkey to bear the weight of two people. They should be put in jail for this act."

Nasrudin heard this and told his son, "The only way we can avoid people comments is that we both walk."

"I suppose you are right," the son replied.

"I promise, nobody will be able to say anything to us as we are doing the right thing this time," said Nasrudin happily.

So they got off the donkey and continued on foot. But as they passed another group of people, they heard them laughing.

"These people are so stupid that both of them are walking in this heat and neither of them is riding the donkey," they said. "What foolish people they are!"

Ans:

Nasrudin and his son were travelling with their donkey. Nasrudin preferred to walk while his son

rode the donkey. Soon they passed a group of bystanders, and one of them said that the boy was so selfish. He was riding on a donkey while his poor old father was forced to walk alongside. Another man exclaimed that was so disrespectful and he was a horrible and spoiled child. Nasrudin and his son felt embarrassed, so they changed places — this time a Nasrudin rode the donkey while his son walked. He said hoped that he was doing the right thing then. Soon they passed another group of people. Seeing them, one of them exclaimed that the poor young boy had to walk while his selfish father was riding the donkey. He was a heartless parent. Nasrudin was upset to hear this. He wished that people would mind their own business. Since he wanted to avoid any further comments, he decided that both he and his son would ride at the same time. As they both rode, they passed another group of people. One bystander commented that man and his son were cruel. They were forcing that poor donkey to bear the weight of two people. They should be in jail for that act. Nasrudin heard this and told his son that the only way they could avoid people comment that they both walked.

The son hoped that he was right.

Nasrudin promised that nobody would be able to say anything to them as they were doing the right thing at that time.

So they got off the donkey and continued on foot. But as they passed another group of people, they heard them laughing.

They said that those people were so stupid that both of them were walking in that heat and neither of them was riding the donkey. They exclaimed that they were foolish people.

Unit 6.3

Synonyms

متراوف

A synonym is a word or phrase that means almost or nearly the same as another word or phrase in the same language, for example shut is a synonym of close. Though, synonyms can sometimes replace each other but many times they cannot, depending on the context of their use.

متراوف ایک ایسا لفظ یا فعل ہے جس کے معنی اسی زبان کے کسی دوسرے لفظ کے ہم معنی یا تقریباً ملتے جلتے ہوں، مثال کے طور پر 'شٹ' متراوف ہے 'کلوز' کا۔ حالانکہ متراوف الفاظ کبھی کبھی ایک دوسرے کی جگہ لکھے جاسکتے ہیں لیکن کئی بار ایسا نہیں ہو سکتا کیونکہ اُن کا استعمال سیاق و سباق کے پس منظر میں کیا جاتا ہے۔

Exercise - 1

Do the following exercise in your notebook. Rewrite the sentences by replacing the synonym given in bold with an appropriate synonym from the four given options. Share your answers with your partner, after both of you have completed your work.

- He is a brilliant carpenter. He has made a doll house with **miniature** furniture for every room.
(a) pretty (b) tiny (c) fresh (d) tall
- Mrs Amjad gave the class a **difficult** assignment for chemistry.
(a) free (b) easy (c) caring (d) hard

3. My grandmother is **old**. She is about 90 years old.
(a) elderly (b) crazy (c) charming (d) friendly
4. Our principal is very smart and **slim**.
(a) tall (b) thin (c) charming (d) strict
5. A **stable** government ensures that a nation will progress.
(a) friendly (b) steady (c) strong (d) outgoing
6. Farzana is always ready to **help** the people in her neighborhood.
(a) teach (b) guide (c) assist (d) train
7. I feel **drowsy** after having rice for lunch.
(a) lazy (b) active (c) happy (d) sleepy
8. The house next door has been **vacant** for two years.
(a) dirty (b) empty (c) robbed (d) painted

Answers

1.	b	2.	d	3.	a	4.	b	5.	b	6.	c	7.	d	8.	b
----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---	----	---

Exercise - 2

Work with a partner and select the most appropriate synonym to complete the following sentences. Three synonyms are given in brackets at the end of each a sentence but only one is appropriate in the given context. Remember to use the full-stop at the end of the sentence.

- (a) This cup of tea tastes like tea flavoured water. It is very _____.
(weak, frail, fragile)
- (b) If one wants to succeed in the exams, it is _____ to study regularly.
(primary, important, significant)
- (c) During the monsoon rains the water in the rivers becomes very _____.
(disordered, violent, rough)
- (d) The ruins of Moen-jo-Daro are _____.
(old, past, aged)
- (e) Pakistan is _____ in minerals.
(rich, wealthy, affluent)
- (f) My mother has to go to the NADRA office because her ID card is no longer _____.
(valid, authorized, legitimate)
- (g) The bangles her grandmother gave her are made of _____ gold.
(true, correct, real)
- (h) The teacher asked the students to remain _____ as the class next door was doing a test.
(still, quiet, noiseless)
- (i) This perfume has a lovely _____.
(odour, smell, fragrance)
- (j) The entire staff in the office was full _____ of for the new manager.
(appreciation, admiration, praise)

Answers

1.	weak	2.	important	3.	rough	4.	old	5.	rich
6.	valid	7.	real	8.	quiet	9.	fragrance	10.	appreciation

Exercise - 3

Four words in the following set of five words are synonyms; one word is different. Circle the word that you think is different. After completing the exercise, share your work with your partner.

(a)	friendly	agreeable	pleasant	decent	amicable
(b)	option	nice	choice	possibility	alternative
(c)	reasonable	rude	impolite	cheeky	disrespectful
(d)	severe	serious	harsh	stable	stern
(e)	huge	large	enormous	mammoth	many
(f)	rubbish	garbage	garden	trash	refuse
(g)	polite	intelligent	smart	clever	bright
(h)	position	vacancy	opening	clean	post
(i)	mistake	correct	error	inaccuracy	slip
(j)	disease	ailment	wound	illness	disorder

Ans:

(a)	friendly	agreeable	pleasant	decent	amicable
(b)	option	nice	choice	possibility	alternative
(c)	reasonable	rude	impolite	cheeky	disrespectful
(d)	severe	serious	harsh	stable	stern
(e)	huge	large	enormous	mammoth	many
(f)	rubbish	garbage	garden	trash	refuse
(g)	polite	intelligent	smart	clever	bright
(h)	position	vacancy	opening	clean	post
(i)	mistake	correct	error	inaccuracy	slip
(j)	disease	ailment	wound	illness	disorder

Exercise - 4

Work with a partner, select any six groups in Exercise 3. Next, pick try two synonyms from each of the selected group and use both these synonyms in your own sentences. Do this work on a piece of paper.

After you have completed, exchange your paper with another pair. Read each other's work and give useful feedback.

According to the feedback received, make changes, where necessary, and write the sentences in your notebooks.

Ans:	Word	Sentence
(a)	agreeable	She was a cheerful and agreeable companion.
	amicable	The two parties have reached an amicable settlement.

(b) option	Going to Lahore was not an option for me.
alternative	We adopted an alternative method.
(c) disrespectful	I think young people are sometimes disrespectful in their speech.
rude	He is so rude that nobody can bear him.
(d) stern	The teacher's stern look reduced him to silence.
harsh	The minister received some harsh criticism.
(e) mammoth	Reforming the prison system would be a mammoth task.
enormous	He earned enormous sums of money.
(f) trash	The trash really stinks - why don't you take it out?
garbage	Dig a pit and bury the garbage.

Revision: Use of since and for

Since and for are two words that are used for similar, but not exactly the same purposes.

Since gives the starting point of actions, events or states, continuing until the present. It refers to when things began. It can only be used with the perfect tenses.

Since + a point in time (in the past) until now.

- I've been waiting since 7 o'clock.
- I have known him since January.
- I have been here since 9 o'clock and I am getting tired.
- It has been three years since the last earthquake.

We use For when we measure the duration — when we say how long something lasts. We can use all verb tenses with For.

For + a period of time

- I have known her for a long time.
- I lived here for ten years and then moved to another place.
- They are exercising for three hours today.

For vs. Since

Knowing when to use FOR and when to use SINCE is important.

FOR is used to mention a specific period (or duration) of time.

I have been a doctor for fifteen years.
(duration = 15 years)

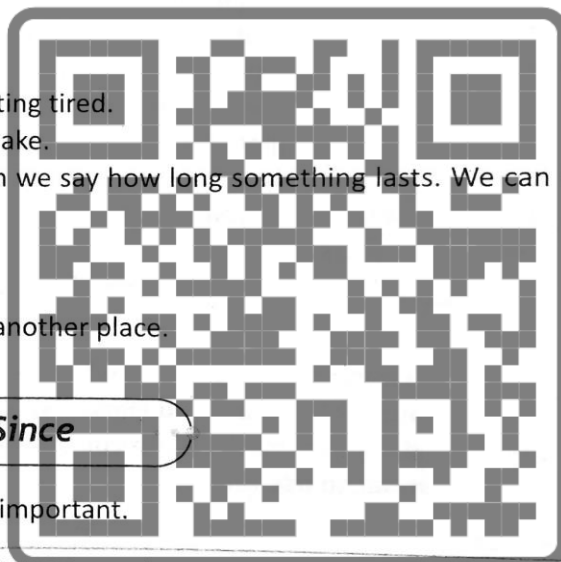
SINCE is used to mention the starting point of a period of time (continues to now).

I have been a doctor since 1992.
(starting point = 1992)

Exercise - 5

Work with a partner and discuss which blanks in the following text will have SINCE and which ones will have FOR. After discussing, write the complete paragraph in your notebooks.

My father is a remarkable man. He has been working _____ he was 15 years old. He has



been working _____ he was at school. He used to work _____ four hours every day and on weekends. He has now worked in the same factory _____ 25 years. _____ he started working at the factory, he has been promoted many times. He was initially hired _____ a period of three months but he has been working there ever _____. He was hired as a peon with the responsibility of making tea and delivering parcels and documents as required. He started working _____ Rs 25/- a day.

If he fell ill or if he was absent he did not get paid _____ that day. But my father was a good and committed worker. He only took off _____ serious emergencies, like illness and death. In fact, there were periods when he didn't take a single holiday _____ many months at a time. He soon earned the respect of his co-workers and boss, and _____ then, he has risen higher and higher. He has now worked for the same factory _____ 25 years. He was offered retirement when he completed 25 years but he said that he would like to work _____ a few more years. He hopes he will save enough to start a small manufacturing unit of his own, in a few years' time.

Ans:

My father is a remarkable man. He has been working since he was 15 years old. He has been working since he was at school. He used to work for four hours every day and on weekends. He has now worked in the same factory for 25 years. Since he started working at the factory, he has been promoted many times. He was initially hired for a period of three months but he has been working there ever since. He was hired as a peon with the responsibility of making tea and delivering parcels and documents as required. He started working for Rs 25/- a day.

If he fell ill or if he was absent, he did not get paid for that day. But my father was a good and committed worker. He only took off for serious emergencies, like illness and death. In fact, there were periods when he didn't take a single holiday for many months at a time. He soon earned the respect of his co-workers and boss, and since then, he has risen higher and higher. He has now worked for the same factory for 25 years. He was offered retirement when he completed 25 years but he said that he would like to work for a few more years. He hopes he will save enough to start a small manufacturing unit of his own, in a few years' time.

Exercise - 6

Write a paragraph explaining what your three favourite hobbies or free time activities are / were. Make sure you explain why you started, how long you have done them for, when did you start them, do you still do them, and why you like them so much. Remember to use for and since in your sentences.

Here is an example:

One thing I like doing during my free time is reading. I have been reading story books since I was ten years old. So, I have been reading story books for nearly six years now. Although I have been reading since I was ten years old, I think I will do it for many more years; in fact, I think I will do it for the rest of my life.

Another thing

Yet another thing that I did was.....

Ans:

Another thing I love doing in my free time is writing stories. I have been writing stories since I was 14 years old. I have been writing stories for more than two years now. I have read so many stories that I have many plots of stories in my mind. I have planned to write all those ideas in the form of stories. I don't know how long it will take to write all those ideas in written form but since I have

decided, I am going to do it.

Yet another thing that I did was collecting stamps. I was doing it **since** I was nine years old because I liked the colourful stamps at that time. But I stopped collecting stamps when I was eleven years old. I did that hobby **for** nearly two years. I stopped doing that because I need money to buy

Rules of Translation ترجمہ کرنے کے قاعدے

(i) Grammar کو پیش نظر رکھیں۔ Tense کا خاص خیال رکھیں۔

(ii) Present Indefinite میں Principal verb کا Present form استعمال کرتے ہیں مددگار فعل استعمال نہیں ہوتا۔

1. I write	میں لکھتا ہوں۔	2. You play	وہ کھاتا ہے۔
3. He eats	تم کھیتے ہو۔	4. She cooks	وہ پکاتی ہے۔

(iii) Present continuous میں is, am, are کا استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ main verb میں ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں۔

1. I am writing	میں لکھ رہا ہوں۔	2. He is eating	وہ کھا رہا ہے۔
3. You are playing	تم کھیل رہے ہو۔	4. She is cooking	وہ پکا رہی ہے۔

(iv) Present Perfect میں has یا have کا استعمال ہوتا ہے Principal verb کا third form استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I have written	میں لکھ چکا ہوں / میں نے لکھا ہے۔	2. He has eaten	وہ کھا چکا ہے / اس نے کھایا ہے۔
3. You have played	تم کھیل چکے ہو / تم نے کھیلا ہے۔	4. She has cooked	وہ پکا چکی ہے / اس نے پکایا ہے۔

(v) Present Perfect Continuous میں has been یا have been کا استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ main verb میں ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں۔ since یا for استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I have been writing for two hours.	میں دو گھنٹے سے لکھ رہا ہوں۔
2. You have been playing since Sunday.	تم اتوار سے کھیل رہے ہو۔
3. He has been working for six years.	وہ چھ سال سے کام کر رہا ہے۔
4. She has been reading since March.	وہ مارچ سے پڑھ رہی ہے۔

(i) Past Indefinite میں main verb کا Past form استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I wrote	میں نے لکھا	2. He drank	اس نے پیا
3. You ate	تم نے کھایا	4. She played	وہ کھیلی

(ii) Past Continuous میں was یا were کا استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ main verb میں ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں۔

1. I was reading	میں پڑھ رہا تھا۔	2. He was watching	وہ دیکھ رہا تھا۔
3. You were writing	تم لکھ رہے تھے۔	4. She was helping	وہ مدد کر رہی تھی۔

(iii) Past Perfect میں had کا استعمال ہوتا ہے Principal verb کا third form استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I had played	میں کھیل چکا تھا۔	2. He had seen	وہ دیکھ چکا تھا۔
3. You had eaten	تم کھا چکے تھے۔	4. She had cooked	وہ پکا چکی تھی۔

(iv) Past Perfect Continuous میں had been کا استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ main verb میں ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں۔ since یا for کا استعمال ہوتا ہے۔

1. I had been writing since 2018.	میں 2018 سے لکھ رہا تھا۔
-----------------------------------	--------------------------

2. You had been playing for six years.	تم چھ سال سے کھیل رہے تھے۔
3. He had been reading for two months.	وہ دو مہینے سے پڑھ رہا تھا۔
4. She had been cooking since 2019.	وہ 2019 سے پکا رہی تھی۔

(i) Future Indefinite میں shall یا will لگاتے ہیں۔

1. I shall write	میں لکھوں گا۔	2. He will go	وہ جائے گا۔
3. You will play	تم کھیلو گے۔	4. She will read	وہ پڑھے گی۔

(ii) Future Continuous میں shall be یا will be لگاتے ہیں main verb میں ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں۔

1. I shall be writing	میں لکھ رہا ہوں گا۔	2. He will be reading	وہ پڑھ رہا ہوگا۔
3. You will be playing	تم کھیل رہے ہو گے۔	4. She will be sewing	وہ سی رہی ہوگی۔

(iii) Future Perfect میں shall have یا will have لگاتے ہیں main verb کی third form استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I shall have gone	میں جا چکا ہوں گا۔	2. He will have worked	وہ کام کر چکا ہوگا۔
3. You will have come	تم آ چکے ہو گے۔	4. She will have cooked	وہ کچا چکی ہوگی۔

(iv) Future Perfect Continuous میں shall have been یا will have been لگاتے ہیں Principal verb میں ing لگاتے ہیں۔ since for استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. I shall have been writing for two hours.	میں دو گھنٹے سے لکھ رہا ہوں گا۔
2. You will have been reading since Monday.	تم پیر سے پڑھ رہے ہو گے۔
3. He will have been playing for three days.	وہ تین دنوں سے کھیل رہا ہوگا۔
4. She will have been cooking since Friday.	وہ جمعہ سے پکا رہی ہوگی۔

May اور Might کا استعمال

May اور Might بھی طاقت اور صلاحیت کے اظہار کے لئے استعمال ہوتے ہیں۔

1. I may go there.	میں وہاں جا سکتا ہوں۔
2. He might come here.	وہ یہاں آ سکتا ہے۔
3. The lion might attack.	شیر حملہ کر سکتا تھا۔

May حال کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں جبکہ might عام طور پر ماضی کے لئے استعمال ہوتا ہے۔ May اجازت لینے کے لئے بھی استعمال ہوتا ہے۔

1. May I come in?	کیا میں اندر آ سکتا ہوں؟
2. May I go now.	کیا میں اب جا سکتا ہوں؟

May دعا کے لئے بھی استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

1. May you live long.	خدا تمہاری عمر دراز کرے۔
2. May they succeed.	خدا انہیں کامیاب کرے۔

was, were اور is, am, are کا استعمال

(auxiliary verbs) ہیں یہ Principal verb کے ساتھ استعمال ہوتے ہیں مگر main verb نہ ہونے کی صورت میں یہی اصل was, were اور is, am, are مددگار فعل

verb ہوتے ہیں۔ is, am, are زمانہ حال کے لئے استعمال کئے جاتے ہیں جبکہ was, were زمانہ ماضی کے لئے۔

1. He is a good man.	وہ ایک اچھا آدمی ہے۔
2. He was a good man.	وہ ایک اچھا آدمی تھا۔
3. Gardening is a good hobby.	باغبانی ایک اچھا مشغلہ ہے۔
4. Karachi is one of the biggest cities of Asia.	کراچی ایشیاء کے سب سے بڑے شہروں میں سے ایک ہے۔

Translation from Urdu into English

AM, IS اور ARE کا استعمال

1. I am a student.	میں ایک طالب علم ہوں۔
2. He is a poor man.	وہ ایک غریب آدمی ہے۔
3. We are good swimmers.	ہم اچھے تیراک ہیں۔
4. They are good players.	وہ اچھے کھلاڑی ہیں۔
5. He is not absent.	وہ غیر حاضری نہیں ہے۔
6. You are not at fault.	تم غلطی پر نہیں ہو۔
7. Is he angry with you?	کیا وہ تم سے ناراض ہے؟
8. Is Anwar your best friend?	کیا انور تمہارا بہترین دوست ہے؟
9. Are their houses beautiful.	کیا ان کے مکانات خوب صورت ہیں؟

- (i) I am اور Third Person Singular کے بعد is استعمال ہوتا ہے جبکہ باقی تمام فاعلوں کے بعد are استعمال ہوتا ہے۔ ہر جملہ کے بعد Full Stop (.) لگاتا۔
- (ii) اگر جملہ انکاریہ (Negative Sentence) ہو تو are, am, is کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔
- (iii) اگر جملہ سوالیہ (Interrogative Sentence) ہو تو Are, Am, Is جملے کے شروع میں لگاتے ہیں اور آخر میں سوالیہ نشان "؟" استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
- (iv) اگر ایک ہی جملہ میں تینوں Pronouns کے Persons استعمال کیے گئے ہوں تو سب سے پہلے Second Person اس کے بعد Thrid Person اور سب سے آخر میں First Person کا Pronoun استعمال کیا جاتا ہے جیسے:
- آپ، وہ اور میں گھر سے دوست ہیں۔
- (v) جب سوالیہ جملوں میں کیوں۔ کہاں۔ کس کا۔ کس کو۔ جس کو۔ یا۔ کون سا۔ کے الفاظ آجائیں تو انہیں am, is اور are سے پہلے لگایا جاتا ہے جیسے:

You, he and I are fast friends.

1. Where is he?	وہ کہاں ہے؟
2. Why is your father angry with you?	تمہارے والد صاحب تم سے ناراض کیوں ہیں؟
3. Who are you?	تم کون ہو؟
4. Whose pen is this?	یہ قلم کس کا ہے؟
5. What is this?	یہ کیا ہے؟

WERE اور WAS کا استعمال

1. Your father was a shopkeeper.	تمہارے والد کا انداز تھے۔
2. His parents were poor.	اس کے ماں باپ غریب تھے۔

3.	Their brothers were farmers.	ان کے بھائی کسان تھے۔
4.	It was closed yesterday.	کل ہوا بند تھی۔
5.	My father was not a farmer.	میرے والد کسان نہیں تھے۔
6.	Aslam and Akram were not fast friends.	اسلم اور اکرم گہرے دوست نہیں تھے۔
7.	Were the travellers thirsty?	کیا مسافر پیاسے تھے؟
8.	Why was he absent yesterday?	دوکل غیر حاضر کیوں تھا؟

یاد رکھیے!

- (i) اگر Subject (فاعل) Thrid Person Singular یا First Person Singular ہو تو اس کے بعد was اور باقی تمام Subject کے بعد were آتے ہیں۔
- (ii) انکاریہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں was یا were کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں جبکہ سوالیہ جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں Was یا Were کو Subject سے پہلے لاتے ہیں۔
- (iii) اگر کیا۔ کیسے۔ کہاں۔ کیوں۔ کتنے۔ وغیرہ کے الفاظ سے سوالیہ جملہ بنایا جائے ہو تو انہیں was یا were سے پہلے لگاتے ہیں۔

JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!

LET اور THERE کا استعمال

1.	There are forty boys in our class.	ہماری جماعت میں چالیس لڑکے ہیں۔
2.	There are four windows in his room.	اس کے کمرے میں چار کھڑکیاں ہیں۔
3.	There is a post office in this village.	اس گاؤں میں ایک ڈاک خانہ ہے۔
4.	There is no water in this well.	اس کنوئیں میں پانی نہیں ہے۔
5.	There is no boy in this building.	اس عمارت میں کوئی لڑکا نہیں ہے۔
6.	Are there trees in the house?	کیا گھر میں درخت ہیں؟
7.	Is there nobody in the school?	کیا اسکول میں کوئی بھی نہیں ہے؟
8.	Let us play hockey.	آؤ ہاکی کھیلیں۔
9.	Let us go for a walk.	آؤ سیر کو چلیں۔
10.	Do not let him pluck flowers.	اسے پھول نہ توڑنے دو۔
11.	Do not let the girls make a noise.	لڑکیوں کو شور نہ کرنے دو۔

یاد رکھیے!

- (i) کسی چیز کی موجودگی یا عدم موجودگی ظاہر کرنے کے لئے جملہ There سے شروع کیا جاتا ہے۔ یاد رکھیے کہ اس There کے معنی وہاں کے نہیں ہوتے۔
سوالیہ جملے میں helping verb کے بعد there آتا ہے اس کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔
- Is there not any apple in the bag?
- (ii) اجازت (Permission) اور تجویز (Suggetion) کے لئے let لگتا ہے۔ انکاریہ جملے Do not سے شروع ہوتے ہیں اور let اس کے بعد استعمال ہوتا ہے۔ جیسے
Do not let him go.

Use of Some and Any

- We use 'some' and 'any' with countable and uncountable nouns.
- We use 'some' if we mean 'yes' or in

some اور any کا استعمال countable اور uncountable noun کے ساتھ کیا جاتا ہے۔
اثباتیہ جملہ کے لئے some استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

affirmative sense, as:

This man has some eggs to sell.

There is some food in the refrigerator.

He uses some pencils.

He has some butter.

There are some boys in the classroom.

• We use 'any' if we express 'no' or ask a question, as:

He hasn't any money to buy it.

There isn't any butter in the tin.

Has he got any chance?

Have you any book to read?

انکاریہ یا سوالیہ جملہ کے لئے any استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔

Use of "Used to"

• If something is done constantly in the past 'used to' is used.

1. I used to go to the fields when I was in the village.
2. We used to play football when we were young.
3. They used to come to see me when I was in Lahore.
4. When I was a boy, I used to go to school.
5. When they were our neighbours, they used to spend much of their time with us.

اگر ماضی میں کوئی کام تو اتر سے ہوتا رہا ہو تو used کا استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔

جب میں گاؤں میں تھا تو کھیتوں میں جاتا تھا/ جایا کرتا تھا۔

جب ہم جوان تھے تو فٹ بال کھیلتے تھے/ کھیلا کرتے تھے۔

جب میں لاہور میں تھا تو وہ مجھ سے ملنے آتے تھے/ آیا کرتے تھے۔

جب میں بچہ تھا تو اسکول جایا کرتا تھا۔

جب وہ ہمارے پڑوسی تھے تو اپنا زیادہ تر وقت ہمارے ساتھ گزارا کرتے تھے۔

Use of should, can, could, may, might

• Should is an auxiliary/modal verb.
To express obligation 'should' is used.

1. I should do it.
2. We should obey the country's laws.
3. You should respect your teachers.
4. We should serve our parents.
5. He should be honest.

• Can is an auxiliary/modal verb.
It expresses ability or power of doing a thing.

1. I can run.
2. He can swim.

should ایک helping/modal verb ہے۔ اخلاقی اور قانونی ذمہ داری (duty) کے اظہار کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

مجھے یہ کرنا چاہئے۔

ہمیں ملک کے قوانین کی تابعداری کرنی چاہئے۔

تمہیں اپنے اساتذہ کی عزت کرنی چاہئے۔

ہمیں والدین کی خدمت کرنی چاہئے۔

اسے ایماندار ہونا چاہئے۔

Can ایک auxiliary verb ہے۔ یہ کسی کام کے کرنے کی صلاحیت یا طاقت کو ظاہر کرنے کے لئے استعمال کیا جاتا ہے۔

میں دوڑ سکتا ہوں۔

وہ تیر سکتا ہے۔

3. A bird can fly.

4. She can read.

• Could is the past form of can. So to express ability or power of doing a thing in the past, 'could' is used.

1. I could run.

2. He could swim.

3. She could sing.

4. The bird could fly.

• May is used to seek permission or to express ability or power of doing a thing.

1. You have recovered from illness, you may walk.

2. May I go now?

3. He is able that he may read.

• 'Might' is past form of May. To express ability or power of doing a thing it is used.

1. He might go.

2. We might write.

3. They might come.

Use of "before" and "after"

The use of 'before' and 'after'.

(i) Use of 'before':

The verb of the preceding sentence must be past perfect and the verb of the sentence used later must be past Indefinite. as,

The train had left the station before I reached.

(ii) Use of 'after':

The verb of the preceding sentence must be past indefinite and the verb of the sentence used later must be past perfect.

Example:

The train left the station after I had reached.

Conditional Sentences

Use of 'when' / 'if':

The first sentence is always Present Indefinite and

پرنده اڑ سکتا ہے۔

وہ پڑھ سکتی ہے۔

can کا past form 'could' ہے۔ ماضی میں کسی کام کرنے کی صلاحیت یا طاقت کو ظاہر کرنے کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

میں دوڑ سکا۔

وہ تیر سکا۔

وہ گا سکی۔

پرنده اڑ سکا۔

May کا استعمال اجازت کے لئے ہوتا ہے لیکن اسے کسی کام کرنے کی صلاحیت اور طاقت کے اظہار کے لئے بھی استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

اب آپ صحت مند ہو گئے ہیں، چل سکتے ہیں۔

کیا میں اب جا سکتا ہوں؟

وہ قابل ہے کہ پڑھ سکے۔

May کا past form 'might' ہے۔ کسی کام کرنے کی صلاحیت یا طاقت کے اظہار کے لئے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

وہ جا سکتا تھا۔

ہم لکھ سکتے تھے۔

وہ لوگ آ سکتے تھے۔

(i) before کا استعمال:

'before' سے پہلے کے جملہ کا 'verb' Past Perfect میں ہوتا ہے جبکہ بعد میں استعمال ہونے والے جملہ کا 'verb' Past Indefinite میں ہوتا ہے۔ مثلاً:

(ii) after کا استعمال:

'after' سے پہلے کے جملہ کا 'verb' ہمیشہ Past Indefinite میں ہوتا ہے بعد کے جملہ کا 'verb' Past Perfect میں ہوتا ہے۔

مثلاً

شرطیہ جملہ:

if/when کا استعمال:

پہلا جملہ ہمیشہ Present Indefinite ہوتا ہے بعد کا جملہ Future

the later is Future Indefinite.

Example:

If he comes, I shall go.

When he comes, I shall go.

Indefinite ہوتا ہے۔

مثلاً

Impossibilities

ناممکنات:

'If' is put before the subject. 'were' is used irrespectively number/person of the subject.

subject سے پہلے 'If' لاتے ہیں subject کے بعد (singular, plural اور تمام persons کے ساتھ) 'were' کا استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

Examples:

If I were a king, I would help the people.

If we were birds, we would fly.

If you were educated, you could teach students.

If he were a rich man he would help the poors.

Sometime with the verb 'could'.

If he could conquer the world.

If we could help him.

If I were, If we were

If you were,

If he were, If she were

If it were, If Ali were

If they were

If I could win the heart of my friend.

مثلاً

Unit
7.3

Translation

Translating from one language to another requires special skills. One cannot translate word for word, as words take different meanings in different contexts, even in the same language. Look at the following examples and translate them into Urdu/Sindhi.

- I will go to Murree in **spring**.
- There is a **spring** of hot water at Manghopir, in Karachi.
- Since a **spring** is broken, this clock is not working.
- With a **spring**, the runner crossed the winning line.

Exercise - 1

Translate the following sentences into Urdu/ Sindhi. Write the translate sentences in your notebook. After completing, share your work with your partner. Make any changes needed and rewrite the sentences.

1. The train left the station at 7 o'clock.
2. I can train you to become a good cricketer.
3. There is plenty of light in this room.
4. Please, light all the candles on the cake.

5. Jamal offered to book our seats on the bus.
6. Have you seen my new book?
7. The principal asked the students to state their reasons for being late.
8. The state should ensure that all people follow the rules.
9. This is exactly my point that we should leave early.
10. Don't point at people when you are speaking about them.
11. My brother got the first rank in his final tests.
12. The rank of a soldier depends on many factors.

Ans:

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

1. ٹرین 7 بجے اسٹیشن سے نکلی۔
2. میں کرکٹ کا ایک اچھا کھلاڑی بننے کے لئے تمہاری تربیت کر سکتا ہوں۔
3. کمرے میں بہت روشنی ہے۔
4. برائے مہربانی، ایک پرلگی ساری موم بتیاں جلاؤ۔
5. جمال نے بس پر ہماری سیٹیں مخصوص (بک) کروانے کی پیشکش کی تھی۔
6. کیا تم نے میری نئی کتاب دیکھی ہے؟
7. پرنسپل نے طلباء سے دیر سے آنے کی وجوہات بیان کرنے کو کہا۔
8. ریاست کو یہ یقینی بنانا چاہیے کہ سارے لوگ اصولوں کی پابندی کر رہے ہیں۔
9. دراصل یہی تو میرا نکتہ ہے کہ ہمیں جلدی چلنا چاہیے۔
10. لوگوں کی جانب اشارہ نہ کرو جب تم ان کے بارے میں بات کر رہے ہو۔
11. میرے بھائی نے اپنے فائنل امتحان میں پہلا درجہ حاصل کیا۔
12. ایک سپاہی کا عہدہ (ریٹک) کا انحصار کئی امور پر ہوتا ہے۔

Another point to remember while translating is that in figurative language meaning of the words or expressions used is different from the literal meaning.

Translate literally the following two sentences into Urdu/ Sindhi.

(a) She has a sweet tooth.

(b) This news is music to my ears.

The actual meaning of these sentences is as follows. Now, translate these two sentences:

(a) She loves sweet things.

(b) I am very pleased to hear this news.

Exercise - 2

Work in pairs and translate the following sentences into Urdu/ Sindhi, such that you bring out their real meaning.

1. The sun peaked happily from behind the clouds.
2. The trees danced back and forth in the wind.
3. It was time to go home but the bell refused to ring.
4. The angry sky roared and threw lightening around.
5. The delicious smell of pudding pulled me to the kitchen.

6. I can see that news travels quickly.
7. I wish you weren't always such a chicken.
8. The kids at that school are all brains.
9. You are my guardian angel.
10. I've been on cloud nine all day.

Ans:

1. سورج بادلوں کے پیچھے سے نمودار ہوا۔
2. درخت ہوا میں آگے پیچھے ہل رہے تھے۔
3. وہ گھر جانے کا وقت تھا مگر گھنٹی نہیں بجی تھی۔
4. آسمان میں گرج ہوئی اور پھر بجلی چمکی۔
5. پڑنگ کی مزے دار خوشبو مجھے باورچی خانے میں لے گئی۔
6. میں دیکھ سکتا ہوں کہ خبریں زیادہ تیزی سے پھیلتی ہیں۔
7. میری خواہش ہے کہ تم ہمیشہ اتنے بزدل نہ ہوتے۔
8. اس اسکول کے سارے طالب علم ذہین ہیں۔
9. آپ میرے سر پرست (ہاتھ) ہیں۔
10. میں سارا دن انتہائی خوش رہا۔

JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!

Prefixes Continued

We sometimes add a pair or group of alphabets at the beginning of a word to add something to the meaning of a word. As discussed in Unit 4.3, these are called prefixes.

Exercise - 4

- A. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 'un' with the appropriate given words.

happy

friendly

wise

healthy

grateful

1. An _____ person often falls sick.
2. Saba is very _____ and does not like meeting people.
3. People who are _____ never thank others for helping them.
4. Badar was very _____ because he lost his favourite watch.
5. My uncle took an _____ decision due to which he suffered a big loss.

Answers

1. unhealthy
2. unfriendly
3. ungrateful
4. unhappy
5. unwise

B. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 'in' with the appropriate given words.

correct sufficient active attentive complete

1. This small boy is very _____ and does not take part in any work.
2. The judge was upset with the prisoner for giving an _____ statement to the court.
3. Don't leave your work _____ or the boss will be angry.
4. Sajid is very _____ class; hence, he often fails in the tests.
5. This amount of money is _____ if you want to buy a new computer.

Answers

1. inactive 2. incorrect 3. incomplete 4. inattentive 5. insufficient

C. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the prefix 'dis' with the appropriate given words.

satisfied obedient honest loyal agree

1. We sometimes _____ even with our very close friends.
2. We cannot trust _____ people as they can cheat us.
3. A _____ child can cause many problems for the whole family.
4. Our teacher was _____ with our performance in the competition.
5. We should never be _____ to our country.

Answers

1. disagree 2. dishonest 3. disobedient 4. dissatisfied 5. disloyal

Unit 8.3

Degrees of Adverbs

متعلق فعل کی ڈگری

Adverbs often tell us how an action was done. Like adjectives, adverbs have three degrees, positive, comparative and superlative. One syllable adverbs usually take -er to form the comparative degree and -est to form the superlative degree (e.g. high — higher — highest).

The adverbs that have two or more syllables usually form the comparative degree with 'more' and the superlative degree with 'most' (e.g. smoothly — more smoothly — most smoothly).

Adverbs can have irregular degrees also (e.g. badly — worse — worst).

Exercise - 1

Complete the following table by adding the missing degree of adverbs. After you have completed, compare your answers with your partner.

No.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1.	angrily		
2.			
3.	carefully		most bravely
4.		more comfortably	
5.		earlier	
6.			most easily
7.	loudly		
8.			fastest
9.		more gently	
10.			most happily
11.	hard		
12.			most probably
13.		longer	
14.			farthest
15.		more honestly	
16.	high		
17.	quickly		
18.		more skillfully	
19.			most truthfully
20.	well	better	

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**



Ans:

No.	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1.	angrily	more angrily	most angrily
2.	bravely	more bravely	most bravely
3.	carefully	more carefully	most carefully
4.	comfortably	more comfortably	most comfortably
5.	early	earlier	earliest
6.	easily	more easily	most easily
7.	loudly	more loudly	most loudly
8.	fast	faster	fastest
9.	gently	more gently	most gently
10.	happily	more happily	most happily



11.	hard	harder	hardest
12.	probably	more probably	most probably
13.	long	longer	longest
14.	far	farther	farthest
15.	noisily	more noisily	most noisily
16.	high	higher	highest
17.	quickly	more quickly	most quickly
18.	skillfully	more skillfully	most skillfully
19.	truthfully	more truthfully	most truthfully
20.	well	better	best

Exercise - 2

Fill the following blanks with the correct degree of adverb. Select an adverb from the list in Exercise 1. You can use one adverb only once. Discuss your answers with your partner, after both of you have completed, and make changes where needed.

- My uncle went the _____ from his home during the recent floods.
- Let's see who runs the _____ in the race.
- The workers protested _____ at getting low salaries, as compared long working hours and shorter breaks.
- The Bolan Express is the _____ train you can take, the rest leave after 10 o'clock.
- The drivers from Germany drove their cars _____ than those from Japan.
- Salim climbed _____ than Fazal but Hanif climbed the _____.
- As compared to the soldiers in the first and middle rows, the soldiers in the last row fought the enemy _____.
- Saima answered _____ than her friends.
- Newborn babies should be handled _____ than all other age groups.
- My father was sitting _____ in his chair and enjoying the talk show on TV.

Answers

1.	farthest	2.	fastest	3.	angrily	4.	earliest	5.	more carefully
6.	higher, highest	7.	more bravely	8.	more quickly	9.	more gently	10.	comfortably

Exercise - 3

Work in pairs and orally complete the following passage using the correct degree of the adverbs given below. You can use each adverb only once. After you have discussed it orally, write the complete passage in your notebook, underlining all the adverbs.

well	probably	easily	loudly	happily
quickly	long	hard	carefully	noisily

The teacher had to shout _____ the second time, before the students settled down. The reason why the students were working _____ was because they wanted more time to do the work. The teacher said that the student who finishes the _____ would get two extra marks. Salim wanted to perform _____ than his friends because he wanted to get the scholarship. He had worked _____ for his English paper and wanted to be able to do the paper _____ than he had been able to do in the previous test. He read each section _____ to avoid silly mistakes. He knew that he would _____ finish well in time to be able to edit his work. He worked the _____ on the writing section because he wanted to write a good essay. He submitted his paper _____ when the teacher announced that the time was up.

Ans:

The teacher had to shout loudly the second time, before the students settled down. The reason why the students were working noisily was because they wanted more time to do the work. The teacher said that the student who finishes the most quickly would get two extra marks. Salim wanted to perform better than his friends because he wanted to get the scholarship. He had worked hard for his English paper and wanted to be able to do the paper more easily than he had been able to do in the previous test. He read each section carefully to avoid silly mistakes. He knew that he would probably finish well in time to be able to edit his work. He worked the longest on the writing section because he wanted to write a good essay. He submitted his paper happily when the teacher announced that the time was up.

Quotation Marks: Further Practice

In writing, words that are actually used by speakers are put in quotation marks. They are put in before the first word spoken and after the last spoken word. They are always put in after the quotation mark. The spoken words can be at the beginning, in the middle, or at the end. Look at the example below:

"Have you finished your homework, Zahid?" asked his mother.

"I can do my work later," replied Zahid.

His father said, "You will not be allowed to go out until you finish your homework," and went out of the room.

Zahid was upset but he said, "Okay, I will finish my homework and then go."

Exercise - 4

In the following exercise, the quotation marks are missing. Write down these sentences in your notebook by putting in the quotation marks. After you have completed, share your work with your partner.

1. We are going to be late for school, Amjad, said his sister.
2. The students stood up and said, Good morning, teacher.
3. The cleaner said, I have cleaned your yard, and then he went away.
4. The small child was crying, and kept saying, Where is my mother?
5. Come on in, children, said the gatekeeper, I am going to close the gate.
6. All the people were shouting, Pakistan Zindabad! We have won the match!
7. I have lost my car keys, said the old man. How can I start my car now?
8. Be careful! There are many bees flying here. They may bite you, said Zahra.

Ans:

1. "We are going to be late for school", Amjad, said his sister.
2. The students stood up and said, "Good morning, teacher."
3. The cleaner said, "I have cleaned your yard", and then he went away.
4. The small child was crying, and kept saying, "Where is my mother?"
5. "Come on in, children", said the gatekeeper, "I am going to close the gate."
6. All the people were shouting, "Pakistan Zindabad! We have won the match!"
7. "I have lost my car keys", said the old man. "How can I start my car now?"
8. "Be careful! There are many bees flying here. They may bite you", said Zahra.

Exercise - 5

Work in pairs and insert quotation marks, capital letters, full stops and commas in the following story, where required. Rewrite the complete story, with all the above additions, in your notebook. The first paragraph has all the punctuation marks.

Frogs

Once upon a time there was a bunch of tiny frogs who arranged a running competition. The goal was to reach the top of a very high tower. A big crowd had gathered around the tower to see the race and cheer on the contestants.

the race began no one in the crowd really believed that the tiny frogs would reach the top of the tower one person said oh way too difficult!

another one said they will never make it to the top not a chance that they will succeed said an old man the tower is too high!

the tiny frogs began collapsing one by one however some of them kept their spirits high and continued climbing higher and higher the crowd continued yell it is too difficult! no one will make it!

more tiny frogs got tired and gave up but one frog continued to climb higher and higher and higher this one wouldn't give up.

at the end everyone else had given up climbing the tower except for the one tiny frog who after a big effort was the only one who reached the top then all of the other tiny frogs asked each other how did this one frog manage to do it

a contestant asked the tiny frog how did you find the strength to reach the goal it turned out that the winner was deaf!

the wisdom of this story is: never listen to other people when they are being negative or pessimistic because they take away your most wonderful dreams from you

always remember that words have power and everything you hear and read will affect your actions therefore always be positive have positive friends and listen only to positive people above all be deaf when people tell you what you can do and what you cannot do believe in yourself and always say with God's help I can do this.

Ans:

Once upon a time, there was a bunch of tiny frogs who arranged a running competition. The goal was to reach the top of a very high tower. A big crowd had gathered around the tower to see the race and cheer on the contestants.

The race began. No one in the crowd really believed that the tiny frogs would reach the top of the tower. One person said, "Oh! Way too difficult!"

Another one said, "They will never make it to the top, not a chance that they will succeed". "The tower is too high!", said an old man.
The tiny frogs began collapsing one by one. However, some of them kept their spirits high and continued climbing higher and higher. The crowd continued to yell, "It is too difficult! No one will make it!"

More tiny frogs got tired and gave up but one frog continued to climb higher and higher and higher. This one wouldn't give up.

At the end, everyone else had given up climbing the tower except for the one tiny frog who after a big effort was the only one who reached the top. Then all of the other tiny frogs asked each other, "How did this one frog manage to do it?"

A contestant asked the tiny frog, "How did you find the strength to reach the goal?" It turned out that the winner was deaf!

The wisdom of this story is: never listen to other people when they are being negative or pessimistic because they take away your most wonderful dreams from you.

Always remember that words have power and everything you hear and read will affect your actions. Therefore, always be positive have positive friends, and listen only to positive people. Above all be deaf when people tell you what you can do and what you cannot do. Believe in yourself and always say, "With God's help, I can do this".

Suffixes: Additional Practice

We sometimes add a pair or group of alphabets at the end of a word to add something to the meaning of a word. These are called suffixes. We can use suffixes to make many new words, for example, adjectives.

Examples: fashion + **able** = fashionable
noise + **less** = noiseless

laugh + **able** = laughable
power + **less** = powerless

Exercise - 6

A. Fill the blanks in the following exercise with adjectives formed by using the suffix 'able' with the appropriate given words.

punish

comfort

cure

move

wash

1. We needed space to do our project work so we moved all the _____ furniture to one side.
2. When travelling, we should try and take easily _____ clothes with us.
3. This is a very _____ chair.
4. Non-payment of taxes is a _____ crime.
5. We can recover from _____ diseases quickly if we go to the doctor.

Answers

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---------|----|----------|----|-------------|----|------------|----|---------|
| 1. | movable | 2. | washable | 3. | comfortable | 4. | punishable | 5. | curable |
|----|---------|----|----------|----|-------------|----|------------|----|---------|

B. Fill the blanks in the following exercise by using the suffix 'less' with the appropriate given words.

use

bone

home

taste

job

1. This food is _____ as compared to the food we had yesterday.
2. I asked my mother to buy _____ chicken for the new dish that I wanted to try.
3. This fellow is _____ as far as work is concerned.
4. Finally, I have found work after being _____ for six months.
5. Many _____ people sleep on the footpaths.

Answers

1. tasteless

2. boneless

3. useless

4. jobless

5. homeless

Adjective

The word which adds something to a noun or a pronoun, is called 'Adjective', as

Ali is a good boy.

This is a beautiful flower.

The apple is sweet.

The crow is black.

Ahmad is sick.

دولفظ جو noun یا pronoun کے بارے میں کچھ بتائے adjective کہلاتا ہے۔ مثلاً

علی اچھا لڑکا ہے۔

یہ ایک خوبصورت پھول ہے۔

سیب میٹھا ہے۔

کوکا کالا ہے۔

احمد بیمار ہے۔

Degree of Adjective

There are three degrees of Adjective in English grammar: adjective کی تین طرح کی ڈگریاں ہوتی ہیں۔

(1) Positive degree

(2) Comparative degree

(3) Superlative degree

(i) **Positive degree:** It simply qualifies a noun or a pronoun. as,

یہ ڈگری کسی noun یا pronoun کی خوبی یا خامی بتاتی ہے۔ مثلاً

Ali is a good boy.

علی اچھا لڑکا ہے۔

She is an intelligent woman.

وہ ذہین عورت ہے۔

The apple is sweet.

سیب میٹھا ہے۔

The crow is black.

کوکا کالا ہے۔

(ii) **Comparative degree:** It compares the quality of two nouns or pronouns, as,

یہ ڈگری کسی noun یا pronoun کی خوبی یا خامی کا ایک دوسرے سے مقابلہ کرتی ہے۔ مثلاً

Ali is taller than Akram.

She is better than Nida.

Rules:

(i) 'er' is added to the adjective.

Ali is **taller** than Akram.

(ii) the word 'than' is placed after the adjective.

Ali is taller **than** Akram.

(iii) **Supertative degree:** It compares the quality of three or more than three nouns or pronouns, as,

یہ ڈگری تین تین سے زائد noun یا pronoun کی خوبیوں یا خامیوں کا مقابلہ کرتی ہے۔ مثلاً

Ali is the tallest boy in the class.

Rules:

(i) '**est**' is added to the adjective.

Ali is the **tallest** boy in the class.

(ii) '**the**' is placed before the adjective.

Ali is **the** tallest boy in the class.

Some comparative and superlative are made by adding "more" and "most" respectively, as, Akram is **more** intelligent than Imran.

Akram is the **most** intelligent boy: in the class.

She is **more** beautiful than Rahila.

She is the **most** beautiful girl in the village.

List of Adjectives with their Degrees

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
able	abler	ablest
bad	worse	worst
big	bigger	biggest
bold	bolder	boldest
brave	braver	bravest
clever	cleverer	cleverest
close	closer	closest
dear	dearer	dearest
deep	deeper	deepest
early	earlier	earliest
easy	easier	easiest
far	farther	farthest
fast	faster	fastest
fat	fatter	fattest
fine	finer	finest
fore	former / further	foremost, first / furthest
good, well	better	best
great	greater	greatest
happy	happier	happiest
heavy	heavier	heaviest
high	higher	highest
hot	hotter	hottest

large	larger	largest
late	later , latter	latest , last
little	less , lesser	least
long	longer	longest
many	more	most
near	nearer	nearest
nice	nicer	nicest
noble	nobler	noblest
old	older, elder	oldest, eldest
out	outer	utmost
poor	poorer	poorest
red	redder	reddest
sad	sadder	saddest
shot	shorter	shortest
small	smaller	smallest
strong	stronger	strongest
sweet	sweeter	sweetest
tall	taller	tallest
thin	thinner	thinnest
up	upper	upmost , uppermost
weak	weaker	weakest
wealthy	wealthier	wealthiest
white	whiter	whitest
wise	wiser	wisest
young	younger	youngest

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

Word Building

(A) Formation of Nouns from Verbs

Verbs	Nouns	Verbs	Nouns
Add جمع کرنا	Addition جمع - اضافہ	Give دینا	Gift تحفہ
Admit داخل کرنا	Admission داخلہ	Govern حکومت کرنا	Government حکومت
Agree راضی ہونا	Agreement سمجھوتا	Hate نفرت کرنا	Hatred نفرت
Amuse دل خوش کرنا	Amusement تفریح	Inherit ورثہ میں ملنا	Inheritance وراثت
Apply درخواست دینا	Application درخواست	Inspect معائنہ کرنا	Inspection معائنہ
Arrive پہنچنا	Arrival آمد	Invite دعوت دینا	Invitation دعوت
Attract کشش کرنا	Attraction کشش	Irrigate پانی دینا	Irrigation آبیاری

Behave	برتاؤ کرنا	Behaviour	برتاؤ	Know	جاننا	Knowledge	علم
Bless	برکت کا نزول ہونا	Blessing	برکت	Lend	اُدھار دینا	Loan	اُدھار
Bury	دفن کرنا	Burial	تدفین	Lose	نقصان اٹھانا	Loss	نقصان
Choose	منتخب کرنا	Choice	انتخاب	Move	حرکت کرنا	Movement	حرکت
Decide	فیصلہ کرنا	Decision	فیصلہ	Multiply	ضرب دینا	Multiplication	ضرب
Define	تعریف کرنا	Definition	تعریف	Obey	حکم ماننا	Obedience	اطاعت
Depart	روانہ ہونا	Departure	روانگی	Oblige	شکر گزار ہونا	Obligation	احسان
Die	مرنا	Death	موت	Oppose	مخالفت کرنا	Opposition	مخالفت
Direct	ہدایت کرنا	Direction	ہدایت	Pass	گزرنا	Passage	راستہ
Do	کرنا	Deed	کارنامہ	Pay	ادا کرنا	Payment	ادائیگی
Enjoy	لطف اٹھانا	Enjoyment	لطف	Perform	سرانجام دینا	Performance	انجام دہی
Examine	امتحان لینا	Examination	امتحان	Please	خوش کرنا	Pleasure	خوشی
Expel	نکال دینا	Expulsion	اخراج	Pray	دعا کرنا	Prayer	دعا
Explain	تشریح کرنا	Explanation	وضاحت	Prefer	ترجیح دینا	Preference	ترجیح
Fail	نا کام ہونا	Failure	ناکامی	Press	دبانا	Pressure	دباؤ
Fly	اُڑنا	Flight	اُڑان۔ پرواز	Propose	پیش کرنا	Proposal	پیشکش
Recite	لے سے پڑھنا	Recitation	قرأت۔ ترنم	Speak	بولنا	Speech	تقریر
Refuse	انکار کرنا	Refusal	انکار	Translate	ترجمہ کرنا	Translation	ترجمہ
Remove	ہٹانا	Removal	برطرفی	Treat	سلوک کرنا	Treatment	سلوک
Revolve	گھومنا	Revolution	گردش	Vacate	خالی کرنا	Vacancy	خالی جگہ
See	دیکھنا	Sight	منظر	Weigh	وزن کرنا	Weight	وزن
Serve	خدمت کرنا	Service	خدمت	Hasten	جلدی کرنا	Haste	جلدی
Advise	نصیحت کرنا	Advice	نصیحت	Inherit	ورثہ میں ملنا	Inheritance	دراثت
Bleed	خون بہنا	Blood	خون	Horrrify	خوفزدہ کرنا	Horror	خوف
Classify	درجہ بندی کرنا	Class Classification	جماعت درجہ بندی	Enjoy	لطف اٹھانا	Joy	خوشی
Colonise	نئی بستی بسانا	Colony	نوآبادی	Live	جینا	Life	زندگی
Encourage	حوصلہ افزائی کرنا	Encouragement	حوصلہ افزائی	Nationalise	قومی تحویل میں لینا	Nationalization	قومیانہ
Endanger	خطرہ میں ڈالنا	Danger	خطرہ	Empower	اختیار دینا	Empowerment	اختیار
Differ	فرق ہونا	Difference	فرق	Publish	شائع کرنا	Publicity	اشاعت
Defame	بدنام کرنا	Fame	شہرت	Enslave	غلام بنانا	Enslavement	غلامی
Enforce	نافذ کرنا	Force	طاقت	Sparkle	چمکانا	Spark	چمکائی
Befriend	دوست بنانا	Friend	دوست	Strengthen	طاقتور بنانا	Strength	قوت
Graze	چرنا	Grass	گھاس	Sympathise	ہمدردی کرنا	Sympathy	ہمدردی
Hand	تھمنا	Hand	ہاتھ				

(B) Formation of Nouns from Adjectives

Adjectives		Nouns		Adjectives		Nouns	
Able	قابل	Ability	قابلیت	Brave	بہادر	Bravery	بہادری
Absent	غیر حاضر	Absence	غیر حاضری	Durable	پائیدار	Durability	پائیداری
Free	آزاد	Freedom	آزادی	Present	حاضر	Presence	حاضری
Great	بڑا	Greatness	بڑائی	Private	پوشیدہ۔ ذاتی	Privacy	تنہائی
Happy	خوش	Happiness	خوشی	Proud	مغرور	Pride	غور۔ فخر
Hot	گرم	Heat	گرمی	Pure	پاکیزہ	Purity	پاکیزگی
Inferior	گھٹیا	Inferiority	گھٹیا پن	Safe	محفوظ	Safety	حفاظت
Innocent	معصوم	Innocence	معصومیت	Scarce	کم یاب	Scarcity	کیابی
Jealous	حاسد	Jealousy	حسد	Short	کم	Shortage	کی
Lazy	کام چور	Laziness	کام چوری	Senior	اعلیٰ	Seniority	اعلیٰ پن
Patient	صابر	Patience	صبر	True	سچا	Truth	سچائی
Pious	پرہیزگار	Piety	پرہیزگاری	Uniform	یکساں	Uniformity	یکسانیت
Popular	ہر دلعزیز	Popularity	ہر دلعزیزی	Weak	کمزور	Weakness	کمزوری
Poor	غریب	Poverty	غربت	Wise	عقل مند	Wisdom	عقل مندی

(C) Formation of Adjectives from Nouns

Nouns		Adjectives		Nouns		Adjectives	
Air	ہوا	Airy	ہوائی	Flower	پھول	Flowery	پھولوں سے لدا ہوا
Beauty	حسن	Beautiful	حسین	Fool	اجاق	Foolish	اجاقانہ
Boy	لڑکا	Boyish	ظفلانہ	Friend	دوست	Friendly	دوستانہ
Brother	بھائی	Brotherly	برادرانہ	Fruit	پھل	Fruitful	پھلدار
Child	بچہ	Childish	معصومانہ۔ بچکانہ	Greed	لاچ	Greedy	لاچی
Danger	خطرہ	Dangerous	خطرناک	Gold	سونا	Golden	سنہری
Day	دن	Daily	روزانہ	Health	صحت	Healthy	صحت مند
Ease	سہولت	Easy	آسان	Honour	عزت	Honourable	قبل عزت
Faith	یقین	Faithful	وفادار	Love	محبت	Loving	پیارا محبت کرنے والا
Freedom	آزادی	Free	آزاد	Nation	قوم	National	قومی
Nature	قدرت	Natural	قدرتی	Wealth	دولت	Wealthy	دولتمند
Profit	نفع	Profitable	نفع بخش	Week	ہفتہ	Weekly	ہفتہ وار
Year	سال	Yealy	سالانہ	Wisdom	دانائی	Wise	دانا
Youth	جوانی	Young	جوان				

(D) Antonyms (متضاد الفاظ) (Opposite Words)

Nouns	Meanings	Nouns	Meanings
Arrival	آمد	Departure	رواگی
Absence	غیرحاضری	Presence	حاضری
Bravery	بہادری	Cowardice	بزدلی
Danger	خطرہ	Safety	حفاظت
Day	دن	Night	رات
Enemy	دشمن	friend	دوست
Gain	فائدہ	Loss	نقصان
Honesty	ایمانداری	Dishonesty	بے ایمانی
Health	صحت	Disease, sickness	بیماری
Honour	عزت	Dishonour	بے عزتی
Head	سر	Tail / leg	دم / پاؤں
Hope	امید	Despair	مایوسی
Heaven	جنت	Hell	جہنم
Joy	خوشی	Sorrow	غم
Knowledge	علم	Ignorance	جہالت
Love	محبت	Hatred	نفرت
Light	اُجالا	Darkness	اندھیرا
Land	خشکی	Sea	سمندر
Merit	خوبی	Demerit	برائی
Master	مالک	Servant	نوکر
Profit	نفع	Loss	نقصان
Peace	امن	War	جنگ
Poverty	غریب	Riches	امارت
Safety	حفاظت	Danger	خطرہ
Success	کامیابی	Failure	ناکامی
Virtue	نیکی	Vice	بدی

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

(ii) Adjectives

Adjectives	Meanings	Adjectives	Meanings
Ancient	قدیم	Modern	جدید
Broad	کھلا	Narrow	تنگ
Cheap	سستا	Costly	مہنگا
Clean	صاف	Dirty	گندا
Coward	بزدل	Brave	دلیر

Cruel	ظالم	Kind	مہربان
Cool / Cold	سرد، ٹھنڈا	Warm / Hot	گرم
Deep	گہرا	Shallow	کم گہرا، اچھلا
Fat	موٹا	Lean / Thin	کمزور (دبلا)
Far	دور	Near	نزدیک
Fresh	تازہ	Stale	باہی
Innocent	معصوم	Guilty	قصور وار
Late	تاخیر سے	Early	جلدی سے
Pure	خالص	Impure	ناخالص
Raw	کچا	Ripe	پکا
Soft	نرم	Hard	سخت
Written	تحریری	Oral	زبانی
Young	جوان	Old	بوڑھا

JOIN

FOR

MORE!!!

(iii)

Verbs

Verbs	Meanings	Antonyms	Meanings
Accept	قبول کرنا	Reject	رد کرنا
Add	جمع کرنا	Subtract	تفریق کرنا
Allow	اجازت دینا	Forbid	منع کرنا۔ روکنا
Appoint	مقرر کرنا	Dismiss	موقوف کرنا
Arrive	پہنچنا	Depart	روانہ ہونا
Attack	حملہ کرنا	Defend	دفاع کرنا
Begin	شروع کرنا	End	ختم کرنا
Borrow	اُدھار لینا	Lend	اُدھار دینا
Buy	خریدنا	Sell	فروخت کرنا
Close	بند کرنا	Open	کھولنا
Create	پیدا کرنا	Destroy	تباہ کرنا
Forget	بھولنا	Remember	یاد کرنا
Fail	نا کام ہونا	Succeed	کامیاب ہونا
Gather	اکٹھا کرنا	Scatter	بکھیرنا
Go	جانا	Come	آنا
Hate	نفرت کرنا	Love	محبت کرنا
Hide	چھپنا	Seek	تلاش کرنا
Laugh	ہنسا	Weep	رونا
Lose	کھونا	Gain	پانا
Make	بنانا	Mar	بگاڑنا
Punish	سزا دینا	Reward	انعام دینا

Remember	یاد کرنا	Forget	بھولنا
Rise	اُٹھنا	Fall	گرنا
Sleep	سونا	Wake	(اُٹھنا) جاگنا
Teach	پڑھانا	Learn	سیکھنا
Swim	تیرنا	Drown / sink	ڈوبنا

Prepositions

A preposition shows a relation between a word and a noun ora pronoun that follows it.

پریپوزیشن کسی لفظ اور ناؤن یا پرنوائن کے درمیان تعلق کو ظاہر کرتا ہے۔

e.g. 1. The book is on the table.

پہلے جملے میں on میز اور کتاب کے درمیان تعلق کو ظاہر کر رہا ہے۔ کتاب میز پر ہے۔

2. There is milk in the jug.

دوسرے جملے میں in دودھ اور جگ میں تعلق ظاہر کر رہا ہے۔ دودھ جگ میں ہے۔

In the first sentence, on shows a relation between the table and the book. In the second sentence, in shows a relation between milk and the jug.

in, on, at: They are used for place and time

1. Use of at, in and on for Place

at, on, in یہ جگہ اور وقت کے لئے استعمال ہوتے ہیں۔

at:

at the door/window/ bus stop/airport/ traffic light/ station/ top/ bottom/ table/ party/ etc.

In:

in the room/garden/ bag/ purse/ mirror/ book/photo/ queue/stadium/ bottle/ jug/ etc.

on:

on the floor/ wall/ platform/ roof/ grass/ table/ train/ plan/ farm/ average/ whole/ etc.

2. Use of at, in and on for Time

at:

at 2 o'clock/ 3 p.m./ breakfast/ present/ noon/ the moment/ the weekend/ that time/ Eid/ etc.

In:

in the summer vacation/ two days/ the night/ the 20th century/ December/ etc.

On:

on Monday/ July 4/ birthday/ Friday morning/ etc.

Fixed Expressions:

in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, at night, at noon, at midday/midnight, on duty, by car/bus/air/sea/ etc.

Note: Some words can be followed by two prepositions. You should stick to any one of them.

e.g. knock at or knock on, talk to talk with. Some words change prepositions when use

differently. e.g. search for in search of , good at (something) maths/ computer good for (health) good to (people) write in pen/pencil/ballpoint etc., write with a pen/ pencil ballpoint/etc Words followed by:

at:

aim, amazed, annoyed, arrive, bark, excellent, fire, glad, good, knock, laugh, look, point, shocked, shout, skilled, smile, surprised, throw, etc.

for:

accountable, appetite, apply, ask, beg, blame, care, cheque, demand, desire, eager, enough, famous, fear, impossible, late, leave, look, love, minister, need, order, prepare, possible, punish, ready, reason, reward, request respect, reward, search, sorry, sympathy, wait, useful etc.

from:

absent, abstain, borrow, conceal, derive, deviate, differ, different, distinguish, escape, fall free, hear, hide, prevent, protect, refrain, resign, save, separate, stop, suffer, etc.

in:

abound, ability, believe, deal, dressed, faith, interest, interested, involved, participate regular, rich, rise, set, specialize, succeed, success, take part, write, etc.

of:

accused, acquitted, afraid, approve, aware, blind, composed, consist, cost, die, effect evidence, fond, full, habit, hope, ignorant, message, minister, nervous , proud, shortage sick, sure, tired, etc.

on:

bent, blame, concentrate, congratulate, depend, emphasis, focus, influence, keen, knock live, rely, spend, stress, etc.

to:

addicted, answer, apply, attend, belong, confined, close, devoted, equal, exposed, faithful happened, harmful, inferior, injurious, invite, junior, kind, married, migrate, object, pray prefer, reply, rude, senior, sentenced, similar, stick, superior, etc.

with:

angry, argue, equipped, fight, fill, happy, ill, pleased, provide, sympathize, trouble, etc.

Exercise - 1

Choose the correct answer from the given options.

1. I am not interested _____ films.
(a) at (b) for (c) in (d) by
2. Please write _____ ink.
(a) in (b) with (c) from (d) by
3. She is good _____ cooking.
(a) with (b) for (c) in (d) at
4. The investigation team is looking _____ the matter.
(a) at (b) in (c) into (d) for
5. The police are looking _____ the escaped prisoners.
(a) at (b) in (c) into (d) for
6. He was very kind _____ me.
(a) on (b) at (c) of (d) to

- He was very kind _____ me.
 6. (a) on (b) at
 He is not _____ home.
 7. (a) at (b) in
 It was done _____ me.
 8. (a) from (b) with
 She is afraid _____ dogs.
 9. (a) of (b) off
 The birds fly _____ the trees.
 10. (a) up (b) into
 I am _____ you.
 11. (a) for (b) with
 I saw him _____ the way.
 12. (a) in (b) at
 You should be proud _____ your country.
 13. (a) off (b) of
 I am sorry _____ him.
 14. (a) about (b) from
 Don't blame _____ me.
 15. (a) for (b) on
 I will talk _____ her.
 16. (a) to (b) at
 You are not happy _____ her.
 17. (a) at (b) on
 We should hope _____ the best.
 18. (a) of (b) for

- (c) of (d) to
 (c) on (d) into
 (c) by (d) on
 (c) from (d) with
 (c) over (d) in
 (c) from (d) in
 (c) on (d) from
 (c) in (d) at
 (c) for (d) on
 (c) at (d) of
 (c) from (d) by
 (c) with (d) of
 (c) at (d) in

Answers

1. c	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. d	6. d	7. a	8. c	9. a	10. c
11. b	12. c	13. b	14. c	15. b	16. a	17. c	18. b		

Tenses

زمانہ

There are three kinds of tenses:

1. Present Tense 2. Past tense 3. Future Tense

Tenses (زمانہ) تین طرح کے ہوتے ہیں:

Forms of tenses:

Each kind of tenses has four forms:

Tenses کی ہر قسم کے چار forms ہوتے ہیں:

Present	Past	Future
Indefinite	Indefinite	Indefinite
Continuous	Continuous	Continuous
Perfect	Perfect	Perfect
Perfect Continuous	Perfect Continuous	Perfect Continuous

Present Indefinite Tense

فعل ماضی مطلق

1. I write a letter. میں خط لکھتا ہوں۔
2. They play hockey. وہ ہاکی کھیلتے ہیں۔
3. She goes to school daily. وہ روزانہ اسکول جاتی ہے۔
4. I do not tell a lie. میں جھوٹ نہیں بولتا ہوں۔
5. He does not play cricket. وہ کرکٹ نہیں کھیلتا ہے۔
6. Does he go to school on foot? کیا وہ پیدل اسکول جاتا ہے؟

پہچان: اردو میں Present Indefinite Tense کے جملے کے آخر میں 'تا ہے'، 'تے ہیں'، 'تا ہوں'، 'تی ہوں'، 'تی ہیں' آتا ہے۔
طریقہ:

- (i) اگر Subject (فاعل) Third Person Singular یعنی any name, she, he, it ہو تو Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ s یا es لگاتے ہیں۔ باقی تمام Subject کے بعد صرف Verb کی First Form ہی لگتی ہے۔ خواہ Subjects جمع ہوں یا واحد۔
- (ii) انکار یہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں Third Person Singular کے بعد does not اور باقی تمام Subject کے بعد do not لگاتے ہیں۔ do not یا does not کے بعد ہمیشہ Verb کی پہلی فارم لگتی ہے۔
- (iii) سوالیہ جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں اگر Subject (فاعل) Third Person Singular ہو تو اس سے پہلے Does اور Subject کے بعد Verb کی پہلی فارم لگاتے ہیں۔ باقی تمام Subjects سے پہلے Do استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
- (iv) اگر سوالیہ جملوں میں کب، کیوں، کہاں، کیسے، کتنے سوالیہ الفاظ موجود ہوں تو انہیں do یا does سے پہلے لائیں جیسے:

تم کہاں رہتے ہو؟ Where do you live?
وہ کیوں روتی ہے؟ Why does she weep?

Present Continuous Tense

فعل حال جاری

1. I am writing a letter. میں خط لکھ رہا ہوں۔
2. He is drawing the map of Pakistan. وہ پاکستان کا نقشہ بنا رہا ہے۔
3. We are taking exercise. ہم ورزش کر رہے ہیں۔
4. He is not telling a lie. وہ جھوٹ نہیں بول رہا ہے۔
5. They are playing a match. وہ میچ کھیل رہے ہیں۔
6. Are the boys flying kites? کیا لڑکے چٹنگ اڑا رہے ہیں؟
7. Is she boiling eggs? کیا وہ انڈے اُبال رہے ہیں؟
8. Where is she going? وہ کہاں جا رہی ہے؟
9. Why is the child weeping? بچہ کیوں رو رہا ہے؟

پہچان: اردو میں جملہ کے آخر میں 'رہا ہے'، 'رہا ہوں'، 'رہی ہو رہے ہیں'، 'رہی ہیں' آتا ہے۔
طریقہ:

- (i) اگر am Subject (فاعل) Third Person Singular ہو تو اس کے بعد is اور باقی تمام Subject کے بعد are استعمال کرتے ہیں۔ am, is اور are کے بعد Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing لگاتے ہیں۔
- (ii) اگر جملہ انکاریہ (Negative Sentence) ہو تو am, is کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔

- (iii) اگر جملہ سوالیہ (Interrogative Sentence) ہو تو Are, Am, Is کو Subject سے پہلے لگاتے ہیں۔
 (iv) اگر سوالیہ جملوں میں کب، کیوں، کہاں، کیسے، کون وغیرہ کے الفاظ ہوں تو ان کا ترجمہ سوالیہ جملہ کے شروع میں لگاتے ہیں۔

Present Perfect Tense

فعل حال مکمل

1. I have bought a new book. میں نے ایک نئی کتاب خریدی ہے۔ / میں ایک نئی کتاب خرید چکا ہوں۔
2. We have taken a test. ہم نے امتحان دیا ہے۔ / ہم امتحان دے چکے ہیں۔
3. He has not written a letter to his father. اس نے اپنے والد کو خط نہیں لکھا ہے۔
4. Has the snake-charmer caught a snake? کیا سپیرے نے سانپ پکڑا ہے؟
5. Have the fishermen caught fish? کیا مامی گیروں نے مچھلیاں پکڑی ہیں؟
6. Whom has he written a letter? اس نے کس کو خط لکھا ہے؟
7. Why have you not answered my question? تم نے میرے سوال کا جواب کیوں نہیں دیا ہے؟

پہچان: Past Perfect Tense (فعل ماضی قریب) کسی کام کے ابھی ابھی ختم ہونے کو ظاہر کرتا ہے۔ اردو میں جملہ کے آخر میں 'اے' سے ہیں کی ہیں وغیرہ یا چکا ہوں، چکی ہوں، چکا ہے، چکی ہے وغیرہ آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

- (i) اگر Subject (فاعل) Thrid Person Singular ہو تو اس کے بعد has لگاتے ہیں اور پھر Verb کی تیسری فارم استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
- (ii) انکار یہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں has, have کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔
- (iii) سوالیہ جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں Have, Has کو Subject سے پہلے لے آتے ہیں۔
- (iv) اگر جملے میں کب، کیوں، کہاں، کیسے، کون وغیرہ کے الفاظ ہوں تو have, has سے پہلے ان کی انگریزی لکھ دی جاتی ہے۔

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

فعل ماضی قریب جاری

1. It has been raining since morning. صبح سے بارش ہو رہی ہے۔
2. I have been reading for two hours. میں دو گھنٹے سے پڑھ رہا ہوں۔
3. The boys have not been playing hockey since 3 o'clock. لڑکے تین بجے سے ہاکی نہیں کھیل رہے ہیں۔
4. Has Zareen been teaching in this school since 2015? کیا زارین 2015ء سے اسکول میں پڑھا رہی ہے۔

پہچان: (Present Perfect Continuous Tense) (فعل ماضی قریب جاری) اس میں یہ معلوم ہوتا ہے کہ کب کام شروع ہوا ہے یہ فعل ایسے کاموں کے لئے استعمال ہوتا ہے جو مقررہ وقت (Point of Time) تک یا کچھ مدت (Period of Time) کے لئے جاری ہوں۔ اردو جملے کے آخر میں رہا ہے رہی ہے، بقید زمانہ آتا ہے۔

FOR یا SINCE کا استعمال

مدت (Period of Time) کے اظہار کے لئے for استعمال کرتے ہیں جیسے دس سیکنڈ، دو گھنٹے، تین مہینے، چھ سال، پانچ ہفتے، سات دن وغیرہ۔
 مقررہ مدت (Period of Time) کے اظہار کے لئے since لگاتے ہیں جیسے صبح سے، دوپہر سے، شام سے، ہفتے سے، مارچ سے، 2015 سے وغیرہ۔

- (i) اگر Subject (فاعل) Their Person Singular ہو تو اس کے بعد has been لگاتے ہیں اور پھر Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing لگاتے ہیں۔ باقی سب صیغوں کے Subject کے بعد have been لگاتے ہیں۔

- (ii) انکاریہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) کی صورت میں have been, has been کے درمیان لگاتے ہیں۔
- (iii) سوالیہ جملوں کی صورت میں Have یا Has کو SUBJECTS سے پہلے لاتے ہیں۔
- (iv) لفظ ”سے“ کا ترجمہ for یا since کی نوعیت کے مطابق کرتے ہیں۔

Past Indefinite Tense

ماضی مطلق

1. He told a lie.
2. He punished all the boys.
3. We did not win a match.
4. Father did not buy a new car.
5. Did Jamila make a noise?
6. Did you laugh at the beggar?
7. Why did she weep?
8. Where did he go?

اس نے جھوٹ بولا۔
اس نے تمام لڑکوں کو سزا دی۔
ہم نے میچ نہیں جیتا۔
ابا جان سے نئی کار نہیں خریدی۔
کیا جیلہ نے شور مچایا؟
کیا تم نے فقیر کا مذاق اڑایا؟
وہ کیوں روئی؟
وہ کہاں گیا؟

پہچان: (فعل ماضی مطلق) گزرے ہوئے زمانہ کو ظاہر کرتا ہے۔ جملہ کے آخر میں ’اے‘، ’ی‘ وغیرہ جیسے وہ لاہور گیا۔ وہ لاہور سے آیا آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

Person اور Number کے Subjects کے بعد Verb کی دوسری فارم استعمال ہوتی ہے۔

(i) انکاریہ جملوں میں Subject کے بعد did not لگاتے ہیں اور Verb کی دوسری فارم کو پہلی فارم میں بدل دیتے ہیں۔

(ii) سوالیہ جملوں میں Subject سے پہلے Did لگاتے ہیں اور Did کے ساتھ ہمیشہ Verb کی پہلی فارم استعمال ہوتی ہے۔

(iii) اگر جملہ میں کب، کس طرح، کیسے، کہاں وغیرہ کے الفاظ ہوں تو سوالیہ جملہ کے آغاز میں ان الفاظ کا انگریزی ترجمہ کر کے لکھ دیا جاتا ہے۔

(iv)

Past Continuous Tense

فعل ماضی جاری

1. The boys were making a noise.
2. The lion was roaring.
3. He was depositing money in the bank.
4. I was not reciting the Holy Quran.
5. They were not playing a match.
6. Was a bear coming to them?
7. Why was she white-washing the room?
8. Where were they going?

لڑکے شور مچا رہے تھے۔
شیر دھاڑ رہا تھا۔
وہ بینک میں روپیہ جمع کر رہا تھا۔
میں قرآن پاک نہیں پڑھ رہا تھا۔
وہ میچ نہیں کھیل رہے تھے۔
کیا ایک ریچھ ان کی طرف آ رہا تھا؟
وہ کمرے میں سفیدی کیوں کر رہی تھی؟
وہ کہاں جا رہے تھے؟

پہچان: (PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE) فعل ماضی جاری گزرے ہوئے زمانہ میں کسی کام کے جاری رہنے کو ظاہر کرتا ہے۔ جملہ کے آخر میں رہا تھا، رہی تھی، تھی، وئی تھیں وغیرہ آتا ہے۔

(i) اگر Subject (فاعل) First Person Singular یا Thrid Person Singular ہو تو اس کے بعد was اور were اور پھر Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing کا اضافہ کرتے ہیں باقی تمام Subjects کے بعد were اور پھر Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing آتا ہے۔

- (ii) انکاریہ جملوں میں was یا were کے بعد not آتا ہے۔
- (iii) سوالیہ جملوں میں Was یا Were کو Subject سے پہلے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
- (iv) اگر جملہ میں 'کب'، 'کہاں'، 'کیسے'، 'کون سا' وغیرہ جیسے الفاظ ہوں تو سوالیہ جملے کے شروع میں ان کی انگریزی لکھ دی جاتی ہے۔

Past Perfect Tense

فعل ماضی بعید

1. He had gone to Lahore.
2. She had lost her purse.
3. She had not won a scholarship.
4. Had they won the match?
5. The bell had rung before I reached.
6. Had they taken meals before the sun set?
7. The patient had died before the doctor came.
8. He had written.

وہ لاہور جا چکا تھا۔ / وہ لاہور گیا تھا۔

وہ اپنا پرس گم کر چکی تھی۔

اس نے وظیفہ حاصل نہیں کیا تھا۔

کیا وہ بیچ جیت چکے تھے؟

میرے پہنچنے سے پہلے گھنٹی بج چکی تھی۔

کیا سورج غروب ہونے سے پہلے وہ کھانا کھا چکے تھے؟

ڈاکٹر کے آنے سے پہلے مریض مر چکا تھا

اس نے لکھا تھا۔ / وہ لکھ چکا تھا۔

پہچان: Past Perfect Tense (ماضی بعید) کے جملے ظاہر کرتے ہیں کہ کام گزرے ہوئے زمانے میں ہو چکا تھا جملہ کے آخر میں 'چکا تھا'، 'چکی تھی'، 'چکے تھے' وغیرہ آتا ہے یا 'چکی'، 'تھا'، 'تھے' کی تھی وغیرہ آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

(i) Subject کے بعد had اور had کے بعد Verb کی تیسری فارم لگاتے ہیں۔

(ii) انکاریہ جملوں کی صورت میں had کے بعد not آتا ہے۔

(iii) سوالیہ جملوں میں Hard کو Subject سے پہلے لاتے ہیں۔

FOR MORE!!!

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

فعل ماضی جاری

1. They had been playing since morning.
2. I had been writing for four years.
3. It had not been drizzling since morning.
4. Had he been teaching in this school for five years?

وہ صبح سے کھیل رہے تھے۔

میں چار سال سے لکھ رہا تھا۔

صبح سے بوند باندی نہیں ہو رہی تھی۔

کیا وہ پانچ سال سے اسکول میں پڑھا رہا تھا۔

پہچان: Past Perfect Continuous Tense کے جملے کے آخر میں رہا تھا، رہے تھے، رہی تھی آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

(i) Affirmative جملوں میں Subject کے بعد had been اور Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing آتا ہے۔ اگر وقت سے دن، تاریخ، گھنٹہ، سال کی وضاحت ہوتی ہو تو since، اگر صرف مقدار یا تعداد کا اظہار ہو تو for استعمال کرتے ہیں۔

(ii) انکاریہ جملوں میں had کے بعد not اور پھر been آتا ہے۔

(iii) سوالیہ جملوں میں Had کو Subject سے پہلے لاتے ہیں۔

(iv) سوالیہ انکاریہ جملوں میں Subject سے پہلے Had لاتے ہیں Subject کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔

Future Indefinite Tense

فعل مستقبل معروف

1. We will go to Lahore tomorrow.
2. You will respect your elders.
3. I will not bother you.
4. He will not vote for us.
5. Will the snow melt soon?
6. Who will print this book?

ہم کل لاہور جائیں گے۔
تم بڑوں کی عزت کرو گے۔
میں آپ کو پریشان نہیں کروں گا۔
وہ ہمیں دوش نہیں دے گا۔
کیا برف جلد پگھل جائے گی؟
اس کتاب کو کون چھاپے گا؟

پہچان: Future Indefinite Tense میں 'گا'، 'گی' آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

(i) Affirmative جملوں میں First Person یعنی 'I' اور 'We' کے بعد shall اور باقی تمام Subjects کے بعد will آتا ہے۔

(ii) انکار یہ جملوں میں will یا shall کے بعد not لگتا ہے۔

(iii) سوالیہ جملوں میں Will یا Shall جملہ کے شروع میں لگاتے ہیں۔

(iv) اگر جملہ میں پختہ ارادہ، حکم، خواہش وغیرہ کا اظہار ہو تو اس کے Subject کے بعد shall کی بجائے will اور will کے بجائے shall آتا ہے جیسے:

1. I will fulfil my promise.
2. You shall never steal.
3. He shall help you.

میں اپنا وعدہ ضرور پورا کروں گا۔ (پختہ ارادہ)
تم کبھی چوری نہ کرو گے۔ (نصیحت)
وہ تمہاری ضرورت مدد کرے گا۔ (حکم)

Future Continuous Tense

فعل ماضی جاری

1. It will be raining.
2. The gardener will be watering the plants.
3. I will not be taking exercise.
4. Will the farmer be ploughing?
5. Why will they be making a noise?

بارش ہو رہی ہوگی۔
مالی پودوں کو پانی دے رہا ہوگا۔
میں ورزش نہیں کر رہا ہوں گا۔
کیا کسان ہل چلا رہا ہوگا؟
وہ شور کیوں مچا رہے ہوں گے؟

پہچان: Future Continuous Tense میں 'رہا ہوگا'، 'رہے ہوں گے'، 'رہی ہوگی' وغیرہ آتا ہے۔

طریقہ:

(i) Affirmative جملوں میں 'I' اور 'We' کے بعد shall be اور باقی تمام Persons کے Subjects کے بعد will be لاتے ہیں۔ shall اور will be کے بعد Verb کی پہلی فارم کے ساتھ ing آتا ہے۔

(ii) انکار یہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں will یا shall کے بعد not آتا ہے۔

(iii) سوالیہ جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں Shall یا Will Subject سے پہلے آتا ہے۔

(iv) سوالیہ انکار یہ جملوں میں Subject سے پہلے Shall یا Will لاتے ہیں۔ Subject کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔

Future Perfect Tense

فعل مستقبل مکمل

1. They will have taken meals.

وہ کھانا کھا چکے ہوں گے۔

2. The peon will have rung the bell.
3. They will not have finished the game.
4. Will the servant have posted the letter?
5. He will have come.

چرا اسی گھنٹی بجا چکا ہوگا۔
وہ کھیل ختم نہیں کر چکے ہوں گے۔
کیا نوکر نے خط ڈاک میں ڈال دیا ہوگا؟
وہ آچکا ہوگا۔

پہچان: Future Perfect Tense میں چکا ہوگا، چکی ہوگی، چکے ہوں گے وغیرہ آتا ہے۔
طریقہ:

- (i) Affirmative جملوں میں Subject کے بعد will have یا shall have لگاتے ہیں Verb کی Thrid Form استعمال ہوتی ہے۔
- (ii) انکاریہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں will یا shall کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔
- (iii) سوال جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں Will یا Shall کو Subject سے پہلے لاتے ہیں۔ جملہ کے آخر میں سوالیہ نشان لگاتے ہیں۔
- (iv) سوالیہ انکاریہ جملوں میں Subject سے پہلے Will یا Shall لاتے ہیں Subject کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔

فعل مستقبل مکمل جاری Future Perfect Continuous Tense

1. It will have been drizzling since morning.
 2. I will have been waiting for you for two hours.
 3. It will not have been raining for three hours.
 4. Will the birds have been chirping since morning?
 5. Will the farmers have been ploughing in the fields for two days?
- صبح سے بوند باندی ہو رہی ہوگی۔
میں دو گھنٹے سے تمہارا انتظار کر رہا ہوں گا۔
تین گھنٹے سے بارش نہیں ہو رہی ہوگی۔
کیا پرنڈے صبح سے چھپکار رہے ہوں گے؟
کیا کسان دو دنوں سے کھیتوں پر پل جلا رہے ہوں گے؟
- پہچان: Future Perfect Continuous Tense میں رہا ہوگا، رہے ہوں گے، رہی ہوگی، رہیں گے وغیرہ آتا ہے۔
طریقہ:

- (i) Affirmative جملوں میں Subject کے بعد will have been لگاتے ہیں۔
- (ii) انکاریہ جملوں (Negative Sentences) میں will یا shall کے بعد not آتا ہے۔
- (iii) سوالیہ جملوں (Interrogative Sentences) میں Will یا Shall کو Subject سے پہلے استعمال کرتے ہیں۔
- (iv) سوالیہ انکاریہ جملوں میں Subject سے پہلے Will یا Shall آتا ہے۔ Subject کے بعد not لگاتے ہیں۔

Multiple Choice Questions (M.C.Qs)

Choose the correct answer for each from the given options.

1. Choose the correct Present Perfect tense of:
I play cricket.
(a) I have played cricket. (b) I had played cricket.
(c) I played cricket (d) I will have played cricket.
2. Choose the correct Future Indefinite of:
He will have gone.
(a) He goes (b) He will be going
(c) He will go (d) He will have been going

3. Choose the correct Past Perfect tense of:
I went.
- (a) I had been going (b) I was going
(c) I will have gone (d) I had gone
4. Choose the correct Present continuous tense:
I have studied.
- (a) I have been studying (b) I study
(c) I was studying (d) I am studying
5. Choose the correct Future Perfect tense:
She will prepare.
- (a) She will be preparing (b) She will have prepared
(c) She was preparing (d) She is preparing
6. Choose the correct Present Continuous Tense:
The girl play in the ground.
- (a) The girls are playing in the ground
(b) The girls were playing in the ground
(c) The girls playing in the ground
(d) The girls have been playing in the ground
7. Choose the correct past perfect tense:
Zahid sings a song.
- (a) Zahid has sung a song (b) Zahid sang a song
(c) Zahid had sung a song (d) Zahid will sing a song
8. Choose the correct Present Indefinite Tense:
He and I will take tea.
- (a) He and I takes tea. (b) He and I took tea.
(c) He and I take tea. (d) He and I is taking tea.
9. Choose the correct Present Continuous Tense:
All the children to pass the examination.
- (a) tried (b) were trying (c) are trying (d) had tried
10. Select the Simple Past Tense: They will leave for London.
- (a) They leave for London (b) They had left for London
(c) They have left for London (d) They left for London
11. Choose the Present Perfect Continuous Tense:
- (a) She will have been selling her car.
(b) She has been selling her car.
(c) She is selling her car.
(d) She had been selling her car.
12. Choose the correct Past Perfect Tense:
I drank a glass of orange juice.
- (a) I am drinking a glass of Orange juice.
(b) I have drunk a glass of orange juice.
(c) I will drink a glass of Orange juice.
(d) I had drunk a glass of orange juice.



Answers

1.	a	2.	c	3.	d	4.	d	5.	b	6.	a	7.	c	8.	c	9.	c	10.	d
11.	b	12.	d																

Idioms and Phrases

1. a lot of (a large number/amount)
2. afraid of (scared of)
3. after all (anyway)
4. again and again (repeatedly)
5. all of a sudden (suddenly)
6. apart from (in addition to)
7. as a result (in the consequence)
8. as long as (provided that)
9. as soon as (immediately)
10. at first (in the beginning)
11. at all costs (at any expense)
12. at last (finally)
13. at once (immediately)
14. bed of roses (an easy thing/place)
15. belong to (be the owner of)
16. bit by bit (gradually)
17. black sheep (bad people)
18. break the ice (start talking)
19. bring to trial (put on trial)
20. bring up (raise children)
21. by and by (slowly)
22. by fits and starts (irregularly)
23. call on (visit)
24. care for (love)

بہت زیادہ
سے خوفزدہ
بہر حال

بار بار

ایک
مزید برآں

نتیجتاً
جب تک کہ

جیسے ہی
آغاز میں

ہر قیمت پر
آخر کار

فورا
پھولوں کی بجائے

ملکیت ہونا
رفتہ رفتہ

گندے لوگ
گفتگو شروع کرنا

مقدمہ چلانا
پرورش کرنا

رفتہ رفتہ

بے قاعدگی سے

ملاقات کرنا
محببت کرنا

I have a lot of books.

We are not afraid of him.

We should help her. After all, she is our friend.

I tell you again and again not to waste your time.

She fainted all of a sudden.

Apart from my cousin, he is my close friend.

As a result of her illness, she lost her job. You cannot sleep as long as your work is incomplete.

As soon as he came home, he had a bath.

At first I could not understand him.

I want to buy this laptop at all costs.

At last he passed the exam after three attempts.

Take your time, don't decide at once.

Life is not a bed of roses.

This pen belongs to me.

She recovered from the disease bit by bit.

Smugglers are the black sheep of society.

Strangers feel difficulty in breaking the ice.

The criminals will be brought to trial.

Parents have difficulties in bringing up children.

He became a hardworking student by and by.

Students should not study by fits and starts.

My uncle called on me yesterday.

He does not care for me.

25. cut down (reduce)
 26. day and night (around the clock)
 27. day by day (as each day passes)
 28. do away with (stop)
 29. eager for (keen on)
 30. far and wide (everywhere)
 31. fond of (love)
 32. get into (enter a car, etc.)
 33. get on (be friendly)
 34. get over (overcome the difficulty)
 35. get rid of (free from)
 36. get into trouble (be in difficulty)
 37. get through (pass a test, etc.)
 38. give in (surrender)
 39. give up (stop something bad)
 40. go about (walk)
 41. go on (continue)
 42. good at (skilled in something)
 43. hand in hand (holding hands)
 44. heart and soul (with full devotion)
 45. laugh at (make fun of)
 46. lay down one's life (sacrifice one's life)
 47. letters of gold (in golden letters)
 48. little by little (gradually)
 49. look at (have a look)
 50. look after (take care of)
 51. look down (hate)
 52. look back (review the past)
 53. look for (search)
 54. look into (investigate)
 55. look through (avoid)
 56. look up to (look for help)

کم کرنا
 ہر وقت / چوبیس گھنٹے
 دن بدن
 ختم کرنا
 چاہنا
 ہر جگہ
 پسند کرنا
 سوار ہونا
 دوستی کرنا

مشکل پر قابو پانا

چھٹکارا پانا
 مشکل میں پڑ جانا

کامیاب ہونا

ہتھیار ڈالنا

ختم کرنا

چلنا

جاری رکھنا

ماہر ہونا

ہاتھ پکڑے ہوئے

دل لگا کر

مذاق اڑانا

قربانی دینا

سنہری لفظوں میں

آہستہ آہستہ

نظر ڈالنا

دیکھ بھال کرنا

نفرت کرنا

ماضی کا جائزہ لینا

تلاش کرنا

تفتیش کرنا

بچنا

مدد کے لئے آسرا کرنا

We should cut down our expenses.
 This petrol pump is open day and night.
 He is getting fatter day by day.
 We should do away with bad habits.
 He is eager for learning English.
 English is spoken far and wide.
 He is fond of sweet dishes.
 He got into a taxi at the airport.
 She gets on with everybody so she has many friends.
 It is difficult to get over so many problems at once.
 We should get rid of bad habits.
 If you make bad friends, you will get into trouble.
 My friend gets through all the exams easily.
 We'll fight with the enemy and never give in.
 He has given up fighting with people.
 We should go about daily for our good health.
 Go on working hard.
 He is good at driving.
 They always walk hand in hand.
 They work with their heart and soul.
 We should not laugh at people.
 Brave sold lay down their lives for their country's defence.

Great people's names are written in letters of gold.
 You will learn French little by little.
 Look at his dress. It's so dirty.
 Look after my parents happily.
 We should not look down on the poor.
 Looking back on the past, I see now my mistakes.
 She is looking for her glasses.
 They are looking into the matter.
 He is looking through me these days.
 The poor look up to their rich relatives

57. make the most of (take full advantage of)

58. made of (prepared from)

59. make out (understand)

60. mix with (have friendship)

61. Pay attention to (concentrate on)

62. play a role (play a part)

63. play with (to play)

64. point at (raise fingers on)

65. put an end to (stop)

66. put into operation (be functional)

67. put on (wear)

68. put out (switch off)

69. a red letter day (a day of rejoicing)

70. point out (mention)

71. rest of (remaining)

72. turn on (switch on)

73. take part (participate)

74. Take care of (look after)

75. turn over a new leaf (start again for betterment)

76. set up (establish)

77. take off (remove clothing, etc)

78. with open arms (whole heartedly)

79. with flying colours (impressive success)

80. nothing but (only)

81. wind up (finish a business, speech)

82. a narrow escape (avoid a certain accident)

83. see eye to eye (agree)

84. from hand to mouth (live with difficulty)

بھر پور فائدہ اٹھانا

تیار کرنا

سمجھنا

دوستی رکھنا

توجہ دینا

کسی کام میں حصہ لینا

کھیلنا

انگلی اٹھا کر اشارہ کرنا

ختم کرنا

کام شروع کرنا

پہننا

بند کرنا

خوشی منانے کا دن

حوالہ دینا

بقایا

لائٹ جلانا

حصہ لینا

دیکھ بھال کرنا

بہتری کے لئے آغاز کرنا

قائم کرنا

اتارنا

کھلے دل سے

اچھی کامیابی

صرف

ختم کرنا

بال بال بچنا

اتفاق کرنا

مشکل سے گزارہ کرنا

in their financial difficulties.

I made the most of my vacations by finished all the pending work.

Sweets are made of milk and sugar.

I can not make out what you are talking about.

Never mix with bad people.

Pay attention to your studies.

Allama Iqbal played a great role in making Pakistan.

Girls play with dolls.

It is bad to point at people.

We should put an end to violence.

The new plan has been put into operation.

We put on new clothes on Eid day.

Put out lights before sleeping.

It's a red letter day for me as I have completed my computer course.

He pointed out my mistakes.

Except Imran, the rest of the students are present.

Turn on the lights.

Good students also take part in sports besides studies.

Take care of the baby.

He turned over a new leaf after his failure.

We will set up a small library at our home.

Take off your shoes.

We always receive our guests with open arms.

He passed his exam with flying colours.

She is doing nothing but wasting her time.

They are winding up their business in Karachi.

We had a narrow escape yesterday.

We always see eye to eye on every thing.

They are very poor and live from hand to mouth.

85. once again (one more time)
86. grow up (become adult)
87. in place of (instead of)
88. in front of (ahead of)
89. year after year (as years passed)
90. take after (look like)
91. go up (increase)
92. go off (explode)
93. run out of (have no more left)
94. get away (leave, escape)
95. break out (start of a war, disease)
96. hold on (wait, on the phone)
97. keep on (continue)
98. step up (increase)
99. take out (remove, extract)
100. put off (postpone)
101. fill in/up (complete)
102. find out (discover)
103. account for (give a reason for)
104. blow out (extinguish)
105. go through (suffer, endure)
106. look forward to (expect with pleasure)
107. to shed the last drop of blood
108. smile at (look at someone and smile)
109. all in all (on the whole)
110. side by side (together)
111. break up (disintegrate)

ایک دفعہ پھر

بالغ ہونا

کے بجائے

کے سامنے

سال بہ سال

مشابہت ہونا

بڑھنا

پھٹنا

ختم ہونا

بچ جانا

شروع ہونا

انتظار کرنا

جاری رکھنا

بڑھانا

نکالنا

ماتوی کرنا

بھرنے

دریافت کرنا

وجہ بتانا

بچھانا (پھونک مار کر)

گزرنا

انتظار کرنا

خون کا آخری قطرہ

بہادینا

کچھ کھڑکھڑانا

مجموعی طور پر

شانہ نشانہ

ٹوٹ جانا

I once again remind you to complete his work at once.

Girls grow up very fast.

Who is playing in place of the injured player?

Look in front of you while driving.

Our country is facing energy crisis year after year.

She takes after her mother. Nobody can find any difference.

Prices are going up very fast.

A bomb went off at the railway station.

We have run out of petrol.

He got away without a fine.

A war has broken out between the two countries.

Please hold on. He is just coming.

Keep on working hard.

They are stepping up their production.

The doctor will take out his tooth.

Our exam has been put off.

Fill in/up the form.

I have found out my keys.

Can you account for your absence?

Blow out the candle.

He is going through a hard time.

I am looking forward to meeting you.

I will shed the last drop of my blood for my country.

Rashid was smiling at me.

All in all it's been a good year.

The two institutions worked side by side in complete harmony

The grey clouds had begun to break up.



Essay Writing

ہدایات:

- (i) پیرا گراف چند ایک جھوٹے چھوٹے آسان اور بار بار جملوں کا مجموعہ ہوتا ہے اور مضمون چند پیرا گراف کا مجموعہ ہوتا ہے۔
- (ii) مضمون کا پہلا جملہ موضوع کے عنوان کا پتہ دیتا ہے۔
- (iii) ایک مضمون میں عموماً 100 سے 150 کے درمیان الفاظ ہوتے ہیں۔
- (iv) ہر مضمون کے آخر میں جملے کو SUMMARY SENTENCE کہتے ہیں کیونکہ اس میں پوری عبارت کا خلاصہ بیان کر دیا جاتا ہے۔
- (v) ہر مضمون یا مضمون کے تمام جملے اپنی اپنی جگہ پر موزوں ہوتے ہیں جب کہ ان کی ترتیب حالات اور مشاہدات کے مطابق ہوتی ہے۔
- (vi) کسی موضوع پر قلم اٹھانے سے پہلے چند منٹ کے لئے اس پر خوب سوچ بچار کریں اور اس کے متعلق جو خیالات آپ کے دماغ میں پیدا ہوں انہیں ایک جگہ نوٹ کر لیں۔
- (vii) ایک ایک نکتہ کو لیں غیر ضروری باتوں کو ختم کر دیں اور صرف وہی باتیں رہنے دیں جن کا موضوع سے گہرا تعلق ہو۔
- (viii) باتوں کو اہمیت کے مطابق ان کو ترتیب دیں۔
- (ix) اب ان جملوں کو باری باری تحریر کریں اور موزوں الفاظ کے سانچے میں ڈھالنے کی کوشش کریں۔
- (x) جملوں میں تنوع پیدا کریں یعنی کوئی جملہ چھوٹا رکھیں اور کوئی بڑا۔
- (xi) الفاظ کی تکرار سے گریز کریں۔
- (xii) گرامر اور جملوں کا خاص خیال رکھیں۔
- (xiii) زبان آسان، سادہ اور درست رکھیں۔
- (xiv) ایسے پیرا گراف جن میں کسی ذاتی تجربے یا مشاہدے کا ذکر ہو (PAST TENSE) میں لکھیں۔
- (xv) پیرا گراف یا مضمون کا عنوان ضرور لکھیں۔
- (xvi) مضمون ختم کرنے کے بعد نظر ثانی ضرور کر لیں اور اس طرح جو غلطیاں رہ گئی ہوں انہیں دور کریں۔

JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!

Descriptive Essays

Descriptive essay describes a person, place or thing. It includes important details about the person, place or thing in such a manner that the readers can create a picture in their mind about the object being described.

PERSONS	OBJECTS and PLACES
General description, moving from general to specific.	Physical description and characteristics of an object, place, moving from general to specific.
Detailed physical description of face, build, clothes, expressions, etc.	Finer details of size, colour, shape, texture, structure, etc.
Personality traits e.g., habits, attitudes, behaviour, etc.	Atmosphere of a place/ qualities of an object.

Use appropriate adjectives and adverbs for vivid effect.

Write the details in an appropriate order.

I live in Karachi, the largest city in Pakistan, and the capital of Sindh Province. My city is Pakistan's main industrial and financial center. It is Pakistan's most linguistically, ethnically, and religiously diverse city. With its location on the Arabian Sea, Karachi serves as a transport hub and is home to Pakistan's two largest seaports, the Port of Karachi and Port Bin Qasim, as well as Pakistan's busiest airport, Jinnah International Airport. Most of Pakistan's public and private banks are headquartered on Karachi's I. I. Chundrigar Road, which is known as "Pakistan's Wall Street", with a large percentage of the cashflow in the Pakistani economy taking place on I. I. Chundrigar Road. Most major foreign multinational corporations operating in Pakistan have their headquarters in Karachi. Karachi is also home to the Pakistan Stock Exchange.

It is an old city. It was founded as the fortified village of Kolachi in 1729. With the arrival of the British, its importance increased drastically. British made Karachi a major seaport and connected it with the rest of the country with a railway network. After the independence of Pakistan, its population increased. My city experienced rapid economic growth after independence. Karachi is one of the world's fastest-growing cities.

My Karachi is also known as the "City of Lights" in the 1960s and 1970s for its vibrant nightlife. It is famous for its beaches.

Muhammad Ali Jinnah, the founder of Pakistan, was born in Karachi's Wazir Mansion in 1876. His tomb is the landmark of Karachi. The most important historical sites in Karachi are the hundred-year old tombs located in the Chowkandi graveyard. Karachi has many beautiful parks.

Karachi has a hot desert climate dominated by a long "Summer Season" while moderated by oceanic influence from the Arabian Sea. While the summers are hot and humid, cool sea breezes typically provide relief during hot summer months.

There are plenty of schools, colleges, and universities of all kinds. There are medical colleges too. There are many government-run hospitals as well as private hospitals and nursing homes. Getting treated for any disease is not difficult at all. All kinds of specialist doctors are available at a price. Taxis, buses, cars, auto-rickshaws fill the streets. People can travel from one end to the other. The city has now turned into a city of Malls. There are so many beautiful shopping malls in the city.

Exhibitions, fairs, festivals are a regular feature. There are some problems too like water logging in some areas during the monsoon. The buses are too crowded as the city is overpopulated. Thousands pass through the city during the day adding to the daily throng. There is a garbage disposal system yet the roads are not always clean. People are to blame for this because they litter the place thoughtlessly. Despite all the small and big problems, the city is the heartthrob of many. It is a very vibrant metropolis. All types of people live here in harmony. There are many parks and gardens too. I love my city.

(KHI Board Science 2008, 12)

Last year I went with my family to visit Moen-jo-daro. Our coaster reached there at 10 'o clock in the morning. We were excited seeing one of the oldest and historical cities of the world. We were thinking that four thousand and five years ago this was a busy city full of people, but now it seems a graveyard.

Moen-jo-daro is at a distance of 27 kilometres from Larkana. Nobody knew anything about it until 1922. Sir John Marshall, an English civil servant discovered this old city.

There were straight roads and well-built houses. Each house was made of large baked bricks and had a bathroom and servant quarters close by. Covered drains ran beside the streets. Even the streets were made of baked bricks. Carts and other forms of transport could come right to the centre of the town. There was a great hall to store grain.

Trade was the main profession of the people of this city. Wheat, rice and cotton grew there. There were skilled craftsmen who worked in gold, silver and ivory. Clay dolls and carts were made for the children to play with.

We stayed at Moen-jo-daro till 5 o' clock and visited almost each part of this old city. In the evening we got back Larkana. In a hotel we stayed at night and the next morning we travelled to Karachi.

03

A Scenic Place

There are so many nice places in our country. They are scattered across the country. Every place has its distinct features. Some places have scenic beauty in abundance.

I have visited so many places of historical and tourist interest. But the visit which has a lasting impression on my mind is the visit to Kashmir. It is the most beautiful place I have ever seen. Kashmir is a paradise on the earth. I was wonderstruck to see the ravishing beauty of Kashmir. With snow-clad mountains, tall-trees of Chinar, lush green plains, and valleys. Kashmir is one of the most bewitching places on earth. It has been a great attraction for tourists all across the country and abroad as well.

Azad Kashmir is a land of roaring rivers and majestic lakes, transparent streams, snowy peaks and green mountains, forests, and splendid valleys. It is located in the Himalayan region. It is widely famous for its rich flora and fauna. Kashmir has picturesque spots, enchanting landscapes, and green forests in abundance. Its serpentine rivers, huge calm lakes, waterfalls, tall trees are some of the delightful attractions for the tourists.

Varieties of flowers add to the beauty of Kashmir. It is one of the best natural spots in Pakistan. Its exquisite scenery, superb sights, green fields combine to add to the grandeur of this God-gifted paradise on earth.

Muzaffarabad, the capital city of Azad Kashmir, is located on the banks of the Jhelum and Neelum rivers. Well-known tourist spots near Muzaffarabad are the Red Fort, Pir Chinassi, Patika, Subri Lake, and Awan Patti. Another beautiful place is Neelum valley which is situated to the north and northeast of Muzaffarabad. In Poonch District, the most scenic places are Banjosa Lake, Devi Gali, Tatta Pani, and Toli Pir.

The principal tourist attractions in Bagh District are Bagh Fort, Dhirkot, Sudhan Gali, Ganga Lake, Ganga Choti, Kotla Waterfall, Neela Butt, Danna, Panjal Mastan National Park, and Las Danna. The Leepa Valley is located 105 km (65 mi) southeast of Muzaffarabad. It is the most charming and scenic place for tourists in Azad Kashmir. Mangla Lake and Ramkot fort are other tourist attractions.

Kashmir is abundantly endowed with Allah's bounties. Apart from having great scenic attractions, these places are good health resorts. Indeed, the beauty of Kashmir is enchanting.

04

School Playground

There is a good playground in our school. It is quite big. It has a huge boundary wall. We play all types of games in the playground. It has green grass looking like green velvet all around the ground. There are green shrubs that are beautifully trimmed. There is a gardener to water and look after it. Our playground has several big trees under which we sit and talk on matters of interest to us.



Our school gives special importance to games and so it insists that all students should take part in all games. We play hockey, football, cricket and basketball. Our school Principal encourages all students to play one or the other game.

We have very strong teams of players; they practice different games in the playground. Various matches are held on this playground. The P.T. instructor of our school gives us training in the playground.

It is a pleasant sight to see all the students at play. Sometimes the teachers join the games. There is a wave of joy and happiness everywhere. All look bright happy and jolly.

Our teams have won many prizes in sports and games. Our school playground has produced many great players. They play at the national level. I am proud of my school playground.

05

Problems of Karachi City

(KHI Board Science: 2016 ; General: 2016)

Karachi is one of the biggest city of the world. It is the sea-port and commercial hub of Pakistan. This is the capital of the province of Sindh. This is a populous city. There is a net of industries in Karachi. People of the different parts of Pakistan live and work there. Uncountable hotels and restaurants are in this city. Karachi is a commercial, cultural and educational centre. So many universities, colleges, schools, academic and professional institutions are here. Inspite of all these facts Karachi faces so many problems.

It seems that this city lacks the due attention of the concerned authorities so ultimately its problems not only stand unsolved but also new problems arise. This city faces law and order situation. Killing of innocent people, snatching mobiles, money, car and bike is common.

The transport facility is inadequate. Passengers have to travel hanging on the footboards and sitting on the roofs of the vehicles. The traffic systems seems ineffective so the problem of traffic jam is common. Road accidents frequently take place. Valuable lives of the people are lost due to these accidents. No traffic discipline is seen on the roads. The cleanliness and hygienic situation of the city is worst. It seems that no department or authority exists in this city who takes the responsibility to keep the city clean. Heaps of garbages and filth are found in the streets and on the sides of the roads. The manholes are without covers and water flow on the roads. Stagnant waters breed mosquitoes and flies that cause malaria and other diseases.

The unnatural and randomly growth of population and lack of planning have caused unemployment. The young people, particularly, the educated people face this problem.

06

My Most Favourite Country, Pakistan

(KHI Board Science: 2018)

The name of our dear homeland is Islamic Republic of Pakistan. It is located in the southern part of the continent of Asia known as South Asia. It is a democratic country. Allah has bestowed many things to Pakistan. It has different seasons and abundant mineral resources. Pakistan is an agricultural country. Cotton, rice and leather are its chief exports. Islamabad is the capital of Pakistan. It is the most beautiful city of Pakistan. World's biggest Faisal Mosque is also in this city.

Karachi is the largest city of Pakistan. It is the capital of Sindh province. Lahore is the second largest city. It is the capital of province of Punjab. During the last 20 years Pakistan's economy has been one of the fastest growing in the world-the seventh fastest in Asia. Main Industrial cities of our country are Karachi, Hyderabad, Multan, Lahore, Sialkot, Faisalabad, Wazirabad and Peshwar. There are snow

covered high mountains in the north of our country. These mountains have deep valleys, thick forests and beautiful lakes. The River Indus flows through the middle of our country. River Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi and Sutlej also flow through it. Most of the land around those rivers is rich and fertile. Good crops are grown there. In our country there are also deserts in the west and in the east. These areas are mostly barren with large sand dunes. Pakistan is a land of many splendors and opportunities. It has been the cradle of one of the oldest civilizations. Pakistan is a nuclear power. It has the 5th largest and powerful army in the world.

07

My Favourite Uncle

Having a family is a beautiful part of life. Although I love and appreciate all of my family members, my favorite family member on my mother's side is my uncle, Kamran.

Uncle Kamran is a good-looking man with a charming smile and friendly brown eyes. Besides his good looks, he is also a very kind and caring person.

I like him not because he buys for me everything that I wish to have but due to his personality and politeness. He always helps me whenever I need and always tries to be connected to me and my family. Whenever he visits my home, he brings a lot of sweets and fruits for all of us, and at weekends he takes me and my siblings to amusement parks and shopping. From birthday cakes to surprise treats, he made our childhood days so special.

Whenever he goes for an outing he always takes us with him. In my summer vacations, he takes me and my family to various recreational places such as hill stations, seaside, and many other places where we enjoy a lot and learn new skills from him as he keeps on sharing general knowledge with us. I enjoy every moment that I spend with him.

My uncle is a special man. He and my mother came from a poor family. Knowing that his parents would not be able to afford his education expenses, he studied hard to obtain a scholarship to get a law degree. While in the law college, he paid for his books and fees by giving private tuition to primary pupils.

After graduating with his law degree, he joined a big legal firm. Through hard work and perseverance, he went on to open his small firm. Today, he is a successful lawyer. He is also well respected and known as a kind and compassionate lawyer who fights for justice for the unfortunate. His advice and words have influenced me a lot in the way I look at life and people.

08

A Teacher That I Remember

A teacher plays a vital role in shaping the life of a student. Some teachings of your teacher remain in your memories even when you grow up and move forward to different professions.

My favorite subject is English and my most favorite teacher is Miss Sara. She taught us English. She always appreciated my hard work. She joined our school one year ago. Before that, I was not so good at English. But after attending her classes, we all became much better at this subject.

I like her for many reasons. First of all, she teaches lessons in a very interesting way. Even when we had doubts or questions, she never got upset with us. Her best quality is her loving nature. She would come to school daily without missing a day.

Her dressing sense is nice. She wears simple shalwar suits with a hijab. She always speaks to her students softly and respectfully. I eagerly waited for her class and always did my English homework on time. Mrs. Sara puts a lot of effort into explaining every chapter.

There were many activities given at the end of every lesson and she made us participate in all of them. Not only that, but she also encouraged us to take part in drama and poem competitions. Since her first day, she made a rule for us.

All of us had to speak in English during the English period. Every student tried to talk in English even if the sentence sounds improper. She had taught us to never laugh at each other's mistakes. That had improved our spoken English in a great way. Now, we can talk in English with more confidence.

Another great quality of hers was that she treated every child equally. After explaining the lesson to us, she asked each one of us different questions about the chapter. Sometimes, we also loved to talk about our personal lives, like what do we like about our lives, how our parents work hard for us, and things like that.

When we got confused or needed emotional support, she was the best person to talk to. Her advice and suggestions were always positive. I still remember that on teacher's day, all the students wished her and brought presents for her.

I made a beautiful greeting card for her. She accepted it with a smile and thanked us for everything. I feel grateful to have such a gentle and great teacher in my life who supports me in every way.

09

Our School Principal

A school principal has a very important place in the working of the school. He can improve the standard of education in the school. He is a central figure in the school.

Mr. Sajjad Karim is our Principal. He is a tall and strong man. He has a well-built body. He has a grand personality.

His appearance is pleasing. He is always neat and clean in his dress. He is able, highly qualified, and hard-working. He is very noble and honest. He takes great interest in his work.

He comes to school daily at right time. He maintains discipline in the school. He wants the school in order. He has a smiling face. He is the friend and guide of the students. He is a lover of honesty.

He is a good administrator. He first takes a round of the school. He sees that all the teachers are working well. Sometimes he helps the teachers in their work. He guides the students also. He is religious minded.

After the morning assembly and prayer he speaks on Islam. He always advises us to work hard to achieve the goal of our life. He has made it his duty to make us good citizens of Pakistan.

Our Principal believes in strict discipline. He gives great importance to good manners and character. He has a great love for his school and students. He attracts us as a magnet attracts iron. All of us are always prepared to carry out his orders.

Our Principal is a man of high character. He is also interested in extra-curricular activities such as dramas, debates, and lectures. He is a great man and he is making his students great.

10

My Grandmother / Grandfather

My grandmother is quite an old lady. She is seventy-one years old. Her years have now bent her back a little but have not affected her activities. She is tall and thin. She is gray-haired and her humble and affectionate face is full of wrinkles. Her eye-sight, however, is quite good and she can read without spectacles. She prefers living a simple life.

Even at this age, she is very active and hard-working. At times, we are surprised at her agility. She supervises all-important jobs in the family. Some she does herself.

She gets up very early from her bed. She is a pious woman. She offers Namaz regularly. Then she reads some verses from the Holy Quran with translation every day. She wakes us up and asks us to read Namaz and the Quran Majeed as well. She sits with us for some time and watches. Then she goes to do her usual work. My grandfather returns from his morning walk. Both of them sit sipping their morning tea and talking about various things.

She is a woman of pleasing nature. Once you start talking with my grandmother, you will forget yourself. She will tell you a lot of things about her life and experience. Her ways of approach are so lovely that you cannot but listen to her with rapt attention. Her talking has no end. But it is quite lively and pleasing.

She is very affectionate and caring. We, her grandchildren, are attached to her more than to our parents. She is never cross with us. Her love for us is her passion. But she is equally generous to other children. My father and my uncle always seek her advice in all social matters.

She is the most respected lady in our colony. Ladies, young and old, come to her for advice. Sometimes they bring their problems. In the afternoon many women flock around her. Sometimes she tells them her own experiences. They listen to her with respect.

When we were little kids, our grandmother used to be such a source of joy! We used to wait eagerly for a night because, in the night, all of us snuggled near her, and then she would tell us a story. In this way, we learnt some great stories of our great Muslim personalities.

My grandmother has all good wishes and blessings for us. We feel that her blessings ensure us against all the ills of the world. She often passes her time with us. She, at times, tells us funny jokes and stories. She wants us to read well and become great in our life. And we are sure her good wishes will lead us on. She has every love for my father and mother. She is much perturbed if my father is a little late from his office. My parents love my grandmother very much. They take every care of her. I love my grandmother so much.

11 My Best Friend / My Neighbour

(KHI Board Science: 2007 ; General: 2007)

My best friend is Ali. He is my neighbour too. Everybody likes him for his good habits and personality/character. He always remains neat and clean. His clothes, his speech and his manners, are clean and ideal. He always speaks the truth. He fulfils his promises. People trust him. He is very cooperative. He is ready to help anyone who is in trouble. He is hardworking. He never wastes his time. He is good at studies. He studies regularly with full concentration. He stands first in class every year. He also plays sports daily. He likes both cricket and hockey.

Ali is obedient to his parents. He loves his younger brothers and sisters. I am thankful to God that I have got such a good friend. A good friend is a blessing of God. I am proud of Ali, who is my best friend and neighbour.

Ali is a boy of good character. He never tells lies. He has high moral values. He does not quarrel with people. He does not treat anybody badly. He respects his elders and loves his youngers. All these good qualities make Ali everyone's ideal. He is very cooperative and has good feelings and sympathy for his fellowmen.

12 Our National Hero / My Favourite Personality

Major Raja Abdul Aziz Bhatti is one of our national heroes. In 1965 war he fought against the enemy to defend our beloved country. He fought for six days and nights without rest and laid down his

life in the defence of his country. For this heroic act he was awarded the highest military award of Pakistan, Nishan-e-Haider.

Aziz Bhatti was born in 1928 in Hongkong. He received his early education in Hongkong. In 1945, he came back to his country.

He first joined the Air Force and in 1948, he became a cadet of Pakistan Military Academy at Kakul. He did very well at the Academy and was awarded the Sword of Honour and the Norman Medal. He joined the 6th Punjab Regiment as a commissioned officer. On the morning of 6 September, 1965, he received orders to proceed to the front at once. The enemy was fully equipped with guns and tanks. Major Aziz Bhatti, with his small company, not only stopped the enemy advancing but also pushed him back.

On 11 September, this great hero of the nation was martyred. He performed his duty bravely and left his name to be remembered for ever. He is my ideal personality. I will ever remember him for his valour and sacrifice.

Narrative Essays

A narrative essay is focused on telling a story. It includes important details about the incident. When writing a narrative essay, include details about:

- When and where the event / incident took place
- What happened, include significant details
- What is its significance at the personal, societal, country level

Here are some tips that can help you write a good narrative essay.

MORE!!!

Choose a story that is about the topic or theme that you have been assigned or you have chosen.

Describe the setting in a manner that the readers feel that they are seeing the scene.

Describe the important characters such that people can see them.

Make an outline of the plot before you begin — this will help you put your story in order.

Usually, the third person, i.e., he, she, it, is used along with common and proper nouns (boy, Salim).

Make sure your theme is clearly illustrated in the story.

In narrative essays, it is important to keep the readers' interest/ attention.

Your narrative essays should leave the reader with something to think about.

(KHI Board Science: 2018, 13-09; General: 2008, 09, 13)

I, my brother, my cousin and my two friends, Ali and Tahir made a programme to have a picnic on the seaside, so on last Sunday we went on a picnic. We woke up early in the morning and after breakfast we got ready to go to Manora. We hired a taxi and reached Manora at 10 o'clock. From there we went to the island of Manora by a boat. There, we selected a place rather less crowded. In front of us there was an open sea. We spread our mat and sat over it. Putting our eatables on the mat we jumped into the sea as the water of the sea was attracting us. We swam in the sea till 1 o'clock. Then we came out of the sea. We changed our clothes and sat on the mat to eat our lunch. The eatable items were delicious.

After lunch we relaxed for two hours. Again we went in the sea water and spent two hours in the sea, swim and playing. At 5 o'clock we came out of the sea. We enjoyed a lot so we were happy. We snapped some photographs on the sea shore. We took cups of tea with biscuits. After fifteen minutes we got ready to get back our homes. The atmosphere and the weather was pleasant. We hired a taxi and moved to our homes.

This picnic we remember still.

14 An Exciting Cricket Match

(KHI Board Science: 2007, 11, 15)

Few months back, I watched an exciting and interesting cricket match on television. It was being played between India and Pakistan. Pakistan won the toss but invited India to play first. In the beginning India showed a very aggressive play. At the loss of one wicket the Indian team scored 130 runs, but soon it lost its confidence and five wickets fell down one by one and the Indian team could score only 25 runs. After that the India team could reach upto 182 runs all out.

Then Pakistan started batting. Pakistan scored 118 at the loss of one wicket, but it started to play very aggressively and at the loss of three wickets the Pakistan team scored 183 runs and was winner of the match. The Pakistan audience were so happy, they were applauding the Pakistan players at their good performance.

I still remember this match, as it was an exciting cricket match between the two traditionally rival teams.

Annual School Function / An Unforgettable School Function

(KHI Board Science: 2019)

There are so many functions held in our school. But the prize distribution function of my school was a memorable one. The whole school was cleaned and white washed. The whole school was decorated with colourful buntings, mottoes and drawings. The school compound was decorated with different flowers. A big shamiana was set up in compound. A special stage was made with carpets on it. The stage was decorated with buntings and flowers. The function began at 11 a.m. The chief guest was the director of schools, who arrived in time. The Principal and the teachers welcomed him. A guard of honour was given to him by the boy scouts.

The programme began. There were songs, dramas, mimicry, jokes and a fancy dress show. The fancy dress show made people laugh again and again. Everyone enjoyed the students items and praised their efforts.

(KHI Board General: 2007, 10)

I can never forget the day when our house was on fire. There were only three children at home. My younger sister and brother and I. Father had gone to the office and mother to the market. She always locked us before going out. All of a sudden there was a short circuit in our house. The wires were burning. There was smoke in the room and loud sounds of explosion.

We started crying and shouting for help. There was a large ventilator in our room. A man jumped into our room from there. He switched off the main meter. He started putting out the fire with the help of blankets.

Our whole room was filled with smoke. Soon mother returned. A lot of people had gathered in front of our house. Thank God, we were all safe. It was a horrible accident in my life. We were almost shocked. We did not know what to do. There was only one door in our house and that was locked from outside. We could not escape from there. We thought that we would burn alive. People told my mother not to lock the children again. My mother agreed with them. She said that she would not leave the children alone in the future.

We experienced the hottest day of our life last year. It was the month of July. There was no wind. There was no electricity. As the time passed, the temperature kept increasing. There was nothing we could do. There was no cold water. The radio said it was the hottest temperature recorded in 20 years. The temperature had risen to 50°C. All of us felt restless. However, black clouds started gathering on the sky around 3 o'clock. By 4 o'clock, it started raining. The hot day had changed into a rainy day. The temperature fell down. The wind also started blowing very fast. We were very happy. Now we were enjoying ourselves in the rain.

We never thought that the hottest day of our life could also become a very fine day too. Mother made very tasty sandwiches. We had them with tea and enjoyed ourselves.

By chance our cousins came to our home. We played with them and enjoyed ourselves. They had brought icecream for us. All of us had the icecream. It was marvellous to have icecream on a rainy day. It rained so heavily that the temperature fell suddenly. Besides, the wind was blowing very fast. The hottest day of our life had become the most pleasant day of our life and people were happy and satisfied.

(KHI Board Science: 2014)

The day was cloudy. I woke up late as I did not have anything to do. I was free as I had already appeared at the examination of class IX and was waiting for the result.

All of sudden I heard that the Karachi S.S.C. Board had announced the result of class IX and I had cleared all the papers. I jumped with joy, I was very happy. I rushed to buy sweets for my family, friends, relatives and neighbours. I distributed sweets among them. Everybody was congratulating me. I was very happy.

All of sudden my mother awoken me. Why are you shouting? Wake up. I woke up. Where are

sweets? What about my result? My mother was wondering. What are you telling? Then I told her that I was seeing a dream. In the dream I saw that I had passed the examination of class IX. My mother wondered and said not yet any results had been announced however, day after tomorrow it was expected. I was little bit shocked. However I had to wait more two days for the happiest day in my life. Now I could relax, sleep for long time, play and spend time with friends.

19

A Journey by Train

Last month I and my two friends Ayaz and Fawad decided to visit Sukkar. We got three railway tickets booked. At 11 o' clock we reached the railway station, the train was leaving at 12 o' clock for Lahore. As we had got three berths reserved so we did not face any trouble.

Exact at 12 o' clock the train left the platform. The train passed by the last railway station of Karachi at twelve past thirty in the noon and entered the suburbs of Karachi. At 2 o' clock we reached Jhampir. It is a beautiful green village of Sindh. Jhampir is famous for dates producing. Many dates gardens you can see there. From here a road goes to Thatta, Sajawal and Makli.

We ate our lunch there, we also ate some dates grown there. After half an hour the train started to move to Hyderabad. Our train reached Hyderabad at 3 o' clock. In the way we could see small villages. We could see also desert. At Hyderabad our train stopped for thirty minutes. We took tea and biscuit there at the station.

At 11 o' clock the train reached Sukkar. During our journey. Our train passed through Kotri bridge over the Indus, we were excited because the river was flowing at its full capacity. We stayed three days at Sukkar and visited this city of Sindh. We enjoyed a lot.

20

A Horrible Road Accident

Road accidents are common in our city. But last week the road accident that took place near Sarah-e-Faisal was much horrible that the scene of that accident could not vanished from my mind.

I was travelling by a wagon. All of sudden I heard a loud sound it seemed that two vehicles would have struck and indeed this very happened. There was hue and cry, no body knew that how many persons had been injured or killed. There was traffic jam, my wagon also stopped. At the crossing a public bus had struk a wagon which was coming from the opposite road. Many people rushed to the accident place. The traffic police also reached there. Immediately ambulances of the welfare organizations also reached there to rescue the victims of the accident. They took them to the near hospitals. Thanks God the casualty was less, only one man died at the spot. However, the number of injured passengers was high, eight passengers were seriously injured who were taken to the hospitals. The drivers were arrested for their slackness and careless driving.

I was thinking why the drivers drive their vehicle so recklessly! Why they don't think that the lives of the passengers and also of their own are valuable. Alas they avoid driving hurriedly.

21

A Visit to a Zoological Garden / Flower Festival

(KHI Board Science: 2016)

My younger brother was asking me to go with him to see the zoological garden in the city. After the examination I could spare time to go to the zoo with him.

On last Sunday I and my brother went to the zoological garden of Karachi. We reached there at

5 o' clock. After buying tickets we entered the main gate. The first cage was of the monkeys. There was a big crowd. We also went to this cage. The people were enjoying the actions of the monkeys. We also enjoyed. After that cage we went to the cage of the lions. There were two lions in the cage. They were big, strong and healthy. Having seen them my brother got little bit frightened. They were African lions which had been donated by the Kenyan government. Visiting the lions' cage we moved to the cage of snakes. We saw a big dragon. It seems very poisonous, danger and awful. Then we visited cages of other animals, we saw jungle cats, crocodiles, ducks, deers, peacocks and other animals.

We also saw a big elephant in the zoo. My brother wanted to ride it. He rode and enjoyed a lot. But for that we had to pay 200 rupees. At last we went to a restaurant there we ate burgers and ice-cream. At 7 o' clock we got out of the zoo. It was a pleasant visit to a zoological garden. We enjoyed a lot. On the same day flower festival was also being celebrated there. Different organizations were participating. Flowers of different colours, sizes and kinds had been presented for exhibitions. People showed great interest in the festival as it was interesting and informative.

Compare and Contrast Essays

22

Summer and Winter

The four seasons are like a decoration to the earth, it makes nature more beautiful. The habits and style of life change as the seasons vary. Summer is the hottest season whereas winter is the coldest one. People will carry out their daily activities based on the weather. These are a few ways of how different seasons affect people's daily routines in terms of their food, clothes, and activities.

First of all, the type of food people consume varies during summer and winter. In summer, because the weather is so hot, people would prefer to eat cold food like ice-cream to keep them cold. However, during winter, people will prefer to eat hot and spicy food which would help them to keep themselves warm like hot soup, tea, coffee, and more.

Besides that, people's way of dressing also tends to change because of the different seasons. During winter, people will normally wear thick and warm clothes which are the most appropriate attire to keep themselves not so cold. On the other hand, during summer people will usually wear casual clothes like jeans, t-shirts, shorts, and sleeveless tops to keep them not so warm.

There are also different types of activities that can be carried out during summer and winter. Summer is the time where people will usually go travelling and it is also the best weather for outdoor activities. It is easier to go sight-seeing in summer compared to winter. In a conclusion, food, clothes, and activities of people will be affected by the different seasons. Summer and winter have their characteristics. People have a different style of life during these two seasons. They enjoy the hottest of summer and the coldest of winter.

23

Pet and Wild Animals

When I compare and contrast pet and wild animals, I see many differences and similarities between them. Firstly, pet animals are dependent on humans, but wild animals are independent and self-sufficient. Most pet animals are kept in houses, farms, or safe places. Therefore, they are dependent on humans. Humans give food, supplies, and care for their animals daily. Unlike pet animals, wild animals are independent and they can live in natural habitats without human

interaction. Most of them are fast and skillful enough to hunt and gather their food.

Secondly, pet animals are mostly trained, but wild animals are fierce and dangerous. People can train their animals by walking or exercising with them. They also can pat and show that they love their animals. But, wild animals are very fierce. They kill and eat other weak animals for their supper, and sometimes fight with other animals. So, wild animals are very dangerous and ferocious.

In conclusion, pets and wild animals are very different when comparing their characters, what they eat, how they get their food, and the places they live. However, there are many similarities too. Even though wild animals are independent, they are also protected by their own family. Therefore, both pets and wild animals are protected. Both animals either eat meat, grass, or foods that people buy for them. Some of the pet and wild animals produce food for people, entertain them like in circuses or zoos, ride people on their backs and some unique animals give knowledge to people when they learn about the animals. Therefore, both pet and wild animals have many similarities and differences between them.

24

City and Village Life

Life in both villages and cities has its plus points and problems. One is quite different from each other. Traditionally, Pakistan is a predominantly rural country. Though Pakistan is mainly a land of villages, there are many cities as well in the country. Life in these big cities is quite different from life in a village. In big cities, there are more educational facilities. The big colleges even universities are available. There are also a very large number of schools both government and private in the big city. These facilities do not exist in small towns and villages.

Cities also provide sufficient medical facilities. Almost in every city, there are good hospitals in which the poor get free medicines and treatment. Many qualified doctors are also there to serve the sick and the suffering. Indeed lack of such medical facilities is the main drawback of villages.

Cities also provide many opportunities for amusement and recreation. In every city, there are a number of restaurants and hotels. There are also many parks and gardens where we can enjoy the best natural beauty. Villages are always lacking such facilities.

The most important advantages of cities are the availability of huge employment opportunity. They are centers of trade and commerce. Persons with different qualifications can easily find jobs to suit them. In villages, employment is available mostly in farming. Due to farming, only seasonal jobs are available to a large population in villages.

It is fact villages are always natural due to be their self-creation by nature. On the other hand, most cities are manmade. Hence the natural environment of villages is their main attraction. In villages only we may have the charms of birds and flowers or the beauty of the day-dawn.

City life is extremely unhealthy due to air pollution, water pollution, and noise pollution. The people are not getting fresh air to breathe or the clear sky to enjoy the sunshine. Also, food in the cities is dirty, unhealthy, and adulterated. The villages are very much away from such drawbacks.

In the city, life is very costly. People have to live with a lot of pomp and show. A simple life like in the villages is almost impossible in the city. Besides, the cities are over-crowded and it is very hard for people to get suitable accommodation. People in the city do not have much sympathy with others even with neighbors. The sympathy and close interdependence that is marked in the village's life is entirely lacking in the city.

Thus, life in villages and cities presents two contrasting pictures. There are positive as well as negative aspects of both. Therefore it is up to the individual to make the most of it irrespective of the rural or urban setting that one lives in. I, myself, like to live in a village in the close vicinity of a modern city so that I can enjoy the pleasures both of the city and the village.



One cannot choose everything in life. The same is true for neighbours. It is simply a matter in the hands of God. If one is lucky enough, one may be blessed with neighbours who are ready to help and share problems and can be depended upon in times of need.

On the other hand, some of us have to put up with a bunch of trouble-makers-neighbours who have nothing better to do than to be too interested in what is going on at the house next who are always eager to create an unpleasant scene or commotion.

The truth is one cannot isolate oneself completely from the people around. As our neighbours are the people dwelling closest to us, we cannot naturally avoid communicating and socializing with them. Good neighbours are those that are ready to lend you a hand when you are faced with a problem or a dilemma.

Cooperation and helpful interaction show not only how supportive neighbours can foster a friendly environment but also lay the foundation for a better society. Good neighbours are always there at such times to provide comfort and assurance.

On the contrary, uncooperative and selfish neighbours can directly make the neighbourhood an accursed place to live in. Worst are those that can never keep to their business and simply love violating the privacy of the people's lives. You can often find them peeping from their windows or loitering by their front doors with a hungry gleam in their eyes. Keeping a lookout for everything that might be happening next door. Such people are a great nuisance for everyone. Sometimes neighbours can refuse to cooperate and break the unity of the neighbourhood.

In extreme cases, neighbours, for what would seem a trivial mistake, get ready to shake their fists, and create an uproar. Often misunderstandings cause neighbours to view each other as sworn enemies. This is generally mistaken as a sign of total disrespect for social norms and obligations.

One cannot do away with one's neighbours however bad they may be. At the same time, one cannot live without trustworthy neighbours who would be concerned enough to help in times of distress. Each one of us must ensure that we act as good neighbours. It would do good to remember that we should do unto our neighbours just as we would expect them to do unto us.

(KHI Board General: 2007)

Science has made great progress today. Inventions are being made all the time. We are living in luxury at present. The credit goes to science. Life has become very comfortable and easy due to wonderful machines which are common nowadays, e.g. household things include microwave ovens, deep freezers, fridges, grinders, blenders, mobiles, etc. Various medical devices, e.g. sphygmomanometers (blood pressure monitors), glucometers, (sugar test devices), weighing scales, etc., are in common use. Travelling has become very fast. Means of communication have advanced very much. The world has turned to a small village. You can talk to anyone anywhere anytime. All these wonders of science are due to the great advancement in education and research. Scientists work day and night in doing research and making inventions. People benefit from their research. Science has brought revolution in life. It has changed the style of life. People have adapted themselves to the scientific inventions. New inventions replace the older ones. The older inventions are discarded. For instance, people once used to watch black and white TV now they watch only colour TV. Our life is luxurious and comfortable today due to the blessings and wonders of science.

27

Importance of Health / Health is Wealth Importance of Games

(KHI Board Science: 2018, 16, 15, 13 ; General: 2013, 16)

Health is a great blessing of God. We should take great care of our health. We can maintain health if we follow some basic principles. They include cleanliness, proper diet and proper sleep. Above all, health is related with physical exercise.

Children play most of the time. It is their physical exercise. However, the youth neither play games nor take exercise. They become inactive and lazy. There are many simple exercises which we can do easily. For example, walking is a very good exercise. We can spare some time for walking daily. We can start playing some sports as well. A person who is healthy, can work hard. Unhealthy people become a burden on others.

We should have good habits. Like eating nutritious food, taking bath everyday, cutting our nails regularly, brushing teeth twice a day etc. We should avoid doing all such things that are injurious to health. Health is wealth. Everybody likes healthy people. Take exercise every day and keep yourself healthy forever.

There are some emotional aspects related to good health. We should avoid being emotional. We should not be angry with people. Similarly tension and anxiety are bad for good health. A person who leads a contented life is a happy person. He is not envious of others. We should, therefore, always try to be happy. Happy people are mostly healthy people.

28

My Aim in Life / A Ambition of My Life

(KHI Board Science: 2010, 12 ; General: 2007, 08, 09, 11)

I want to become a doctor. It is my aim in life. Biology is my most favourite subject. I have a natural talent for health sciences. I am very interested in learning about diseases, their causes and their treatment. I read a lot about them. I borrow books from libraries and sometimes I buy good books on biology.

I want to become a very devoted doctor. I cannot see people ill. I think that I can serve people best by becoming a doctor. My parents are also very happy with my ambition. They are very cooperative and encouraging.

I am working hard to get my aim in life. My aim is to serve people. I am sure that God will also help me. Our country also needs doctors. Many good doctors go abroad for better salaries and facilities. I will serve my countrymen.

To get an aim in life means a great devotion and dedication to it. Only those people are successful in life, who really work hard. If someone makes an aim in life, he should focus on it. When we focus on one thing, we can easily achieve our goal. Hard work never goes waste. I am sure to get my aim in life because I am working very hard for it.

Besides working hard, I always pray to God to help me becoming a good doctor.

29

Importance of Discipline in Life

(KHI Board Science: 2019 ; General: 2012)

Discipline means to keep in order. If things are placed in order, they look good and are easy to

use. If they are not in order they look messy and the user feels trouble to use. Likewise if the people of a country are disciplined their country and society look good and civilized, life in such a country is easy, comfortable and ideal. If the people are indisciplined, their country seems messy and uncivilized, ultimately their life is disturbed, unsafe and to some extent miserable.

In the beginning it is hard to adopt discipline but if once adopted it can change life of the people it can bring positive changes in that society.

Queue making, avoiding spitting here and there, throwing garbage in dustbins, Speaking the truth, proper measuring, dealing matters honestly, hard working and caring are the good qualities which are developed by discipline. These qualities of the citizen make a society ideal, civilized and peaceful. Therefore importance of discipline is obvious.

30

Pollution in Karachi

(KHI Board Science: 2019)

Pollution is one of the major issues causing concern not only in Pakistan but across the world. The technological advancement and speedy development since independence has come at a great environmental cost. Karachi is the eighth-biggest city of the world. It has a population of about 20 million people. Its increasing population brings great problems. As it is an industrial and metropolitan city, the problem of pollution here is far greater than other cities of Pakistan. Karachi is among the five most-polluted cities in the world. The authorities concerned have failed to overcome this problem. The various forms of pollution (air pollution, noise pollution, water pollution, domestic and industrial waste, vehicular pollution etc.) have increased in Karachi which has caused widespread environmental and health problems. Air pollution, lack of proper waste management infrastructure and degradation of water bodies are the major environmental issues in Karachi.

Various causes are responsible for pollution in Karachi. The pressure and haphazard growth of the population is deteriorating the environment. There has been highly haphazard and unplanned development of industries and factories.

There has been a huge rise in the vehicular population, aggravating traffic congestion and increasing air and noise pollution. There has also been an ever-increasing number of diesel vehicles plying on the roads, which are largely responsible for the air pollution. There has been no proper technology or methods to treat solid, liquid, waste water, industrial and hospital wastes in the city. There has been too much dependence on fossil fuels like coal-fired power plants, improper use of energy in buildings and the excessive use of biomass for cooking and heating, etc.

Pollution in Karachi is a perpetual problem which needs to be looked upon as a serious issue not only by the Government but also by the citizens of the city.

It is the duty of every citizen to think in a broader perspective to control pollution. We really don't want our future generations to live in an unhealthy environment in Karachi. If each one of us takes a pledge to do our bit for our environment, I am sure Karachi will be a better place to live in. Even a small step counts.

31

Advantages and Disadvantages of Internet

(KHI Board Science: 2012, 15)

Internet has advantages and also disadvantages, which are:

- Internet is a big source of knowledge. If the user wants to get knowledge about anything, just clicking a button he can get it. If you study a book, you can get knowledge of only a specific subject but

if you click a button of computer, you can get knowledge of any subject.

- Internet helps in quick exchange of news and current affairs.
- Internet has made the world trade so fast.
- Internet relates people. People of different parts of the world can be connected through internet.

- Through internet people including children can be trained for a particular field or profession. So it is a source of training.

- Internet works as a media of publicity and advertising agency.

Demerits of internet:

- Students waste their precious time on useless chatting and browsing on websites and internet, which is nothing but wastage of time.
- Immoral materials and talks on internet badly affect the minds of immature boys and girls, they destroy their ethic and morality. Besides glamour, fashion, immoral and violent films are also shown on internet which leave bad impacts upon the minds of young and immature boys and girls.
- Sitting long time before computer or laptop for browsing and chatting, the boys and girls get so involved that they forget their lunch and dinners and consequently lose their health. Computer and laptop produce rays which are harmful to eyes and skin.

32

The Book I Like the Most / My Favourite Book

(KHI Board Science: 2012)

So far so many book I have studied and I liked them but the book I like the most is the Holy Quran. The Quran is a divine book. Allah revealed it through the Prophet Hazrat Muhammad (peace be upon him). The subject of the Quran is 'Man'. This is a true book and has been revealed for the guidance of man.

In this book, code of life has been described. If man acts upon the teaching of the Quran, he can lead an ideal life in the world and a successful life here after. Following the principle mentioned in this book a man can please God.

Since the Quran is in Arabic language so I faced a much trouble to understand it. But now as I have learnt Arabic language it is easy to understand the Quran.

I recite the Quran daily and feel pleasure and satisfaction. I try to understand the teachings given in the Quran. This is indeed not merely a religious book but also a code of life. Following the instructions given in this book we can make our lives ideal.

33

Importance of Computer Studies

(KHI Board Science: 2018)

Computer Studies in schools plays important role in students career development. Computer with the internet is the most powerful device that students can use to learn new skills and more advanced version of current lessons. Schools are around the globe teaching student's basics of computers and internet.

The uses of computers and internet are growing day by day at high speed. In almost all business, companies, schools using computers for various official operations. New tech tools are coming that helping students to learn better. Computers help students to draw the creativity on the computer.

Computers and the internet not only help students to explore creativity and imagination but also help to understand technologies. Students are future leaders for any nation. Current school students are future doctors, engineers, entrepreneurs. So, for the education development, it is really

important to teach students in schools about computers, the internet and its benefits.

As you know that many developed countries are providing computer applications and high-quality IT infrastructure for schools. The goal of technological education is to make students better thinkers, creative and confident. Some countries are more powerful and dominating developing nations because they are providing high-quality technological tools, IT infrastructure in schools and colleges. People in developed countries are taking initiative in almost everything.

If you compare this to Pakistan our people here are busier in talking about politics and corruption instead of doing something becoming better than yesterday. The level of computer education in Pakistan is very low.

What we need to do is to empower and educate our kids and students. We need to educate them to become more powerful, creative and confident that they can lead Pakistan. Let's first MAKE PAKISTAN then MADE IN PAKISTAN.

34

Use of Mobile Phones/Uses and Abuses of Smart Phone

(KHI Board Arts: 2017,16 ; Commerce: 2014,12,09)

Mobile phones have revolutionized our lives since many years. Mobiles phones provide us the opportunity to talk with our friends and relatives with one touch. They have redefined connectivity and communication. But high-tech smart phones have also turned out to be handy devices for anti-social elements. Smart phones have their uses and misuses.

Uses of Smart Phones: The wireless connection all across the world is one of the major uses of smart phones. Smart phones provide quick internet connection in any place around the globe. We can make video calls to our love ones. All of the smart phones have special features like maps etc. If we are new somewhere and have lost our way we can get help using our smart phone. There are numbers of applications like calculator, torch, calendar etc in almost every smart phone. One can get help from these applications whenever needed. We can call or chat with our friends or family members for hours with the introduction of a number of worthy packages and WiFi based messengers for us to avail.

Misuses of Smart Phones: On one side if smart phones have some advantages, there are some drawbacks of this gadget. It is a fact that parents allow their kids to use smart phones at an early age. However, unfortunately many times it has been observed that these children do not make use of it in a proper manner. They spend hours talking to their friends on social media, not for good purposes but to gossip and thus waste their time. They prefer indoor games like those in the mobiles rather than the outdoor games. This can impact negatively on their mind and physical fitness.

Some of the common misuses of smart phones are cameras loaded in all smart phones. These cameras can be used to take pictures of women and innocent children; these pictures are then usually morphed, maneuvered and circulated on the Internet and can be used for any negative purpose. Texting can also be used to misuse or track people. Smart phones have been known to be used by corrupt elements. Burglars and criminals can plan out a number of bad activities using mobile phones.

Thus smart phones, if on one side, area blessing then on the other side they can create disasters in our lives and society. It is always advisable to make use of smart phones for positive and useful purposes and not for negative activities.

35

Piles of Garbage in Populated Area

Poor management and negligence that lead to our cities looking like big garbage islands. Garbage stays around us in the form of heaps at the roadsides, dumps at the parks, wall sides of

schools and hospitals and in the rain drainages.

Waste management is essential in today's society. Due to an increase in population, the generation of waste is getting doubled day by day. Moreover, the increase in waste is affecting the lives of many people.

For instance, people living in slums are very close to the waste disposal area. Therefore there are prone to various diseases. Their lives are in danger. In order to maintain a healthy life, proper hygiene and sanitation are necessary. Consequently, it is only possible with proper waste management.

Waste management is the managing of waste by disposal and recycling of it. Moreover, waste management needs proper techniques keeping in mind the environmental situations. For instance, there are various methods and techniques by which the waste is disposed of. Some of them are Landfills, Recycling, Composting, etc. Furthermore, these methods are much useful in disposing of the waste without causing any harm to the environment.

Waste produces a lot of bad odour which is harmful to the environment. Moreover, Bad odour is responsible for various diseases in children. As a result, it hampers their growth.

Waste is the major cause of environmental degradation. For instance, the waste from industries and households pollute our rivers. Therefore waste management is essential so that the environment may not get polluted.

36

A Family Wedding

A celebration in a family gives pleasure to all the members of the family. Friends and relatives also attend the occasion and share the pleasure. I drew immense pleasure when the marriage ceremony of my cousin was held. It was performed on 25th of the last month.

My cousin was the first child to be married in the family. Her marriage was celebrated with great enthusiasm. Preparations for the marriage started one month before the celebration. My parents, uncle and aunt spent a whole week making necessary purchases. The whole house was re-painted.

Many kinds of gold ornaments were bought for my cousin. Several clothes were also purchased for all the family members and relatives. My cousin herself chose clothes for her. Invitation cards were printed and were sent to friends and relatives.

There was a great excitement and joy among us to see the preparations for the wedding celebration in our family. Decorations were made on the day before the marriage ceremony. An electrician with his four assistants decorated the house with a number of multi-coloured electric lamps.

The space was meant for the marriage feast. Rows of tables were arranged on three sides. The tables were covered with white sheets of cloth. On one side chairs were arranged for the guests. Sweets were made and kept for the guests.

The feast on the date of marriage was very delicious. My parents were very busy. My aunt and uncle were also terribly engaged in different works. Our relatives were making our house a noisy place. Two cooks were engaged to prepare the dinner for the guests and the bridegroom party members. Cold-drinks were ready. Large quantities of fresh fruits were also arranged for the guests.

My father and uncle stood at the gate to receive the guests. The barat arrived at nine in the evening. First, the guests were served sweets and cold drinks. Many guests had brought different gifts for my cousin who was the bride. The groom was seated on the stage with thick garlands around his neck.

After Nikah and dinner it was the time to RUKHSATI. We cried when my cousin parted with us and went to her new house.

Letter / Application / Email Writing

Letter writing is an essential skill. Despite the prevalence of emails and text messages, everyone has to write letters at some point. Letters of complaint, job application, thank you letters, letters requesting changes or making suggestions....the list goes on and on.

There are two types of letters.....formal letters and informal letters. Formal letters are different to informal letters. We write formal letters to a bank, a doctor, the local council, a newspaper editor, your landlord or a company. We write informal letters to friends and family.

Formal Letters

First, individually read the following letters to the editor complaining about a problem/issue. Note the layout and the vocabulary, style and tone used:

(1)

August 19, 2018.

The Editor,
Daily Dawn,
Karachi.

Subject: Traffic Accidents

Dear Sir,

In Pakistan hundreds of people die every year in road accidents. The media and the government focus a lot on terrorism, although traffic accidents are more common than acts of terrorism.

The main reasons for accidents are: poor conditions of vehicles, violations of traffic rules, use of mobile phones while driving, underage children driving, bad road conditions, and dim or no street lights.

The government should take effective steps, like creating awareness among people through the media and training the traffic police, so that the number of accidents is reduced.

Concerned Citizen.
Multan.

(2)

August 12, 2018.

The Editor,
Express Tribune,
Karachi.

Subject: Banning Plastic Bags

Dear Madam,

Plastic bags cause land destruction because plastic can turn good fertile land into barren land. This is because, according to scientists, plastic takes more than 500 years to break down in a landfill.

Moreover, scientists have also found that plastic bags can be a source of deadly diseases such as cancer, birth defects, immune damages and asthma. According to the Minister of climate change, more than 55 billion plastic shopping bags are being used in Pakistan and their use is going up every year by about 15%.

The government should conduct surveys to see how much damages are caused to the environment and people's health by plastic bags. Steps should then be taken to create awareness among the people about loss of fertile land for future generation and the health risks in using plastic bags. Moreover, laws should be passed to reduce the use of plastic bags to an essential minimum.

Munir Altaf
Turbat

01

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper telling him/her about frequent breakdown/ load shedding/ shortage of electricity in the city.

(Karachi Board Science: 2017, 14, 09 ; Arts: 2017, 13 ; Commerce Private: 2012)

148 MNP Road,
Examination Hall,
Karachi.
July 15, 20 __

To,

The Editor,
The Daily ABC,
ST Street,
Karachi.

Subject: Frequent power breakdown / failure /load shedding of electricity

Dear Sir,

Through your esteemed newspaper I wish to draw the attention of the concerned authorities towards the frequent breakdown/ load shedding of electricity (energy crises) in the city. This situation has greatly disturbed the daily life of the people in the city in general and particularly, the students who are preparing for the examinations.

Besides disturbing the academic and social activities of the people, breakdown/ load shedding of electricity has also hampered the industrial process and development.

I, therefore, in the best interest of the people, request the concerned authorities to look immediately into the matter.

Thanks,

Yours faithfully,
(Signature)
X. Y. Z

02

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper telling him/her about the short water supply of water in your locality.

(Karachi Board Science: 2019 ; Commerce: 2010)

148 MNP Road,
Examination Hall,
Karachi.
July 15, 20 __

To,

The Editor,
The daily ABC,

Sharah-e-Badar
Karachi.

Subject: Short / Irregular Supply of Water in XYZ area / city

Dear Sir,

I wish to draw the attention of the concerned authorities towards the problem of short and irregular supply of water in our locality/city. The inhabitants of the area/city have been facing this problem for the last two months. Instead of our repeated request, the problem has not so far been solved. To meet water requirement people have to get water from the tankers. The quality of water supplied by them is low and unhygienic, which has caused abdominal diseases in the area/city.

I, therefore, request the concerned authorities to solve the problem and ensure the proper and regular supply of water in the area/city.

Thanks,

Yours faithfully,
(Signature)
X. Y. Z

03

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper telling him/her about the problem of beggary in your city.

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

To,

The Editor,
The Daily ABC,
EFG Road,
Karachi.

Subject: The Problem of Beggary in the City

Dear Sir,

Through your esteemed newspaper, I want to draw the attention of the concerned authorities, particularly the police towards the problem of beggary in Karachi.

Usually the number of the baggers in the city is not less but it increases awfully particularly on the occasion of Eid. These beggars sometime force the people to give them alms. In the market-places, bazars, bus stops, near the mosques, anywhere you go, they are available. For alms, the female beggars enter the houses quietly without calling out at the door.

They are a black-mark of our society. These beggars not only beg but are found involved also in some anti-social activities like, theft, robbery, kidnapping etc.

I, therefore request the concerned authorities to check this social evil. The government should provide them jobs so that they could earn their livelihood in a respectable manner.

Thanks,

Yours faithfully,
(Signature)
X. Y. Z



(Karachi Board Commerce Private: 2012)

148 MNP Road,
Examination Hall,
Karachi.
July 15, 20

04

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper telling him/her about the problem of traffic jams in the city.

(Karachi Board Science: 2016 ; Commerce: 2015, 2011)

148 MNP Road,
Examination Hall,
Karachi.

July 15, 20 __

To,

The Editor,
The Daily ABC,
KLJ Road,
Karachi.

Subject: Complaint against Traffic-jam

Dear Sir,

Through your esteemed newspaper I want to draw the attention of the concerned authority, especially the traffic police.

Karachi is one of the biggest cities of the world. It is a cosmopolitan city but the quality of traffic system city does not seem of world standard. There is much mis-management in the traffic system and needs to be corrected and to be made good.

Due to lack of proper traffic system, the citizens have to face a lot of problems daily, particularly in working hours.

The value of time is accepted in the present world, and 'time is money' is its principle but due to traffic-jam, we have to waste our valuable time just waiting for clearance of the roads.

I, therefore request the concerned authorities to take action and remove hindrances in the way of a smooth traffic flow.

Thanks,

Yours faithfully,
(Signature)
X. Y. Z

05

Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper drawing the attention of the concerned authorities towards unsanitary condition in your locality.

(Karachi Board Commerce: 2016, 2008)

148 MNP Road,
Examination Hall,
Karachi.

July 15, 20 __

To,

The Editor,
The Daily ABC,
RTU Road,
Karachi.

Subject: Unsanitary Condition in ABC Area

Dear Sir,

There are sayings as 'A healthy nation consists on healthy citizens' and 'a healthy mind works

with a healthy body'. For this, besides balanced diets a healthy environment is also required. A healthy environment is that where there is a proper and regular system of cleanliness.

Unfortunately, it seems that no such system exists in our locality. Heaps of filth and waste materials welcome the comers in the locality as these are not removed so they are a big source of breeding flies. Moreover, no proper drainage system is found there, so dirty water spreads in the streets and stagnant water is centre of breeding mosquitoes. This unhygienic and poor sanitary condition is causing diseases in our locality.

I, therefore, request the concerned authorities to take immediate action in the interest of the public and to ensure cleanliness condition in our area.

Thanks,

Yours faithfully,
(Signature)
X. Y. Z

Applications

1. The **address** of the person to whom the letter is written.
2. **Greetings/Salutation:** Dear followed by the person's position or name.
3. The **body** of the letter stating the purpose clearly, along with the request, suggestion etc.
4. **Closing:** Any of the words like sincerely, yours truly, thank you, etc. can be used, written with a capital letter and followed by a comma.
5. **Signature** followed by the name of the writer and his position.

The Class Teacher

Class IX

ABC School

Karachi.

Dear Teacher,

I shall not be able to attend school today because I am suffering from high fever. Kindly allow me a day's leave.

I shall be obliged.

Sincerely,

Sara Khan

Student Class IX-A



01

Write a letter/application to your principal requesting him/her to allow your class to visit the Karachi Museum.

The Principal,

XYZ School,

Karachi.

Respected Sir / Madam

I beg to say that my class has been planning to visit the Karachi Museum. We, therefore, request you to kindly allow us to visit as it will enrich our knowledge about the history of our country.

Thanking you.

Your obedient pupils

Class IX – B



02

Write a letter/application to your class teacher requesting him/her for leave to look after your sick mother.

The Class Teacher,
Class IX-A
XYZ School,
Karachi.

Respected Teacher,

This is to request you for leave application owing to my mother's illness. My mother is suffering from severe illness and I have to go to hospital with her and look after her. For this reason I shall not be able to come to school for three days.

I shall be highly obliged if you will sanction me the leave.

Sincerely,
Abid Majeed
Student IX-A

September 20, 20__

03

Write an application to the headmaster/headmistress of your school requesting him/her to issue you a sports certificate for the events in which you took part.

The Headmaster/Headmistress
XYZ School,
Karachi.

(KHI Board Science: 2009 ; General: 2009)

Subject: Request to issue a sports certificate.

Respected Sir/Madam

I beg to say that I took part in the events held by the school during last three months. I, therefore, request you to kindly issue me sports certificate.

Thanking you,
May 11, 20__

Your obedient pupil
XYZ
Class IX, Sec C

04

Write an application to the headmaster/headmistress of your school requesting him/her to issue you a transfer certificate (T.C.).

(KHI Board Science: 2009, 10)

The Headmaster/Headmistress
XYZ High School,
Karachi

Subject: Request to issue a Transfer Certificate (T.C.).

Respected Sir/Madam

I beg to say that my father works in a government department. He has been transferred from Karachi to Lahore. Therefore, my family is shifting to Lahore next week.

I, therefore, request you to kindly issue me a transfer certificate so that I could get admission in any school there.



Thank you
May 13, 20 __

Your obedient pupil,
XYZ
Class IX, Sec B

05

Write an application to your Headmaster/Headmistress to grant you one week leave on account of your sister's marriage.

(KHI Board Science: 2006)

The Headmaster/Headmistress,
ABC School,
Karachi.

Subject: Request for one week leave

Respected Sir/Madam,

My sister's marriage ceremony is going to be held next week. I am the only brother of my sister. I will be busy at making arrangements for the marriage ceremony along with my parents.

There are so many things to do in connection with the marriage ceremony. I want to help my father in this arrangement so that his burden could be less.

Kindly grant me one week leave from October 10 to October 16.

Thanks.

October 5, 20 __
XYZ

Your obedient pupil

06

Write an application to the Principal/Headmaster/Headmistress of your school requesting him/her to allow your class to go on a picnic.

(KHI Board Science: 2016)

The Principal/Headmaster/Headmistress,
ABC School,
Karachi.

Subject: Permission of going on a picnic

Respected Sir/Madam,

We beg to say that our class has made a programme to go on a picnic at sea-side near Clifton on coming Friday.

Our class teacher will also accompany us. We, therefore, request you to kindly allow us to go on the same picnic.

Thanks.

May 15, 20 __

Your most obedient.
Students, Class X

Job Applications

How to write a job application?

- Begin your application with the person's name and organization.
- Use formal language, brief informative sentences and short paragraphs.
- Check your spelling, grammar and punctuation carefully.
- Follow the format given below.

Date

Name of recipient

Designation Name of Institution Name of city

Subject: Write the relevant subject of the application

Dear Sir/Madam,

First paragraph: Mention how you came to know about the job position and why you want to apply for it

Second Paragraph: Who are you, what have you done and why you think you are suitable for this position

Third Paragraph: Ask for due consideration of the application and request for a positive reply

Thanking You.

Yours sincerely,

Name of sender

Address of the sender

01

Write an application to apply for the vacancy of "subject teacher" in a school.

April 17, 20__
The Principal,
MNO School,
Karachi.

Subject: Application for the post of English Teacher

Dear Sir,

This is regarding to the job advertisement published in "Daily Mirror" dated 12th April 20__ for the vacancy of an English Teacher, I would like to apply for the post. I have 3 years of teaching experience in the English subject in Class-IX and Class-X. Also I am teaching in the ABC School for the last 2 years.

Since teaching is always my passion, I build a strong bonding relationship with the students to motivate them. I believe that my qualification and experience match your requirements.

I have attached my resume for your kind perusal. If you find my application suitable for your requirement, please feel free to contact me at the below contact detail.

Thank you for your time and consideration.

Yours sincerely,

Nadeem Bashir

English Teacher

A-567 Block 5

North Nazimabad,
Karachi.

Mob: 0897-567-2345

Enclosure: Resume – Nadeem Bashir

02 Write an application for the post of "laboratory assistant" in a school.

March 25, 20 __
The Principal,
XYZ School,
Karachi.

Subject: Job Application for Laboratory Assistant

Dear Sir,

Expressing my keenness and concern in your advertised vacancy for the post of Laboratory Assistant in your institute I come to write to you. I viewed the advertisement on "Daily CITY TIMES". I am glad to see, as I was seeking for the similar job since long time. I did my B.Sc from City University. I consider myself eligible as I do have experience of two years as a Laboratory Assistant. I have my studies in Science Subjects and have experience of laboratory work since much time.

I can manage and work upon all type of newest equipment's, knowing all the standard procedures and analyzing techniques. Recently, doing work as a lab assistant in EFG Model School and was looking to get a healthier opportunity by working with you people. You can look up my academic record enclosed along with my curriculum vitae. I am skilled person with devotion towards my work. I will be pleased to get a chance from you.

Waiting desperately for your response, and thanking you.

Warm Regards,

Maria Qamar

C-21 Lane No. 14 F.B. Area,

Karachi.

Mob: 0678-567-6789

03 Write an application for the post of "School Secretary".

October 01, 20 __
Mrs. Samina Qureshi
The Principal
PPA High School,
1840 Green Street
Karachi.

Subject: Application for a School Secretary position.

Dear Mrs. Qureshi,

I have recently seen your advert for a School Secretary and I would like to apply for this role.

I have completed an associate degree and hold three years of experience in this similar position. In these three years, I have assisted students, parents and the administrative department in solving their queries. It is my initiative and extra attention, that no request or query made to me is

unfulfilled.

I am not only skilled in operating fax machines and copiers, but can also do minor repair and maintenance work. In addition, I am trained to work with computer and any tailor-made applications and MS Office, including the Internet. I have maintained and recorded hundreds of records of students both in hard copies and soft copies. Besides these qualities, I can handle any types of multi-line phone system, assist in the daily operation of school, and multi-task.

The enclosed resume will explain my educational and employment history in great detail. I am confident of assisting your team in the daily operation of your school. You can reach me at 09876543367.

Thank you for your time.

Sincerely,

Miss Rubina Mansoor

B - 22 Gulshan-e-Liaquat,

Scheme 76

Karachi.

Enclosure: Resume

Informal Emails

Informal emails are written to family, friends and colleagues (people with whom we work). Emails are different from letters. They are usually brief and to the point. The language used in such emails is informal.

To: fareed.khan@gmail.com

Cc: sohail.ali@yahoo.com

Subject: sports day practice

Assalam-o-Alaikum.

Please let me know whether you will be going to school next Saturday for the Sports Day practice. If you are going, we can plan to go together. Otherwise, I'll have to ask my brother to go with me.

Iqbal.

To: adil88@ukmail.com

Cc:

Subject: maths homework

Dear Adil,

I am having some difficulty in solving some of the maths problems that our teacher gave us as holiday homework. I know you are very good at maths so I need your help. We can work at my place or yours, whatever is convenient for you. Please let me know the date and time so that I can plan my other things accordingly.

Regards

Kapoor

(3)

To: bapoor_sunil@hotmail.com

Cc:

Subject: maths homework

Sunil, I would be happy to help you with your maths homework. But, I also need your help with my science project. You always have such brilliant ideas! So, what do you say, we meet at 4 o'clock on Saturday, at your place. Tell your mother that I am looking forward to having the lovely savouries she makes for us whenever we sit down to study. See you on Saturday Bye.

Adil

(4)

To: shahidaj@gmail.com ; rozina.ladak@yahoo.com ; sita_kumari@gmail.com ;

diana77@hotmail.com ; mstauzia@hotmail.com ; chandalalmaal@gmail.com

Cc: saira_guddu@yahoo.com ; mahnaz_mumt@hotmail.com

Subject: wedding invitation

This is to inform all of you that Saira's brother is getting married on Sunday, October 15, 2017, at 1:00 pm. Since she is very busy, she has asked me to invite all of you to the wedding. We can all meet at my house by 11:00 am and then go to Saira's house together. Please let me know if you are planning to come or not, so that we do not wait for someone who is not coming.

I hope everyone can come. We will have great fun and Saira will be happy!

Nadia

01

Write an informal email to a class fellow suggesting something you can do together during your free time.

To: nichayee@hotmail.com

Cc:

Subject: free time activities

How are you? Today I want to discuss something we can do together during our free time. Let's read nice books and newspapers and discuss their contents. It can increase our knowledge and vocabulary also. Reading books can take us in another world and gives chance to live away from stress and worries.

What do you say?

Kamal



Summary Writing

A summary gives brief information about a topic. Here are some basic rules to follow when writing a summary of a given passage:

Do's	Don't's
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Include all the main ideas. • Select points from all the paragraphs. • Limit your summary by not including all the details. • Use simple, short sentences. • Link sections / points with appropriate linking words. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not reproduce sentences from the original text. • Do not repeat any point / idea. • Do not introduce new ideas. • Do not criticize. • Do not change anything given in the original text. • Do not give own opinion.

Write the summary of the following. Do not include any details.

(1) Moen-jo-Daro

Moen-jo-Daro or the 'Mound of the Dead' is one of the oldest cities in the world. Few people live there today, but 4,500 years ago, it was a large, busy city. It is in the province of Sindh, at a distance of 27 kilometres from Larkana, on the right bank of the Indus River. It was one of the early urban settlements in the world. The city was built around 2600 BC. It was one of the largest city-settlements of the Indus Valley Civilization of South Asia. The Indus Valley Civilization developed around 3000 BC, from the prehistoric Indus culture. At its height, the Indus Civilization spanned much of what is now Pakistan and North India.

Nobody knew anything about Moen-jo-Daro until 1922, when some villagers found pieces of old smooth pots and old bricks at the place where the city was discovered. These pieces of old pots and bricks were brought to Sir John Marshall, an English civil servant, whose work it was to look after historical remains. When he looked at them, he at once knew that they were pieces of very old pots. He decided that the area should be dug up as there might be remains of an old city.

So, the men started digging and as they dug, more and more such pieces came up, till there appeared, bit by bit, a city of straight roads, and well-built houses. When the people saw all this coming up, from what they had so far taken to be only mounds of clay and sand, they were very surprised and excited. Each house was made of large baked bricks and had a bathroom and servant quarters closed by. Covered drains ran beside the streets. Even the streets were made of baked bricks. There was a wide road in the middle of which had shops on both sides. This road continued on to the houses of the workmen.

The people of this city must have been great traders, with the river Indus so near and the sea within easy reach. The country side must have been fertile since wheat and cotton grew there. The farmers also kept cattle. There were skilled craftsmen who made things from gold, silver and ivory. Clay dolls and carts were made for the children to play with.

For long time, these people lived a happy life. They were quite rich and travelled from place to place on business or for pleasure. Their city was well-planned and clean. The rain water did not remain on the streets. We do not know what happened to them. Either they were raided from the north or some great earthquake destroyed them.

Ans:

Moen-jo-Daro, in Sindh, was one of the largest cities of the Indus Valley Civilization. This civilization developed around 3000 BC, in areas that today form Pakistan and North India. Moen-jo-Daro, one of the oldest cities in the world, was built around 2600 BC.

In 1922, some villagers found pieces of old pots and bricks. When Sir John Marshall, who was looking after historical remains, looked those pieces, he decided to dig up the area.

After digging, a city of straight roads and well-built houses appeared. Houses and streets were made of baked bricks. There was a wide road which had shops on both sides. This road led to the workmen's houses.

The people of this city were traders. They used to grow wheat and cotton. Their craftsmen made things from gold, silver, and ivory. Clay toys were also found.

They were rich and travelled a lot. The city was well-planned and clean. We are not sure either some attacked them, or the earthquake destroyed them.

(2) Helen Keller

How fortunate are those who are born into this world with two eyes to see all its beauty! But there are some unfortunate people who can neither see nor hear. They cannot see the lovely flowers blooming in the gardens or hear the birds singing sweet songs. But, worse is the fate of those who could see and hear once, and then no more. However, many of them are courageous and bold. They accept the challenge of their fate and try to live life cheerfully. One such brave and courageous person was Helen Keller.

Helen Keller was born in 1880 in a little town of the United States of America. Up to the age of two, she was quite a normal child; she could see and hear everything. In February 1882, little Helen fell seriously ill and became blind and deaf. Her parents were very sad, but they never gave up; they never lost hope.

When Helen was seven years old, her life changed completely. Her father heard about Miss Sullivan, a woman who had become blind at one time but she was one of those lucky few who regained their sight. This woman chose to thank God for His kindness by helping other blind people and bringing hope and happiness in their lives. Helen's father approached her and asked her to come and look after his blind child. Miss Sullivan agreed and started teaching Helen.

One day the two of them went to the river bank. Miss Sullivan took Helen's hand and dipped it in the water. Slowly she made her write "w-a-t-e-r" in the sand. She made Helen do the same thing several times and finally Helen could spell the word 'water'. Helen felt excited because she knew that at last there would be some light in her dark world. The work was very slow and difficult, but Miss Sullivan was very kind and patient. Little by little, she taught Helen about mountains and rivers and about history and geography. She even taught her how to count and do sums.

When Helen was eight, she was sent to school for blind children. Although Helen was blind and deaf, she could speak. But, she had forgotten how to speak. Her teacher was aware that often people who could not hear did not speak because we speak the words and language that we hear. So, she started helping her to regain her speech. She would put Helen's hand on her own lips and let her feel the movements of the lips at the time of speaking. Helen did many exercises of this kind and finally, at the age of ten, she was able to speak again. "What a joy!" she exclaimed.

By and by, she learnt to read books. These books were printed in a special language developed for blind persons, called "Braille". The words were written with raised points instead of being printed and she read them by touching them with her fingers. In this way, she was able to read as much as other people could. She passed all her examinations easily. She went to college, and then to the

Harvard University. She graduated from the university without difficulty. In fact, she proved to be a better student than many others. Her teachers loved and admired her.

In 1956, Helen Keller visited Pakistan. She was seventy-six but still very active. She came to Pakistan to see how she could help other deaf and blind people. She addressed many gatherings and encouraged those with similar shortcomings. She also visited the school for the deaf, dumb and blind, in Karachi. Addressing the students, she said, "How wonderful it is to be with you my sons and daughters! Always be happy and cheerful. Never curse your fate. You can do everything in this world." She also praised the volunteers, who were working and teaching there with so much zeal and self-less dedication.

Ans:

Most people are very lucky as they can see all things around them. But some people cannot see or hear. However, there are also those unfortunate ones who could once see and hear but are now blind and deaf. Some such people are brave and they take this as a challenge. One such person was Helen Keller.

Helen Keller was born in 1880 in a small town in the USA. She was a normal child. But in February 1882, she fell ill and became blind and deaf, but her parents never lost hope. At the age of seven, her father asked Miss Sullivan to look after Helen. Miss Sullivan had become blind once but regained her sight. She thanked God by helping other blind people. Miss Sullivan agreed to teach Helen.

One day Miss Sullivan made Helen write the word "w-a-t-e-r" in the sand. At last, Helen could able to spell the word 'water'. Very slowly, Miss Sullivan taught Helen about different things, including counting and sums.

At the age of eight, Helen went to school for blind children. Helen has forgotten how to speak. Her teacher helped her to regain her speech by the movements of her lips. After a lot of exercises, at the age of ten, Helen was able to speak again.

Helen learnt to read books in "Braille", a special language for blind persons. She read them by touching the words. She passed her examinations and went to the Harvard University after college. She graduated from that university.

In 1956, at the age of seventy-six, she visited Pakistan to help and encourage deaf and blind people. In her address at the school for the deaf, dumb and blind in Karachi, she said the students not to curse your fate and told them they could do everything in this world. She also praised the volunteers who worked for them.



WORKING WITH POEMS

Paraphrasing a Poem

Paraphrasing can help you understand poetry well. The four R's of Paraphrasing can be very useful while paraphrasing a poem.

- Reword — Replace words and phrases with synonyms wherever you can.
- Rearrange — Rearrange words within stanzas/ couplets to make proper sentences. You can even the ideas presented within stanzas / couplets.
- Realize — Realize that some words and phrases (e.g. names, dates, titles, etc.) cannot be changed, but you can present them differently in your paraphrase.
- Recheck — Check to see that the paraphrase conveys the same meaning the poem.

A Child's Invocation

**JOIN
FOR
MORE!!!**

My longing comes to my lips as supplication of mine

O God! May I be the candle of the life of mine!

May the world's darkness disappear through the life of mine!

May every place light up with the sparking light of mine!

May my homeland through me attain elegance

As the garden through flowers attain elegance

May my life like that moth be, O Lord!

May I love the lamp of knowledge, O Lord!

May supportive of the poor my life's way be

May loving the old, the suffering may be

O God! Protect me from the evil ways

Show me the path leading to the good ways

Poet: Allama Iqbal



میں سے ہونے والی دعا کی طرح ہے

اے خدا! کہ میں ہو سکوں زندگی کی شمع

تو کہ دنیا کی تاریکی میری زندگی سے گزر جائے

ہر جگہ میری زندگی سے روشنی پھیل جائے

میرا وطن میری زندگی سے شاندار بن جائے

جیسے باغ میں گلے کی شاندار بن جائے

اے خدا! کہ میں ہو سکوں علم کی شمع بن جائے

میرا دل ہو سکے پورے انسان کی طرح

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
attain	to gain with effort حاصل کرنا۔ پانا	sparkling	a brief spark or flash چمکنا۔ ضوئیشانی
elegance	quality of gracefulness and good taste شائستگی۔ نفاست	suffering	very unhappy; full of misery بد حال۔ دکھی
longing	prolonged unfulfilled desire خواہش۔ آرزو	supplication	a prayer دُعا
moth	a nocturnal insect پروانہ	supportive	furnishing support or assistance سہارا دینے والا۔ حمایتی

Paraphrasing of Couplets

1. Oh Allah! I pray that my life should be like a candle.
2. Through my light should the world's darkness vanish and every place sparkles with my light.
3. Through me, my motherland should achieve grace and dignity just like a flower gives grace to a garden.
4. I pray that just like a moth I have a love for the lamp of knowledge.
5. I pray that I become benevolent to the poor and the suffering.
6. O God! Save me from wrong ways and show me the straight and right path.

Paraphrased Poem in the form of Paragraph

Oh Allah! I pray that my life should be like a candle. Through my light should the world's darkness vanish and every place sparkles with my light. Through me, my motherland should achieve grace and dignity just like a flower gives grace to a garden. I pray that just like a moth I have a love for the lamp of knowledge and I become benevolent to the poor and the suffering. O God! Save me from wrong ways and show me the straight and right path.

Summary of the Poem

In this poem, a child is praying that his life will be like a candle, and he will be able to remove the darkness of the world. Because of him, his homeland will get the honour and good name. He prays that Allah may give him the love of knowledge so that he will become the support to the poor, weak and miserable people. He also prays to protect him from evil ways and give him the strength to follow the path of righteousness.

Rain

بارش

The rain pours on the desert sands
On hills and vales around;
At early dawn we rise to hear,
The churns soft, humming sound.

The hands are full of butter, wives
With merriment abound
Each buffalo for milking brought;
Athwart the grassy ground;
In thatches here we never found
Mistress and mind so glad!

Season's Orchestra's in full swing,
Fresh showers ease the mind;
On mountain-side so green with grass
Cattle abundance find;
Gay herdsman's wives about their necks
Of blossoms garlands wind;

Cucumbers, mushrooms, vegetables
Food of every kind;
Lord! Days of dearth let lie behind,
Ne'er let them reach the earth.

Poet: Shah Abdul Latif Bhittai
Translation: Elsa Kazi

بارش برستی ہے صحرا کی ریت پر
ارد گرد پہاڑیوں اور وادیوں پر؛
صبح سویرے ہم سننے کو اٹھتے ہیں،
مدھانی کی نرم، گنگلتائی آواز۔

ہاتھ مکھن سے بھرے ہیں، بیویاں
خوشی سے بھری

ہر بھینس کو دودھ دوہنے کے لئے لاتی ہیں؛
گھاس کے ترچھے میدانوں میں
یہاں گھاس پھوس کی چھتوں میں ہمیں کبھی نہیں ملا
مالکن اور اس کا خوش ذہن!

موسم کی موسیقی اسے جو بہن پر ہے،
تازہ بارش ذہن کو سکون دیتی ہے؛
پہاڑ گھاس سے ہرے بھرے ہیں
مویشیوں کو دھنچارہ مل رہا ہے؛
خوش گاہ بانوں کی بیویاں اپنی گردنوں میں
پھولوں کی مالا پہنے ہوئے ہیں؛
کھیرے، کھمبی، بزییاں
ہر قسم کا کھانا؛
پروردگار! بدحالی کے دن پچھیا رہ جائیں،
انہیں زمین تک نہیں پہنچنے دیتا۔



Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
abundance	more than adequate فراوانی - کثرت	gay	bright and pleasant ہنس کھ - خوش
athwart	at an oblique angle. غیر عمودی - ترچھا	humming	a low continuous sound بھنسناتی آواز
blossom	yield flowers پھولوں کا کھلنا	merriment	glad or happy feelings مسرت - خوشی
churn	a thing used to make butter from milk مدھانی	orchestra	a group of instrumentalists سازندے



dearth	an insufficient quantity or number.	قلت	thatch	plant stalks used as roofing material	گھاس پھوس کی چھت
garland	a wreath of flowers	پھولوں کا ہار۔ مالا	vale	a valley	وادی

•• Paraphrasing of Stanzas OR Summary of the Poem

It is raining everywhere. We wake up early in the morning to hear the soft sound of churns. The housewives' hands are full of butter, but they seem happy. The weather is on its full swing. Everyone is happy. Even cattle are happy because there is greenery everywhere. The wives of smiling herdsmen are wearing garlands of flowers. There are all kinds of food. O Allah! Keep the days of famine away from us.

A Mountain and a Squirrel

پہاڑ اور گھری

A mountain was saying this to a squirrel

"Commit suicide if you have self-respect

You are insignificant, still so arrogant, how strange!

You are neither wise, nor intelligent! Not even shrewd!

It is strange when the insignificant pose as important!

When the stupid ones like you pose as intelligent!

You are no match in comparison with my splendour

Even the earth is low compared with my splendour

The grandeur of mine does not fall to your lot

The poor animal cannot equal the great mountain!"

On hearing this the squirrel said, "Hold your tongue!

کوئی پہاڑ یہ کہتا تھا اک گھری سے

تجھے ہو شرم تو پانی میں جا کر ڈوب مرے

ذرا سی چیز ہے اس پر غور کیا کہنا

یہ عقل اور یہ سمجھ یہ شعور کیا کہنا

خدا کی شان ہے نہ چیز چیز بن نہیں

جو ہے شعور ہوں یوں باتیں نہیں

تیری بساط ہے کیا میری شان کے آگے

زمین ہے پست میری آن بان کے آگے

جو بات مجھ میں ہے تجھ کو وہ ہے نصیب کہاں

بھلا پہاڑ کہاں، جانور غریب کہاں

کہا یہ سن کر گھری نے منہ سنبھال ذرا

These are immature thoughts; expel them from your heart!

I do not care if am not large like you!

You are not a little thing like me

Everything shows the Omnipotence of God

Some large, some small, is the wisdom of God'

He has created you large in the world

He has taught me climbing large trees

You are unable to walk a single step

Only large size! What other greatness have you?

If you are large show me some of the skills I have

Show me how you break this betel nut as I can."

Nothing is useless in this world

Nothing is bad in God's creation.

(Translation of Allama Iqbal's poem
"Pahar Aur Gilareeh")

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
arrogant	haughty مغرور۔ مکیہ	omnipotence	having unlimited power بہت بڑی طاقت۔ قدرتِ کاملہ
betel nut	a kind of a plant seed چھالیہ	pose	exaggerated display بناوٹ۔ دکھاوا
expel	remove-move out باہر نکال دینا	self-respect	pride and confidence in oneself عزت نفس
grandeur	magnificent or splendid شان و شوکت	shrewd	having or showing sharp powers of judgement تیز فہم
insignificant	not worthy of notice غیر اہم۔ حقیر	splendour	quality of being splendid شان و شوکت

یہ کچی باتیں ہیں، دل سے انہیں نکال ڈالو

جو میں بڑی نہیں تیری طرح تو کیا پرواہ

نہیں تو بھی تو آخر میری طرح چھوٹا

ہر ایک چیز سے پیدا خدا کی قدرت ہے

کوئی بڑا، کوئی چھوٹا، یہ اس کی حکمت ہے

بڑا جہاں میں تجھ کو بنا دیا اس نے

مجھے درخت پر چڑھنا سکھا دیا اس نے

قدم اٹھانے کی طاقت نہیں ذرا تجھ میں

بڑی بڑائی ہے! خوبی ہے! اور کیا تجھ میں

جو تو بڑا ہے تو مجھ سے اس قدر کچھ کو

یہ چھالیہ ہی ذرا تو کر دکھا مجھ کو

نہیں ہے چھوٹی کوئی زمانے میں

کوئی نہ انہیں قدرت کے کارخانے میں

Paraphrasing of Stanzas

A mountain said to a squirrel that the former had no self-respect. He said that the squirrel was insignificant but haughty and had no intelligence. He also said that the squirrel pretended to be significant and intelligent, and the squirrel that he was nothing as compared to him. The mountain said the squirrel could not equal his greatness. The squirrel replied that the mountain had immature thoughts. The squirrel told the mountain that she could not care about that. Everything shows the power and wisdom of God. If God made the mountain so big, then He taught the squirrel to climb on trees. The squirrel said that the mountain had just height but nothing else; he could not even walk a step. The squirrel asked the mountain to show some skills and break the betel nut. God's creations are not bad and useless.

Summary of the Poem

One day, the mountain and the squirrel argue. The huge mountain calls the tiny squirrel insignificant, arrogant and stupid. The squirrel replies that while it is not as big as the mountain, the squirrel cannot climb a tree. The talents of both the mountain and the squirrel differ considerably. If the squirrel has no height, then the mountain cannot crack a tiny nut.

Message of the Poem

This poem is a dialogue between the mountain and the squirrel. The mountain is proud of its towering bigness and looks upon the squirrel. The squirrel justifies its existence. It says that God created the universe in a very orderly way after a good deal of thinking. All big or small, rich or poor have a distinct quality and a definite place. None is superior or inferior. None should be considered as weak or useless.

Abu Ben Adhem

Abou Ben Adhem (May his tribe increase)

Awoke one night from a deep dream of peace,

And saw, within the moonlight in his room,

Making it rich, and like a lily in bloom,

An Angel writing in a book of gold.

ابو بن آدم (ان کے قبیلے میں اضافہ ہو)

ایک رات سکون کی گہری نیند سے بیدار ہوئے

اور چاندنی میں اپنے کمرے میں دیکھا،

تو اسے منور کر رہی تھی، ہوسن کے تازہ پھول کی طرح،

یہ فرشتہ سبیری کتاب میں لکھ رہا تھا۔

Exceeding peace had made Ben Adhem bold,
And to the presence in the room he said,
'What writest thou?' The vision raised its head,
And, with a look made of all sweet accord,
Answered, "The names of those who love the Lord."
"And is mine one?" Said Abou. "Nay, not so,"
Replied the Angel. Abou spoke more low,
But cheerily still, and said, "I pray thee, then,
Write me as one that loves his fellow men."
The angel wrote, and vanish'd. The next night
It came again with a great wakening light,
And show'd the names whom love of God had bless'd,
And lo! Ben Adhem's name led all the rest.

(James Henry Leigh Hunt)

بڑھتے ہوئے سکون نے ابو بن ادہم کو بہادر بنا دیا،
اور کمرے میں موجود ہستی سے انہوں نے پوچھا،
آپ کیا لکھ رہے ہیں۔ اس ہستی نے اپنا سر اٹھایا،
اور ایک دل آویز نظر کے ساتھ،
جواب دیا "اُن کے نام جو خدا سے محبت کرتے ہیں۔"

ابو نے پوچھا "اور کیا میرا نام ہے؟" "نہیں ایسا نہیں،"
فرشتے نے جواب دیا۔ "ابو بن ادہم دھیمی آواز سے،
لیکن زندہ دلی سے بولے۔ اور کہاتب میں آپ سے التجا کرتا ہوں،"

میرا نام اُن میں لکھ دیں جو اس کے ہندوں سے محبت کرتے ہیں،
فرشتے نے لکھا اور غائب ہو گیا۔ اگلی رات
وہ دوبارہ خیرہ کردینے والی روشنی کے ساتھ آیا،
اور ان لوگوں کے نام دکھائے جن کو خدا کی محبت عطا ہوئی تھی۔
اور دیکھا کہ ابو بن ادہم کا نام سرفہرست تھا۔

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
accord	agreement معاہدہ	presence	attendance موجودگی
angel	an innocent creature فرشتہ	sweet	charming خوش کن
cheerly	happily خوشی سے	vanish	disappear غائب ہو جانا
lily	a flower ایک پھول	vision	angel فرشتہ
pray	request درخواست کرنا، عبادت کرنا	wakening	dazzling خیرہ کن

Paraphrasing of Stanzas

One night Abou Ben Adhem woke up from a deep sleep and an angel writing in a book of gold. There was moonlight around him. Abou Ben Adhem asked the angel that what he was writing and he told him that he was writing the names of those who love God. Abou asked the angel whether his name was on the list. The angel said no. Then Abou requested the angel to write his name with those who loved His fellow men. The angel wrote his name and disappeared. The next night the angel came again and showed Abou the names of those whom God loved. Abou saw his name on the top of the list.

Summary of the Poem

At one night Abou Ben Adhem awoke from a deep sleep. He saw that there was moonlight in his room. He saw also an angel who was writing something in a golden book. He asked the angel what he was writing. The angel told him that he was writing the names of those people who loved God. Abou asked the angel whether his name was there. The angel said 'No'. Hearing this Abou was sad. He requested the angel to write his name in the light of those who love their fellow-men. The angel then disappeared. The next night the angel appeared and showed him the names of those whom God loved. Abou's name was on the top of the list. He was so pleased.

Message of the Poem

In the eyes of God, the best is he who loves His fellowmen. Our kind and gentle behaviour with other people exalts us in the eyes of God.

The Miller of the Dee

دریائے ڈی کا چنگی چلانے والا

There dwelt a miller hale and bold,
Beside the river Dee;
He worked and sang from morn to night,
No lark more blithe than he,
And this the burden of his song
For ever used to be,
"I envy nobody, no, not I,
And nobody envies me!"

ایک توانا اور بہادر چنگی والا رہتا تھا
دریائے ڈی کے کنارے
وہ صبح سے شام تک کام کرتا اور گاتا تھا۔
کوئی پرندہ اُس سے زیادہ زندہ دل نہیں تھا۔
اور اُس کے گیت میں
ہمیشہ ہی یہ ہوتا تھا،
میں کسی سے حسد نہیں کرتا۔ نہیں میں نہیں
اور کوئی مجھ سے حسد نہیں کرتا۔

"Thou'rt wrong my friend!" said old King Hal,
 "Thou'rt wrong as wrong can be;
 For, could my heart be light as thine,
 I'd gladly change with thee,
 And tell me now, what makes thee sing
 With voice so loud and free,
 While I am sad, though I am the king,
 Beside the river Dee?"

The miller smiled and doffed his cap;
 "I earn my bread," quoth he,
 "I love my wife, I love my friend,
 I love my children three;
 I owe no penny I cannot pay,
 I thank the river Dee,
 That turns the mill that grinds the corn
 To feed my babes and me".

"Good friend!" said Hal, and sighed the while,
 "Farewell, and happy be;
 But say no more, if thou'dst say true,
 That no man envies thee.
 Thy mealy cap is worth my crown,
 Thy mill my kingdom's fee;
 Such men as thou are England's boast.
 O'miller of the Dee".

Charles Mackay

میرے دوست تم غلط ہو، بوڑھے بادشاہ ہیل نے کہا
 "تم اتنے ہی غلط ہو جتنا کہ کوئی غلط ہو سکتا ہے۔
 کیا میرا دل بھی اتنا ہی خوش ہو سکتا ہے جتنا کہ تیرا
 میں خوشی سے اسے تمہارے ساتھ تبدیل کر لوں گا۔
 اور اب مجھے بتاؤ تم کس طرح گاتے ہو۔
 اتنی بلند اور آزاد آواز میں
 حالانکہ میں بادشاہ ہوں مگر میں اداس ہوں
 اس دریاے ڈی کے کنارے؟"

چکی چلانے والا مسکرایا اور اس نے اپنی ٹوپی اتار دی
 اس نے کہا میں اپنی روزی کماتا ہوں۔
 میں اپنی بیوی سے محبت کرتا ہوں۔ میں اپنے دوستوں
 سے محبت کرتا ہوں میں اپنے تینوں بچوں سے محبت کرتا ہوں۔
 میں کسی کی ایک پائی کا مقروض نہیں
 میں دریاے ڈی کا شکر گزار ہوں۔
 جو میری چکی کو چلاتا ہے جو ناناچ پیسکتی ہے
 جس سے میں اپنا اور اپنے بچوں کا پیٹ پالتا ہوں۔

ابچھے دوست! ہیل نے کہا! اور آہ بھری
 خدا حافظ۔ ہمیشہ خوش رہو۔
 لیکن اور مت کہو۔ اگرچہ تم ٹھیک کہہ رہے ہو
 کہ کوئی آدمی آپ سے حسد نہیں کرتا۔
 تیرے آنے سے الٹی ہوئی ٹوپی زیادہ قیمتی ہے میرے تاج سے
 تیری پن چکی میرے سلطنت کے برابر ہے
 تیرے جیسے آدمی پر انگلینڈ فکر کرتا ہے۔
 اے ڈی کے چکی چلانے والے۔

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
blithe	happy خوش	hale	healthy مستند

boast	brag	شیخی مارنا۔ شیخی	lark	a bird	ایک پرندہ
burden	load	بوجھ	light	care free	ہلکا
corn	maize	کھیتی	mealy	dirty	پسا ہوا اناج
doff	take off	اُتارنا	mill	the owner of a mill	مل والا
farewell	parting	الوداع	owe	be in debt	مقروض ہونا
feed	give food	کھانا	sigh	mourn	آہ بھرنا
grind	make powder	چینا	worth	value	قیمت

Paraphrasing of Stanzas

There was a healthy and happy miller who lived beside the River Dee. He worked day and night in a lively manner. He always sang that he did not envy anyone and nobody envied him. Old King, Hal, said to him that he was wrong. The king told him that he was king even he was still sad. He asked that the miller that how he was so happy and sang that song. The miller replied that he earned his bread; he loved his wife, children and friends. He had no debts. He thanked the River Dee that ran his mills so that he could feed his family. Then the king said farewell to him and told him that his dirty cap had more worth than the king's crown and his mill was precious than his kingdom. The king also said that England was proud of a man like him.

Summary of the Poem

Charles Mackay tells the story of a miller in the poem. The miller used to work from morning to night. He kept singing a song while working. The theme of the song was that he envied none and none envied him. The King passed there one day. He said that he was wrong because he envied him. The King was sad while the miller was happy. The King asked the miller why he was happy. The miller replied that he earned his bread with his hands and spent the money on his family. He led a contented life and owed nothing to anyone. The King said that his mealy cap was worth his crown and his mill was worth his kingdom. He also said that men like him were England's pride.

Message of the Poem

In the poem "The Miller of the Dee", Charles Mackay, the poet of the poem, comparing the life of a king and the life of a miller, proves that life of an ordinary man is better than the life of a rich and powerful man. As the life of a common man is care-free and he does not have anything to lose so he is fearless. He has not jealousy for his fellowmen so he enjoys peace of mind. A common man enjoys the beauty and simplicity of life. Contrary to him a rich and powerful man lacks peace of mind. No one has true love and sincerity for him. In spite of all rich and power his life is not a happy life.



The Daffodils

نرگس کے پھول

I wandered lonely as a cloud
That floats on high o'er vales and hills,
When all at once I saw a crowd,
A host, of golden daffodils;
Beside the lake, beneath the trees,
Fluttering and dancing in the breeze.

Continuous as the stars that shine
And twinkle on the milky way,
They stretched in never-ending line
Along the margin of a bay:
Ten thousand saw I at a glance,
Tossing their heads in sprightly dance

The waves beside them danced; but they
Outdid the sparkling waves in glee:
A poet could not but be gay,
In such a jocund company!
I gazed - and gazed - but little thought
What wealth the show to me had brought:

For oft when on my couch I lie
In vacant or in pensive mood,
They flash upon that inward eye
Which is the bliss of solitude;
And then my heart with pleasure fills,
And dances with the daffodils.

William Wordsworth

میں بے مقصد، تنہا بادل کی مانند گھوم رہا تھا
جو اونچی وادیوں اور پہاڑوں پر تیرتا ہے،
جبکہ میں نے اچانک ایک جم غفیر دیکھا،
یہ مجمع تھا نرگس کے سنہری پھولوں کا
جھیل کے ساتھ ساتھ درختوں کے نیچے
جھومتے ہوئے اور ناچتے ہوئے نیم سحری میں،

مسلل جیسے کہ تارے چمکتے ہیں۔

اور جھلکاتے ہیں شریا میں

وہ ایک نہ ختم ہونے والی قطار میں پھیلے ہوئے تھے۔
وہ خلیج کے کنارے کے ساتھ ساتھ
میں نے ایک ہی نظر میں دس ہزار دیکھ لئے
وہ خوشی کے رقص میں اپنے سروں کو ہلاتے تھے۔

ان کے پہلو میں لہریں بھی ناچ رہی تھیں لیکن وہ
چمکدار لہروں سے خوش منانے میں سہقت لے جا رہے تھے۔
ایک شاعر سوائے خوش ہونے کے کیا کر سکتا ہے۔
ایسی ہر مسرت مجلس میں
میں نے غور سے دیکھا اور غور سے دیکھا لیکن ذرا سوچا
کہ یہ نظارہ مجھے کون سی دولت دے رہا ہے۔

اکثر جب میں آرام دہ کرسی پر آرام کرتا ہوں۔
خالی الذہن ہوتا ہوں یا گہری سوچ و بچار میں،
وہ میری اندرونی آنکھ میں روشن ہو جاتے ہیں،
جو تنہائی میں خوشی کا سبب بن جاتے ہیں؛
تب میرا دل خوشی سے لہریز ہو جاتا ہے
اور نرگس کے پھولوں کے ساتھ ناچتا ہے۔

Meanings of the words in English and Urdu

Words	Meaning in English / Urdu	Words	Meaning in English / Urdu
bay	gulf	hill	a little heap or mound
beneath	below	host	multitude
beside	near	jocund	merry
bliss	joy	lonely	alone
breeze	gentle wind	milky way	galaxy
continuous	unending	never ending	unending
crowd	mob	outdo	surpass
daffodils	a flower	pensive	thoughtful
dance	move up and down or about	shine	glow
flash	blaze	solitude	loneliness
flutter	to have oscillatory airborne motion	sprightly	lively
gay	happy	stretched	extended
gaze	look steadily	toss	sway
glance	look briefly	vacant	unoccupied
glee	merriment	vale	valley
		wander	roam
		wealth	riches

Paraphrasing of Stanzas

The poet was wandering alone like clouds, and saw a cluster of flowers of golden daffodils on the lake side. The flowers were swaying in the wind. They looked like the stars of the galaxy. They were happily shaking their heads in an endless line. The waves were shining on his side. The poet is also happy to see them and thinks how much happiness this scene has given him. Whenever the poet thinks of this scene, it gives him joy even in solitude.

Summary of the Poem

William Wordsworth is known as the poet of nature. Once he came across a large number of daffodils. They were blooming and tossing their heads in sprightly dance. The scene of the daffodils filled the heart of the poet with great joy. The daffodils stretched in never-ending line like the stars in the sky and that shone on the milky way. The scene attracted the poet. He kept gazing at the daffodils for a long time in amazement. He got completely involved in enjoying the scene and was totally lost in their beauty. That beautiful scene is still fresh in his memory. Whenever he lies on his couch in loneliness, the scene of the beautiful daffodils comes to his mind and his heart begins dancing with them. Natural scenes often attract us. Some scene disappear from our memory but some engrave to our mind that hardly are forgotten. Such a scene the poet of the poem 'The Daffodils' experienced and enjoyed. He has drawn the scene in such a way that even the readers find themselves completely involved in it.

Solution of Model Test Paper - I (Unit 1 - 4)

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Galileo Galilei was born on 15 February 1564, in the town of Pisa, Italy. He was the first of six children of Vincenzo Galilei, a famous music composer and lutenist, an expert at playing the lute, a musical instrument. Galileo also learned to play the lute. It was probably because he observed his father experimenting with music, to create new music, from an early age that he acquired this attraction for experimentation. Moreover, the importance of time and rhythm in music required calculation; hence, he acquired an understanding of mathematics and its relationship with everything.

As a young man, Galileo thought of becoming a priest, and then a mathematician, but his father wanted him to become a doctor because a doctor earned a higher income than a mathematician. So he enrolled at the University of Pisa for a medical degree. However, after attending a lecture on geometry, he talked his reluctant father into letting him study mathematics and natural philosophy instead of medicine.

His interest in experimenting with different things started early. In 1581, when he was studying medicine, he noticed that a swinging chandelier took the same amount of time to swing back and forth, no matter how far it was swinging. When he returned home, he set up two pendulums of equal length and swung one with a large sweep and the other with a small sweep and found that they kept time together. However, it was almost one hundred years later, that the swinging pendulum was used to create an accurate timepiece.

Because he needed to earn money, Galileo began experimenting with different things, trying to come up with some sort of invention that he could sell for money. He had a little bit of success with his invention that was like a compass and could be used to measure plots of land. By this time, he had already experimented with pendulums and magnets. He had also created a thermoscope, an earlier form of the thermometer, and in 1586 he published a small book on the design of a hydrostatic balance that he had invented.

However, the invention for which Galileo is known is the telescope; the wonderful device that allows us to see from a distance. When he heard that a Dutch inventor had invented something called a Spyglass, but was keeping it a secret, Galileo decided to work on one of his own. Within 24 hours, he had invented a telescope that could magnify things to make them appear ten times larger than real life.

His multiple interests included astronomy, the study of the universe and its contents. It was because of this interest that one night Galileo pointed his telescope toward the sky and made his first of many space observations. He noticed that the moon was not smooth, like everyone thought; it was covered in bumps and craters. As technology has improved, many others have made improvements on the telescope that Galileo first invented.

Galileo died on 8 January 1642, aged 77, after suffering from fever and heart palpitations.

Q1: Read the text and complete the following sentences by selecting one word from those given.

- (i). The text is about a person who invented a _____.
- (a) pendulum (b) timepiece (c) telescope (d) thermometer
- (ii). Galileo was interested in _____.
- (a) music (b) mathematics (c) medicine (d) metallurgy

Answers

(i).	c	(ii).	b
------	---	-------	---

Q2: The meanings of the following words are given in the text. Write down these words and their meanings.

- (a) lutenist (b) lute (c) telescope (d) astronomy

Answers

(a) an expert at playing lute	(b) a musical instrument
(c) a device that allows us to see from a distance	(d) the study of the universe and its contents.

Q3: The following sentences are wrong. Read the text and write the correct sentences.

- (a) Galileo was the sixth child in the family.
- (b) He took admission in the University of Italy.
- (c) He published a book on the design of a timepiece.
- (d) The invention for which Galileo is known is the pendulum.
- (e) Galileo died of heart failure.

Answers

(a) He was the first of six children in the family.
(b) He took admission in the University of Pisa.
(c) He published a book on the design of a hydrostatic balance.
(d) The invention for which Galileo is known is the telescope.
(e) Galileo died of fever and heart palpitations.

Q4: Read the text and complete the following sentences by giving reasons.

- (a) His father wanted him to become a doctor because _____.
- (b) He left his medical studies because _____.
- (c) He wanted to invent something that he could sell because _____.
- (d) Galileo pointed his telescope towards the night sky because _____.

Answers

(a)a doctor earned a higher income than a mathematician.
--

- (b)he wanted to study mathematics and natural philosophy.
- (c)he needed money.
- (d)he was interested in astronomy.

Q 5: Read the text and answer the following questions.

- (a) What two things did Galileo probably learn when he saw his father creating music?
- (b) Why and when did he leave his medical education?
- (c) What did he invent to earn some money? What was its use?
- (d) How did he invent the telescope?
- (e) What was his first space observation?

Answers

- (a) When he saw his father creating music, Galileo probably learnt two things – to play the lute and to create new music.
- (b) In 1581, after attending a lecture on geometry, he talked his reluctant father into letting him study mathematics and natural philosophy instead of medicine.
- (c) To earn money, he invented a thing that was like a compass and could be used to measure plots of land.
- (d) When he heard that a Dutch inventor had invented something called a Spyglass, but was keeping it a secret, Galileo decided to work on one of his own. Within 24 hours, he had invented a telescope.
- (e) His first space observation was that the moon was not smooth, like everyone thought; it was covered in bumps and craters.

Grammar

Q 6: Rewrite the following sentences by correcting the punctuation and capitalization errors.

- (a) yes the sahara desert is a lonely hot and dry place said faseeh
- (b) hurrah the khans will invite us next year shouted akram with joy
- (c) im going to plant an apple tree. it will be fun said hannan
- (d) asif and his friends were having rice bread curry fried fish and noodles for lunch

Answers

- (a) "Yes, the Sahara desert is a lonely, hot, and dry place," said Faseeh.
- (b) "Hurrah! The Khans will invite us next year," shouted Akram with joy.

- (c) "I'm going to plant an apple tree. It will be fun," said Hannan.
- (d) Asif and his friends were having rice, bread, curry, fried fish, and noodles for lunch.

Q 7: Fill in the blanks with articles, where necessary.

When Lubna got married she moved to _____ United States of America. Fifteen years later, she returned to Pakistan with her family and visited her brother, Essa. Lubna had two children, _____ boy and _____ girl, and Essa had two boys and _____ girl. Although _____ children had never met before, except through _____ e-mail, _____ two families had _____ great time together. _____ children played games and _____ elders talked about their life, trying to catch up on fifteen years' news and gossips.

Ans:

When Lubna got married she moved to the United States of America. Fifteen years later, she returned to Pakistan with her family and visited her brother, Essa. Lubna had two children, a boy and a girl, and Essa had two boys and a girl. Although the children had never met before, except through x e-mail, the two families had a great time together. The children played games, and the elders talked about their life, trying to catch up on fifteen years' news and gossips.

Q 8: Fill the blanks in the following sentences with words formed by using the suffix 'ment', 'ness' or 'al' with one of these words, as appropriate: sign, treat, kind

- (a) The employer showed his _____ by giving a big salary raise to all his employees.
- (b) They were finally given the _____ to start the construction on the new bridge.
- (c) He recovered fully after completing his _____.

Answers

- (a) kindness (b) signal (c) treatment

Q 9: Fill the blanks in the following sentences with words formed by using the prefix 'un', 'in' or 'dis' with one of these words, as appropriate: complete, honest, healthy

- (a) One of our neighbours lost his job because he was _____.
- (b) We should avoid _____ food and exercise regularly so that we remain fit.
- (c) Our work was still _____ when the bell rang.

Answers

- (a) dishonest (b) unhealthy (c) incomplete

Q 10: Change the following negative sentences into affirmative and the affirmative ones into negative.

- (a) Did you give my message to your mother?
- (b) I like riding a horse when I go to the beach.
- (c) Aren't you coming to my sister's wedding?
- (d) Turn right at the end of the road.
- (e) They cannot cross this river without a boat.



Answers

(a)	Did you not give my message to your mother?
(b)	I do not like riding a horse when I go to the beach.
(c)	Are you coming to my sister's wedding?
(d)	Do not turn right at the end of the road.
(e)	They can cross this river without a boat.

Q 11: Change the voice of the following sentences.

- (a) Algebra was taught to us by Sir Sadiq.
- (b) Samina gave an impressive presentation.
- (c) The task was done well by the class.
- (d) They have written a letter.

Answers

(a)	Sir Sadiq taught algebra to us.
(b)	An impressive presentation was given by Samina.
(c)	The class did the task well.
(d)	A letter has been written by them.

Q 12: Complete the following second conditional sentences.

- (a) If I became a doctor _____
- (b) Seema would be sad _____
- (c) If I had enough money _____
- (d) Javed could become a cricketer _____

Answers

(a) I would treat needy person free of charge.
(b) if she knew that news.
(c) I would go to a world tour.
(d) if he worked hard.

Q 13: Fill the following blanks with 'can' or 'could'.

I _____ speak Balochi quite well when I was a child, but now I _____ speak only Urdu. I read somewhere that a child _____ learn to speak five languages at a time; I wish I _____ do that now. However, I think I _____ manage to learn only one more language now. I wish one _____ learn five languages easily at the age of forty.

Ans: I could speak Balochi quite well when I was a child, but now I can speak only Urdu. I read

somewhere that a child could learn to speak five languages at a time; I wish I could do that now. However, I think I can manage to learn only one more language now. I wish one can learn five languages easily at the age of forty.

Writing

Q 16: Write an essay on any ONE of the following.

- (a) Use of mobile phones
- (b) Piles of garbage in populated areas
- (c) An accident that I saw

Ans: See "Essay Writing" in previous pages.

Q.17. Write any ONE of the following.

- (a) Write a letter to the editor of a newspaper complaining about the electricity shortage problems in your area.
- (b) Write an application to your class teacher requesting for leave to look after your sick mother.

Ans: See "Letter Writing" in previous pages.

Solution of Model Test Paper - II (Unit 5 - 8)

Reading Comprehension

Read the following passage and answer the questions below:

Rice is a member of the grass family. Along with wheat and corn, it is one of the three crops on which human beings largely depend as food for survival. Rice is now one of the most important crops at the global level, as it is used as a staple food in most countries of the world and will continue to be so for the foreseeable future. In the coming 30 years, the world will require 70% more rice than that it requires today.

Pakistan is the world's 4th largest producer of rice. Each year, it produces an average of 6 million tonnes and together with the rest of the South Asia, the country supplies 30% of the world's rice. Rice is Pakistan's third largest crop in terms of area sown, after wheat and cotton. About 11 percent of Pakistan's total agricultural area is rice during the summer or "Kharif" season.

Most of the rice is grown in the fertile Sindh and Punjab region, with millions of farmers relying on rice cultivation as their major source of employment. Both provinces account for about 87 percent of the total rice production. Punjab is the biggest producer of rice in the country and contributes 58 per cent to the national production, while the provinces of Sindh, Baluchistan and Khyber Pakhtunkhwa (KPK) contribute 29, 3 and 10 per cent, respectively.

The major rice producing areas in Punjab include Gujranwala, Hafizabad, Sheikhupura, Sialkot, Wazirabad, Gujrat, Sargodha, Faisalabad, Kasur, Jhang, and Okara. In Sindh, Jacobabad, Larkana, Badin, Thatta, Shikarpur, and Dadu are important rice cultivation areas. District Nasirabad in Baluchistan and some parts of KPK also have rice producing areas. The "Kalar" bowl area, located

between the Ravi and Chenab rivers in Punjab, due to its agro-climatic and soil conditions, is famous for producing Basmati rice. In Swat at high altitude mountain valleys, the temperate Japonica rice is grown. In South KPK, Sindh and Baluchistan, the Irri type, which is a long grain, heat tolerant, tropical type of rice, is grown.

Among the most famous varieties grown in Pakistan, the Basmati is known for its flavour and quality. Pakistan is a major producer of this variety. The Basmati (Fine) type comprises 40% of all rice produced in Pakistan, while 60% of the rice produced is of the coarse types. Pakistan is a leading producer and exporter of Basmati and IRRI rice (white, long grain rice).

Rice ranks second among the staple food grain crops in Pakistan and its export is a major source of foreign exchange earnings. On an average the country produces around 6.0 million tonnes of rice annually and, after meeting domestic consumption of around 2.0 million tonnes, some 4.0 million tonnes exported. The government should provide support to the rice growers exporters and ensure that rice prices remain close to regional competitors. Growth of more and better quality rice and good government policies can help Pakistan compete in the world market and earn more foreign exchange.

Q.1 Read the text and complete the following sentences by selecting one option from those given.

- A. The most suitable title for this passage is a** _____.
- (a) Rice is the staple food of the people of Pakistan
(b) The future of the rice industry in Pakistan
(c) Rice production in Pakistan
(d) Pakistan is the world's largest rice producing country
- B. Most of the rice in Pakistan is grown in** _____.
- (a) Punjab and KPK (b) Baluchistan and Sindh
(c) KPK and Sindh (d) Sindh and Punjab
- C. Most of the Basmati rice is grown in an area that is located between the** _____.
- (a) Chenab and Sutlej (b) Chenab and Beas
(c) Chenab and Jhelum (d) Chenab and Ravi

Answers

(A)	c	(B)	d	(C)	d
-----	---	-----	---	-----	---

Q.2 Read the text and fill in the following blanks.

- (a) The three crops used as food by people all over the world are: _____, _____ and _____.
- (b) Basmati rice is famous for its _____ and _____, and Pakistan produces _____ % of this type.
- (c) The three major crops of Pakistan are _____, _____ and _____.
- (d) Pakistan exports two types of rice; these are _____ and _____.
- (e) The total rice production of Pakistan, on an average, is _____ tonnes, of which the country uses _____ tonnes and exports _____ tonnes.

Answers

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--|
| (a) wheat, corn, rice | (b) flavour, quality, 40 | (c) wheat, cotton, rice | |
| (d) Basmati, Irri | (e) 6, 2, 4 | | |

- Q.3 The following statements are all incorrect. Read the text and write the correct statements.
- (a) Pakistan alone provides 30% of the world's rice.
 - (b) About 10,000 farmers in Pakistan depend on rice growing as their source of income.
 - (c) Punjab produces 87% of the rice produced in Pakistan.
 - (d) Sindh accounts for 10% of the rice produced in Pakistan.
 - (e) The government should ensure that rice prices remain close to international markets.

Answers

- | | |
|-----|--|
| (a) | Pakistan together with the rest of the South Asia, provides 30% of the world's rice. |
| (b) | Millions of farmers in Pakistan depend on rice growing as their source of income. |
| (c) | Punjab produces 58% of the rice produced in Pakistan. |
| (d) | Sindh accounts for 29% of the rice produced in Pakistan. |
| (e) | The government should ensure that rice prices remain close to regional markets. |

Q.4 Read the text and answer the following questions.

- (a) Why is rice one of the most important crops in the world?
- (b) Why is the Kalar bowl area suitable for growing the Basmati rice?
- (c) In KPK, which type of rice is grown in the high mountain valleys and which type is grown in the southern region?
- (d) What kind of rice is the Irri rice?
- (e) How can Pakistan earn more foreign exchange through rice?

Ans:

- (a) Rice is one of the most important crops in the world, as it is used as staple food in most countries of the world and will continue to be so for the foreseeable future.
- (b) The Kalar bowl area is suitable for growing the Basmati rice due to its agro-climatic and soil conditions.
- (c) In KPK, temperate Japonica rice is grown in the high mountain valleys and Irri type is grown in southern region.
- (d) Irri is white, long grain type of rice.
- (e) Growth of more and better quality of rice and good government policies can help Pakistan to earn more foreign exchange.



Grammar

Q.5 Join the two simple sentences given below to form a compound sentence, by using **and**, **but**, **because**, **as**, **so**, as appropriate. You use one word only once.

- (a) Sohail and Aslam practised a lot. They both got selected on the school tennis team.
- (b) Our house is very old. It is located near the new shopping area.
- (c) Sabiha was studying very hard. She wanted to get the first position in class.
- (d) Her aunt is a good doctor. She is also a good cook.
- (e) My uncle always comes to Pakistan in June. He loves the mangoes available here.

Ans:

- (a) Sohail and Aslam practised a lot so they both got selected on the school tennis team.
- (b) Our house is very old but it is located near the new shopping area.
- (c) Sabiha was studying very hard because she wanted to get the first position in class.
- (d) Her aunt is a good doctor and she is also a good cook.
- (e) My uncle always comes to Pakistan in June as he loves the mangoes available here.

Q.6 Select the most appropriate synonym to complete the following sentences.

- (a) Everyone in the room was _____, only the baby was crying.
(quiet, noiseless)
- (b) The ring that my aunt gave me for my birthday is made of _____ gold.
(true, correct, real)
- (c) The sea is very _____ during the summer months.
(disorder, violent, rough)
- (d) It is _____ that I reach the office on time every day as I want a promotion.
(primary, important, significant)
- (e) He will be punished as his case is very _____.
(weak, frail, fragile)

Answers

(a)	quiet	(b)	real	(c)	rough	(d)	important	(e)	weak
-----	-------	-----	------	-----	-------	-----	-----------	-----	------

Q.7 Change the narration in the following dialogue.

- (a) "I hope that we get the bus tickets," said Daniyal.
- (b) "If we don't get the tickets we will miss the wedding," said Farhan.
- (c) "Oh! Here is father," said Daniyal.
- (d) "He has tickets for all of us!" said Farhan.
- (e) Salma said, "I wish we were going by train."

Answers

- (a) Daniyal hoped to get the bus tickets.
- (b) Farhan said that if they didn't get the tickets, they would miss the wedding.

- (c) Daniyal said that there was father.
 (d) Farhan said that he had tickets for all of them.
 (e) Salma wished that they were going by train.

Q.8 Fill in the blanks in the following paragraph using since/ for appropriate.

They have been living in this house 1 fifty years. They have been living here 2 his father was born. However, we have constantly been moving 3 the last fifteen years, ever 4 my father joined the army. It has been a long time 5 we have lived in any place 6 more than two years.

Answers

(1) for (2) since (3) for (4) since (5) since (6) for

Q.9 Complete the following passage using the correct degree of the adverbs given. You can use each adverb only once.

quickly carefully well slowly hard probably

The team was getting ready 1 so the coach had to remind them to move 2 if they did not want to be late for the match. He also reminded them to work 3 than last time because the team that performed 4 would be the winner. The team knew that if they planned 5 they would 6 win as the two main players of the opposite team were injured and were not playing.

Answers

(1) slowly (2) more quickly (3) harder
 (4) well (5) more carefully (6) probably

Q.10 Translate the following passage into Urdu / Sindhi.

The train left the station at two o'clock. All the children were very happy. They were going to Lahore for the first time. They wanted to see the Shalimar Garden and the Badshahi Mosque. They wanted to spend at least five days in Lahore, because there were so many places to see. They wanted to visit Minar-e-Pakistan on the Independence Day.

Ans:

ٹرین اسٹیشن سے دو بجے نکلی۔ سارے بچے بہت خوش تھے۔ وہ پہلی بار لاہور جا رہے تھے۔ وہ شالیمار باغ اور بادشاہی مسجد دیکھنا چاہتے تھے۔ وہ لاہور میں کم از کم پانچ دن گزارنا چاہتے تھے کیونکہ انہیں کئی مقامات دیکھنے تھے۔ وہ یوم آزادی پر مینار پاکستان کی سیر کرنا چاہتے تھے۔

Q.11 Provide quotation marks in the following dialogue.

- (a) Have you finished your work, Zarina? said her mother.
 (b) No, replied Zarina. I still need to write an essay.
 (c) Well, hurry up, our guests will be here soon, said her mother.

Answers

- (a) "Have you finished your work, Zarina?", said her mother.
(b) "No," replied Zarina. "I still need to write an essay."
(c) "Well, hurry up, our guests will be here soon," said her mother.

Writing

Q.12 Write an essay on any ONE of the following.

- (a) The importance of computers in our lives
(b) Pakistan needs highly educated people in the field of agriculture
(c) A family wedding

Ans: See "Essay Writing" on previous pages.

Q.13 Write any ONE of the following.

- (a) Write a summary of the reading passage on rice, given at the beginning of the paper.

Ans:

Rice is now one of the most important crops of the world because it is used as a staple food in most countries. In the coming years, the world will require more rice than that it requires today. Pakistan is the world's 4th largest producer of rice. Rice is Pakistan's third largest crop in terms of area sown.

Most of the rice is grown in Sindh and Punjab. Punjab is the biggest producer of rice in Pakistan and contributes 58 per cent to national production. In Punjab, the "Kalar" bowl area is famous for producing Basmati rice. In KPK, at high altitude mountain valleys, the temperate Japonica rice is grown. In South KPK, Sindh and Baluchistan, the Irr type is grown. Famous variety of Pakistan is Basmati which is known for its flavour and quality. Pakistan is a leading producer and exporter of Basmati and IRRI rice.

Rice is the second staple food of Pakistan. Its export is a main source of foreign exchange earnings. The government should support the rice growers, exporters and take steps to control rice prices. With the help of more and better quality rice, Pakistan can compete in the world market and earn more foreign exchange.

- (b) Write an application to apply for a job of your choice.

Ans: See "Letter Writing" on previous pages.